FORD **ESCAPE VIGNALE Owner's Manual**



The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2020

All rights reserved.

Part Number: CG3855en 202007 20201221130100

Table of Contents

Introduction
Acknowledgments 9
About This Manual 9
Symbols Glossary 9
Data Recording 11
Replacement Parts Recommendation 15
Mobile Communications Equipment 15
Contacting Ford 16

Environment
Protecting the Environment 18

At a Glance
Instrument Panel 19

Child Safety
Child Restraints 21
Selecting a Child Restraint System 22
Installing Child Restraints 22
Child Restraint Anchorage Locations 23
Protecting Larger Children 24
Checking Seatbelt Fit 25
Child Safety Locks - Vehicles With: Mechanical Child Proof Locks 25
Child Safety Locks - Vehicles With: Remote Child Proof Locks 25

Seatbelts
Principle of Operation 27
Fastening the Seatbelts 28
Seatbelt Height Adjustment 29
Seatbelt Reminder - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen 29
Seatbelt Reminder - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen 31
Seatbelt Maintenance 32

Supplementary Restraints System
Principle of Operation 33
Driver Airbag 33
Passenger Airbag 34
Side Airbags 34
Driver Knee Airbag 35
Side Curtain Airbags 35

Pedestrian Protection - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)
Pedestrian Alert System 37

Automatic Crash Notification System
Emergency Assistance 38

Keys and Remote Controls
General Information on Radio Frequencies 40
Remote Control 40
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control 45

MyKey™
What Is MyKey 46
MyKey Settings 46
Creating a MyKey 47
Programming a MyKey 47
Clearing All MyKeys 47
Checking MyKey System Status 48
Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems 48
MyKey – Troubleshooting 48

Doors and Locks
Locking and Unlocking 50

Liftgate
Manual Liftgate 54

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Power Liftgate 55

Security

Passive Anti-Theft System 59
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Interior Sensor 59
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Integral Battery 61

Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel 63
Locking the Steering Wheel 63
Audio Control 63
Voice Control 64
Cruise Control - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering 64
Cruise Control - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go 65
Cruise Control - Vehicles With: Cruise Control 65
Information Display Control - Vehicles Without: Head Up Display (HUD) 65
Information Display Control - Vehicles With: Head Up Display (HUD) 66
Heated Steering Wheel 66

Wipers and Washers

Windshield Wipers 67
Autowipers 68
Windshield Washers 68
Rear Window Wiper and Washers 69
Headlamp Washers 69

Lighting

General Information 71
Lighting Control 71
Autolamps 72
Instrument Lighting Dimmer 72
Headlamp Exit Delay 72
Daytime Running Lamps 73
Glare-Free High Beam 73
Front Fog Lamps 75
Rear Fog Lamps 75
Headlamp Leveling - Vehicles With: Automatic Headlamp Leveling 75
Headlamp Leveling - Vehicles With: Manual Headlamp Leveling 76
Adaptive Headlamps 76
Direction Indicators 77
Interior Lamps 77
Ambient Lighting 78

Automatic High Beam Control

What Is Automatic High Beam Control 79
Switching Automatic High Beam Control On and Off 79
Automatic High Beam Control Indicators 79
Overriding Automatic High Beam Control 80

Windows and Mirrors

Power Windows 81
Global Opening and Closing 82
Exterior Mirrors 82
Interior Mirror 84
Sun Visors 84
Moonroof 84

Instrument Cluster

Gauges - Vehicles With: 6.5 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen, Excluding: Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) 86
Gauges - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen, Excluding: Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) 88

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Gauges - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV), Vehicles With: 6.5 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen 90
Gauges - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV), Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen 92
Gauges - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen 96
Warning Lamps and Indicators 97
Audible Warnings and Indicators 100

Information Displays

General Information - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen 102
General Information - Vehicles With: 6.5 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen 106
General Information - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen 109
Personalized Settings 112
Information Messages 115
Head Up Display 135

Remote Start

What Is Remote Start 140
Remote Start Precautions 140
Remote Start Limitations 140
Enabling Remote Start - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen 140
Enabling Remote Start - Vehicles With: 6.5 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/ 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen 140
Remotely Starting and Stopping the Vehicle 140
Remote Start Settings - Vehicles With: 6.5 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/ 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen, Vehicles Without: Heated Steering Wheel 141
Remote Start Settings - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen, Vehicles Without: Heated Steering Wheel 142

Climate Control

Manual Climate Control 143
Automatic Climate Control 144
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control 147
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control 148
Heated Windshield 149
Heated Rear Window 149
Heated Exterior Mirrors 149

Seats

Sitting in the Correct Position 150
Head Restraints 151
Manual Seats 152
Power Seats 153
Rear Seats 155
Heated Seats 155

Rear Occupant Alert System

What is the Rear Occupant Alert System 157
How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work 157
Rear Occupant Alert System Precautions 157
Rear Occupant Alert System Limitations 157
Switching Rear Occupant Alert System On and Off 158
Rear Occupant Alert System Indicators 158
Rear Occupant Alert System Audible Warnings 158

Auxiliary Power Points

Auxiliary Power Points 159

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Wireless Accessory Charger 160

Storage Compartments

Overhead Console 162
Rear Seat Armrest 162

Starting and Stopping the Engine

Starting and Stopping the Engine – Precautions 163
Push Button Ignition Switch 163
Starting the Engine 163
Stopping the Engine 164
Automatic Engine Stop 165
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Troubleshooting 166

Unique Driving Characteristics

Auto-Start-Stop 168
Hybrid Vehicle Operation 169
Plug-In Hybrid Vehicle Operation 171
Hybrid Vehicle Frequently Asked Questions 173

Fuel and Refueling

Safety Precautions 175
Fuel Quality 175
Fuel Filler Funnel Location 176
Running Out of Fuel 176
Refueling - Excluding: Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) 177
Refueling - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) 180
Fuel Consumption 183

Engine Emission Control

Catalytic Converter 185
Gasoline Particulate Filter 187

High Voltage Battery

General Information 189
Charging the High Voltage Battery 189

Transmission

Automatic Transmission - Excluding: Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) 197
Automatic Transmission - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) 200

All-Wheel Drive

Using All-Wheel Drive 205

Brakes

General Information 210
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes 210
Electric Parking Brake 211
Hill Start Assist 213
Auto Hold 214

Traction Control

Principle of Operation 216
Using Traction Control 216

Stability Control

Principle of Operation 217
Using Stability Control 218

Parking Aids

Principle of Operation 219
Rear Parking Aid 220
Front Parking Aid 221
Side Sensing System 223
Active Park Assist 225
Rear View Camera 228
180 Degree Camera 231

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Cruise Control

What Is Cruise Control 233
Switching Cruise Control On and Off 233
Setting the Cruise Control Speed 233
Canceling the Set Speed 233
Resuming the Set Speed 234
Cruise Control Indicators 234

Adaptive Cruise Control

How Does Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go Work 235
What Is Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering 235
Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering 235
Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go 235
Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering 236
Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control/ Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go 237
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off 239
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed 240
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap 241
Canceling the Set Speed 241
Resuming the Set Speed 242
Overriding the Set Speed 242
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering 242
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go 242
Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control 243
Switching Lane Centering On and Off 243
Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting 244

Driving Aids

Speed Limiter 246
Driver Alert 248
Lane Keeping System 249
Blind Spot Information System 255
Cross Traffic Alert 256
Traffic Sign Recognition 260
Eco - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen 261
Eco - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen 262
Steering 263
Pre-Collision Assist 263

Drive Mode Control

What Is Drive Mode Control 269
Selecting a Drive Mode 269
Drive Modes 269

Load Carrying

General Information 271
Luggage Anchor Points 271
Rear Under Floor Storage 272
Cargo Nets 272
Luggage Covers 274
Roof Racks and Load Carriers 275
Dog Guard 276
Load Limit 276

Towing

Towing a Trailer 281
Trailer Sway Control 282
Recommended Towing Weights 282
Essential Towing Checks 284
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels 285

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Driving Hints

Reduced Engine Performance 286
Cold Weather Precautions 286
Preconditioning Your Vehicle for Cold Weather Driving - 2.5L Duratec – Hybrid (121kW/164PS) (BG), Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) 286
Breaking-In 286
Driving Through Water 287
Driving Economically 287
Floor Mats 288

Roadside Emergencies

Hazard Flashers 289
Fuel Shutoff 289
Jump Starting the Vehicle - Excluding: Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) 289
Jump Starting the Vehicle - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) 292
Post-Crash Alert System 295
Transporting the Vehicle 295
Towing Points 296

Fuses

Fuse Specification Chart 297
Changing a Fuse 307

Maintenance

General Information 309
Opening and Closing the Hood 309
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L EcoBoost™ 311
Under Hood Overview - 2.5L/2.5L Duratec, Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) 312
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.0L EcoBoost™/2.5L Duratec, Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) 314
Engine Oil Check 314
Oil Change Indicator Reset - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen 314
Oil Change Indicator Reset - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen 316
Changing the Engine Air Filter - 2.0L EcoBoost™ 316
Changing the Engine Air Filter - 2.5L Duratec, Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV)/ Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) 317
Engine Coolant Check 318
Automatic Transmission Fluid Check 322
Brake Fluid Check 322
Changing the 12V Battery 323
Adjusting the Headlamps 325
Washer Fluid Check 325
Fuel Filter 325
Checking the Wiper Blades 325
Changing the Wiper Blades 325
Changing a Bulb 326

Vehicle Care

Cleaning the Exterior 330
Cleaning the Windows and Wiper Blades 330
Cleaning the Interior 331
Cleaning Leather Seats 332
Repairing Minor Paint Damage 333
Cleaning the Wheels 333
Body Styling Kits 333

Wheels and Tires

General Information 334
Tire Care 334
Using Summer Tires 334
Using Winter Tires 335
Using Snow Chains 336
Tire Pressure Monitoring System 336
Changing a Road Wheel 340
Technical Specifications 347

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Capacities and Specifications

Engine Specifications - 2.0L EcoBoost™ 350
Engine Specifications - 2.5L, Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) 351
Vehicle Identification Plate - New Zealand 352
Vehicle Identification Plate - Australia/New Zealand 353
Vehicle Identification Number - Excluding: Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) 353
Vehicle Identification Number - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) 354
Capacities and Specifications - 2.0L EcoBoost™ 354
Capacities and Specifications - 2.5L, Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) 360
Bulb Specification Chart 365

Connected Vehicle

What Is a Connected Vehicle 367
Connected Vehicle Requirements 367
Connected Vehicle Limitations 367
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network 367
Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network 367
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting - Vehicles With: Modem 368
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting - Vehicles With: SYNC 3/SYNC 2.5 369

Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot

Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot 371
Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot Name or Password 371

Audio System

General Information 372
Audio Unit 372
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5 374
AM/FM Radio - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5 375
Digital Radio - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5 376
Audio Unit Clock and Date Displays - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5 376
Connecting a Bluetooth® Device - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5 376
Streaming Bluetooth Audio - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5 377
Playing Media From a USB Device - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5 377
USB Port 378
Apps - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5 379
Using Voice Recognition - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5 382
Audio System – Troubleshooting - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5 383

SYNC™ 3

General Information 385
Using Voice Recognition 387
Entertainment 395
Climate 397
Phone 400
Navigation 402
Electric Vehicle Information 407
Apps 412
Settings 413
SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting 415

Appendices

Electromagnetic Compatibility 427
End User License Agreement 431
Declaration of Conformity 458

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Your vehicle could have components that use open source software. For additional information, visit *http://corporate.ford.com/ford-open-source.html*.

ABOUT THIS MANUAL

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this manual. The more that you know about your vehicle, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

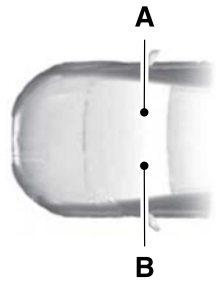
Note: *This manual describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It may describe options not fitted to the vehicle you have purchased.*

Note: *Some of the illustrations in this manual may show features as used in different models, so may appear different to you on your vehicle.*

Note: *Always use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.*

Note: *Pass on this manual when selling your vehicle. It is an integral part of your vehicle.*

This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



A Right-hand side.

B Left-hand side.

SYMBOLS GLOSSARY

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.


Safety alert.


See the Owner's Manual.


Air conditioning system.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing


Anti-lock braking system.


Avoid smoking, flames or sparks.


Battery.


Battery acid.


Brake fluid level.


Brake system.


Brake failure.


Cabin air filter.


Check fuel cap.


Child safety door lock.


Child safety door unlock.


Child seat lower anchor.


Child seat tether anchor.


Cruise control.


Do not open when hot.


Electronic power steering malfunction.


Engine air filter.


Engine coolant.


Engine coolant temperature.


Engine oil.


Explosive gas.


Fan warning.


Fasten seatbelt.


Front airbag.


Front fog lamps.


Fuel pump reset.


Fuse compartment.


Hazard warning flashers.


Heated rear window.


Heated windshield.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing


Interior luggage compartment release.


Jack.


Keep out of reach of children.


Lighting control.


Low tire pressure warning.


Maintain correct fluid level.


Panic alarm.


Parking aid.


Parking brake.


Power steering fluid.


Power windows.


Power window lockout.


Malfunction indicator lamp (MIL).


Service engine soon.


Side airbag.


Shield the eyes.


Stability control.


Windshield wash and wipe.

DATA RECORDING

WARNING: Do not connect wireless plug-in devices to the data link connector. Unauthorized third parties could gain access to vehicle data and impair the performance of safety related systems. Only allow repair facilities that follow our service and repair instructions to connect their equipment to the data link connector.

We respect your privacy and are committed to protecting it. The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print but as technology rapidly changes, we recommend that you visit the local Ford website for the latest information.

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have data recording functionality and the ability to permanently or temporarily store data. This data could include information on the condition and status of your vehicle, vehicle maintenance requirements, events and malfunctions. The types of data that can be recorded are described in this section. Some of the data recorded is stored in event logs or error logs.

Note: *Error logs are reset following a service or repair.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Note: *We may provide information in response to requests from law enforcement, other government authorities and third parties acting with lawful authority or through a legal process. Such information could be used by them in legal proceedings.*

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Operating states of system components, for example fuel level, tire pressure and battery charge level.
- Vehicle and component status, for example wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration and seatbelt status.
- Events or errors in essential systems, for example headlamps and brakes.
- System responses to driving situations, for example airbag deployment and stability control.
- Environmental conditions, for example temperature.

Some of this data, when used in combination with other information, for example an accident report, damage to a vehicle or eyewitness statements, could be associated with a specific person.

Service Data

Our dealers collect service data through the data link connector in your vehicle. They use service data, for example error logs, to help them if you take your vehicle for repair. They share this data with our technical team, if required, to help with diagnosis. In addition to using the information for diagnosis and repair, we use and share service data with our service providers, for example parts suppliers, where required and where permitted by law, for continuous improvement or with other information that we have about you, for example your contact information, to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law. Our service providers are equally required by law to protect your data and retain it in accordance with data retention policies.

Note: *Third party repair facilities can also collect service data through the data link connector.*

Event Data

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder. The main purpose of an event data recorder is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle; this data will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The event data recorder is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The event data recorder in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger seatbelts were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal; and
- How fast the vehicle was traveling; and
- Where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Note: *Event data recorder data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the event data recorder under normal driving conditions and no personal data or information (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded. However, parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the event data recorder data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.*

To read data recorded by an event data recorder, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the event data recorder is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have such special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the event data recorder.

Comfort, Convenience and Entertainment Data

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have the ability to store data based on your personalized settings. The data is stored locally in the vehicle or on devices that you connect to it, for example, a USB drive or digital music player. You can delete some of this data and also choose whether to share it through the services to which you subscribe. See **Settings** (page 413).

Comfort and Convenience Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Seat and steering wheel position.
- Climate control settings.
- Radio presets.

Entertainment Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Music, videos or album art.
- Contacts and corresponding address book entries.
- Navigation destinations.

Services That We Provide

If you use our services, we collect and use data, for example account information, vehicle location and driving characteristics, that could identify you. We transmit this data through a dedicated, protected connection. We only collect and use data to enable your use of our services to which you have subscribed, with your consent or where permitted by law. For additional information, see the terms and conditions of the services to which you have subscribed.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

Services That Third Parties Provide

We recommend that you review the terms and conditions and data privacy information for any services to which you subscribe. We take no responsibility for services that third parties provide.

Vehicles With a Modem (If Equipped)



The modem has a SIM. The modem was enabled when your vehicle was built and periodically sends messages to stay connected to the cell phone network, receive automatic software updates and send vehicle-related information to us, for example diagnostic information. These messages could include information that identifies your vehicle, the SIM and the electronic serial number of the modem. Cell phone network service providers could have access to additional information, for example cell phone network tower identification. For additional information about our privacy policy, visit www.FordConnected.com or refer to your local Ford website.

Note: *The modem continues to send this information unless you disable the modem or stop the modem from sharing vehicle data by changing the modem settings.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Note: *The service can be unavailable or interrupted for a number of reasons, for example environmental or topographical conditions and data plan coverage.*

Note: *To find out if your vehicle has a modem, visit www.FordConnected.com.*

Vehicles With SYNC

Mobile Device Data

If you connect a mobile device to your vehicle, you can display data from your device on the touchscreen for example, music and album art. You can share your vehicle data with mobile apps on your device through the system. See **Apps** (page 412).

The mobile apps function operates by your connected device sending data to us in the United States. The data is encrypted and includes, for example, the vehicle identification number of your vehicle, odometer, SYNC module number, usage statistics and debugging information. We retain it only as long as necessary to provide the service, to troubleshoot, for continuous improvement and to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law.

If you connect a cell phone to the system, the system creates a profile that links to that cell phone. The cell phone profile enables more mobile features and efficient operation. The profile contains, for example data from your phonebook, read and unread text messages and call history, including history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system.

If you connect a media device, the system creates and retains a media device index of supported media content. The system also records a short diagnostic log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity.

The cell phone profile, media device index and diagnostic log remain in your vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in your vehicle when you connect your cell phone or media device. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you use the master reset function to erase the stored information. See **Settings** (page 413).

System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to your vehicle's module.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

Note: *To find out if your vehicle has connectivity technology, visit www.FordConnected.com.*

Vehicles With an Emergency Call System

When the emergency call system is active, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to the emergency call system may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to emergency services operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist emergency services operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the emergency call system.

Examples of data that the system transmits are:

- Vehicle identification number.
- Vehicle fuel type.
- Current time.
- Vehicle location and direction.
- Whether the call was automatically or manually initiated.
- Vehicle category.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Note: *You cannot deactivate emergency call systems that are required by law.*

REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

We have built your vehicle to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual.

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents happen sometimes.

Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate that these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty.

The Ford Warranty may not cover damage caused to your vehicle as a result of failed non-Ford parts.

For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

CONTACTING FORD

Warranty repairs to your vehicle must be performed by an authorized dealer. Where convenient to you, we recommend you return to your selling authorized dealer for warranty service.

Please note that certain warranty repairs require special training and equipment, so not all authorized dealers are authorized to perform all warranty repairs. This means that, depending on the warranty repair needed, you may have to take your vehicle to another authorized dealer.

A reasonable time must be allowed to perform a repair after taking your vehicle to your authorized dealer. Repairs will be made using Ford or Motorcraft® parts, or remanufactured or other parts that are authorized by Ford.

Contact Us

Australia

Contact the Ford customer relationship center or use the online resources listed below to find the nearest authorized dealer.

Telephone
13 36 73 (13 FORD)

E-mail
foacust1@ford.com

Website
www.ford.com.au/owners/

Auto Club Membership With Roadside Assistance
Telephone
13 11 11 (except Transit)
1800 13 3673 (Only for Transit)

Additional information and resources are available online:

Web Address
www.ford.com.au/owners/service/road-side-assistance/

New Zealand

Telephone
0800 367 369 (0800 FORDNZ)

E-mail
nzinfo@ford.com

Website
www.ford.co.nz/about-ford/contact-us/

Roadside Assistance
Telephone
0800 15 16 17

Ford Protect
Telephone
0800 227 787

These are some of the items that can be found online:

- Dealer locator by dealer name, location or city/state.
- Owner's manual
- Maintenance schedules.
- Recalls.
- Ford extended service plans.
- Ford genuine accessories.
- Service specials and promotions.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Additional Assistance

In order to help us serve you better, please have the following information available when contacting a Customer Relationship Center:

- VIN (vehicle identification number).
- Your telephone number (home and business).
- The name of the authorized dealer and city where located.
- The vehicle's current odometer reading.

Information on Vehicle Warranty

www.ford.com.au/owners/warranties/

www.ford.co.nz/owners/warranty/

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

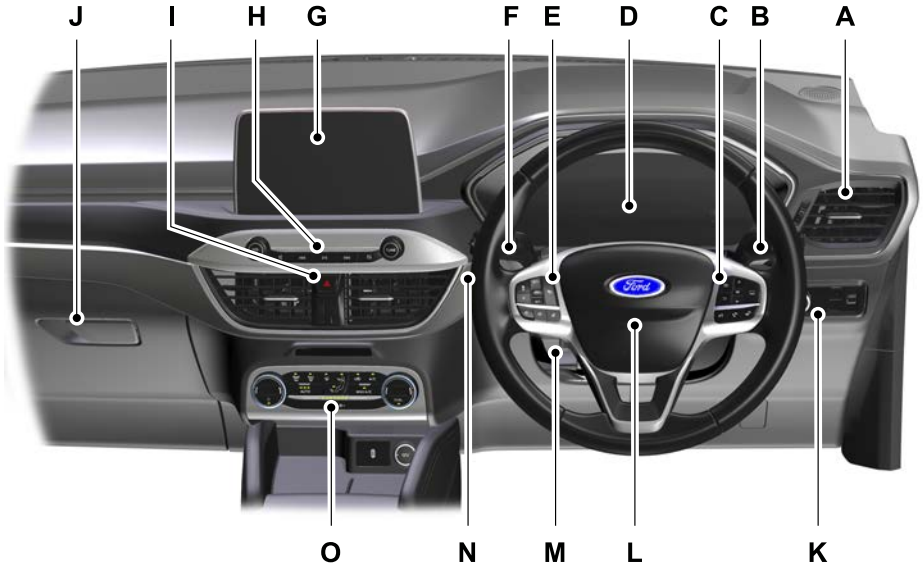
PROTECTING THE ENVIRONMENT

You should play your part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps toward this aim.

For additional information about our sustainability progress and initiatives, visit *www.sustainability.ford.com*.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

INSTRUMENT PANEL



A Air vents.

B Direction indicators. See **Direction Indicators** (page 77).

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

C Information display controls and audio controls. See **Information Display Control** (page 65). See **Audio Control** (page 63).
D Information Display. See **General Information** (page 102).
E Cruise controls. See **What Is Cruise Control** (page 233).
F Wiper lever. See **Windshield Wipers** (page 67).
G Touchscreen display.
H Audio unit controls. See **Audio Unit** (page 372).
I Hazard flasher. See **Hazard Flashers** (page 289).
J Glove compartment.
K Lighting control. See **Lighting Control** (page 71).
L Horn.
M Steering wheel adjustment. See **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** (page 63).
N Push button ignition switch. See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 163).
O Climate controls. See **Automatic Climate Control** (page 144).

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

CHILD RESTRAINTS

WARNING: Children must always be properly restrained.

WARNING: This section provides useful information on the installation and safe use of child restraints. Ford strongly recommends that you read and understand this section before carrying children in your vehicle.

It is the driver's responsibility to ensure that the children are seated in suitable child restraints prescribed by the laws of the State or Territory in which the vehicle is operated.

If you are in any doubt about the laws that apply in your location, please consult your local Authorised Ford Dealer or Local Approved Child Restraint Fitting Station for assistance.

WARNING: NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.



WARNING: Seatbelts and seats can become hot in a vehicle that has been closed up in sunny weather, they could burn a small child. Check seat covers and buckles before you place a child anywhere near them.

WARNING: Read and follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions when you are fitting a child restraint.

WARNING: Do not alter or modify child restraints in any way.

WARNING: Do not hold a child on your lap when the vehicle is moving.

WARNING: Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle.

WARNING: On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.

WARNING: Destroy the child restraint if it has been in a severe crash, even if no damage is visible.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

SELECTING A CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM

To provide protection, a child restraint system should meet three requirements.

1. **The child restraint system complies with Australian Standard AS1754.** Infants and children must be properly restrained at all times in an approved child restraint which conforms to Australian Standards AS1754 - 2004 or later. Look for the Australian Standard Approval Mark on the child restraint.
2. **The child restraint must be suitable for the size and weight of the child and must be properly fitted and adjusted.** Use the child restraint exactly as shown in the instructions provided with the child restraint. If you have any doubts, contact the child restraint manufacturer or consult an approved Restraint Fitting Station.
3. **The child restraint system should fit the vehicle seating position (or positions) where it will be used.** Due to variations in the design of child restraint systems, vehicle seats and seatbelts, all child restraint systems may not fit all seating positions. Before purchasing a child restraint system, it is recommended that the child restraint system is tested in the specific vehicle seating position (or positions) where it is intended to be used. If a previously purchased child restraint does not fit, you may need to purchase a different one that will fit.

INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS

WARNING: NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

WARNING: Incorrectly fitted child restraints may swing, tip or come away causing death or injury.

WARNING: Do not use a child restraint if the tether strap falls into a split in the vehicle seat back or falls off the edge of the vehicle seat.

After installing a child restraint system, push and pull the system forward and back and from side to side to verify that it is secured.

Be sure to read and follow the instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer. If you have any doubts contact the child restraint manufacturer or consult an approved Restraint Fitting Station. Your automobile club or local vehicle registration authority can provide location details of fitting stations.

When installing the child restraint attaching clip to the anchor fitting, raise the head restraint (where fitted) and pass the tether strap between the head restraint supports. This will prevent the tether strap from falling off the outboard edge of the seating positions.


E166723

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Note: *Side curtain air bags (where fitted) will not interfere with a properly installed child restraint system or booster seat, because they are designed to inflate downward from the headliner above the doors along the side window openings.*

When a child restraint system is not being used, either remove it and store it in a safe place, or make sure it is properly secured. An unsecured child restraint system can be thrown around the vehicle in a collision or sudden stop and injure someone.

CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHORAGE LOCATIONS

Upper (top tether) anchorages

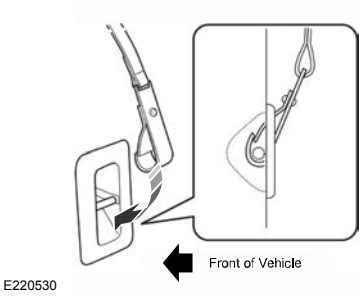
WARNING: Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seatbelts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

There are three child restraint top tether anchorages, one for each rear seating position.

The top tether anchorages are only suitable for child restraints conforming to Australian Standard AS1754-2004 or later.



E166782



E220530

If your child restraint does not have an approved latched hook attaching clip as shown, you should consult an approved restraint fitting station.

Note: *You may need to raise or remove the head restraint to ease installation. See* ***Head Restraints*** *(page 151).*

Note: *Where applicable, remove the luggage cover to ease installation. See* ***Luggage Covers*** *(page 274).*

WARNING: Always ensure that the attaching clip is properly engaged with the anchor fitting and the tether strap length is adjusted to remove any slack.

WARNING: Always ensure that the locking mechanism of the rear seatback is fully engaged when in the upright position, by attempting to pull it down again.

WARNING: Do not attach a tether strap to anything other than the correct tether anchor point.

WARNING: Make sure that the seatback is secure and fully engaged in the catch.

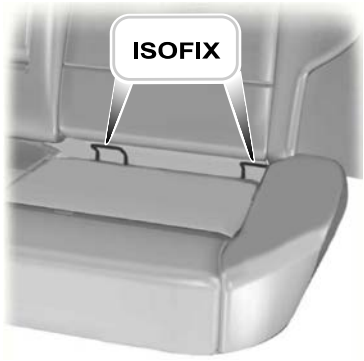
Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

WARNING: Make sure that the tether strap tightening mechanism remains accessible when the seatback is fully engaged in the catch.

ISOFIX LOWER ANCHORAGES (If Equipped)

WARNING: The ISOFIX lower anchorages must be used in conjunction with the upper (top tether) anchorages.

Your vehicle has ISOFIX lower anchorages located on the outboard rear seats, where the cushion and backrest meet.



PROTECTING LARGER CHILDREN

The rear seats (where provided) are the safest place for children.

When a child outgrows the recommended weight or height limits for a forward facing child restraint system, the child should sit on a booster seat and wear a lap-sash seatbelt. The raised seating position will allow you to position the shoulder strap of the adult seatbelt over the centre of your child's shoulder and the lap strap tightly across its hips. A booster seat should be used until the child is tall enough for the lap-sash seatbelt to fit properly.

Typical Booster Seat



WARNING: Do not install a booster seat with only the lap strap of the seatbelt.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

WARNING: Do not install a booster seat with a seatbelt that is slack or twisted.

CHECKING SEATBELT FIT

If the lap-sash seatbelt touches or crosses the child's neck, then the child needs a booster seat.

WARNING: Never wear a seatbelt across the neck. This could result in serious neck injury in the event of a collision.

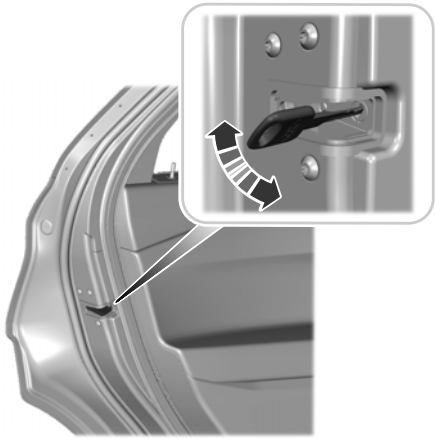
WARNING: Do not put the seatbelt under your child's arm or behind its back.

WARNING: Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height.

WARNING: Make sure that your children sit in an upright position.

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS - VEHICLES WITH: MECHANICAL CHILD PROOF LOCKS

When these locks are set, you cannot open the rear doors from the inside.



A child safety lock is on the rear edge of each rear door. You must set the child safety lock separately on each door.

Left-Hand Side

Turn the key clockwise to switch the child lock on and counter clockwise to switch it off.

Right-Hand Side

Turn the key counter clockwise to switch the child lock on and clockwise to switch it off.

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS - VEHICLES WITH: REMOTE CHILD PROOF LOCKS

WARNING: You cannot open the rear doors from inside if you have put the child safety locks on.

The child safety lock control is on the driver door.



Press the control to switch the child safety locks on. Press the control again to switch them off.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

A LED (light emitting diode) on the child safety lock control illuminates when you switch them on. If the LED flashes, try to switch the child safety locks on again. If the LED continues to flash, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: *You cannot use the rear power window controls if you switch the child safety locks on.*

Child Safety Locks Information Messages

Message	Action
Child Lock Malfunction See Manual	Try to switch the child safety locks on again. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNING: The wearing of a seatbelt is a mandatory requirement. Seatbelts should be properly fastened and adjusted before the vehicle is driven. Adjust the driver's seat position before fastening the seatbelt.

WARNING: Seatbelts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable. Wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

WARNING: Wear a seatbelt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the seatbelt properly, can it hold you in position to achieve its optimum effect.

See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 150).

WARNING: Never use a seatbelt for more than one person. It is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

WARNING: Use the correct buckle for each seatbelt.

WARNING: Do not use a seatbelt that is slack or twisted.

WARNING: Do not wear thick clothing. The seatbelt must fit tightly around your body to achieve its optimum effect.

WARNING: Position the seatbelt height adjuster so that the seatbelt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the seatbelt correctly could reduce its effectiveness and increase the risk of injury in a crash.

WARNING: Avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils, chemicals and particularly battery acid. Use mild soap and water for cleaning the webbing. If webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged, replace the belt.

WARNING: No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seatbelt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack or prevent the seatbelt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

WARNING: Seatbelts are designed to be used by adult sized occupants.

The driver, front passenger and rear seat outermost seatbelt systems are fitted with seatbelt pretensioners. Seatbelt pretensioners have a lower deployment threshold than the airbags. During minor collisions, it is possible that only the seatbelt pretensioners will deploy.

Status after a Collision

WARNING: Seatbelts subjected to strain, as a result of an accident, should be renewed and the anchorages checked by a properly trained technician.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

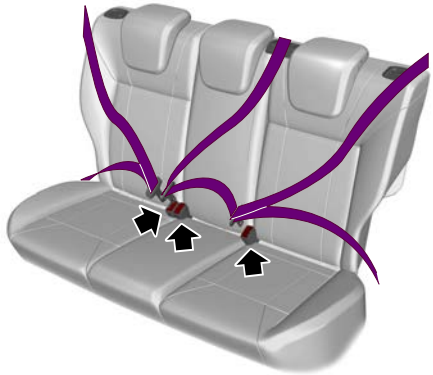
The seatbelt pretensioners are designed to tighten the seatbelts when activated. In frontal and near-frontal crashes, the seatbelt pretensioners may be activated alone or, if the crash is of sufficient severity, together with the front airbags. The pretensioners also activate when side airbags are deployed.

FASTENING THE SEATBELTS

WARNING: Insert the tongue into the buckle until you hear a distinct click. You have not fastened the seatbelt correctly if you do not hear a click.

WARNING: Make sure that the seatbelts are securely stored away when not in use and are not outside your vehicle when closing the doors.





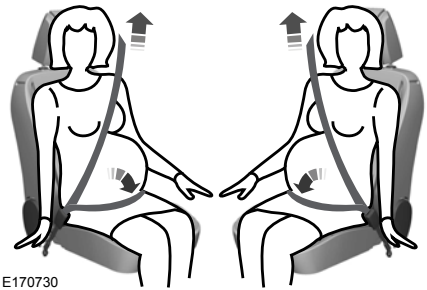
Pull the seatbelt out steadily. It may lock if you pull it sharply or if your vehicle is on a slope.

The rear outer seatbelts can lock if you return the seat backrest from a folded position to the upright position forcefully. Should the seatbelt lock, feed a small length of webbing back toward the stowed position.

Press the red button on the buckle to release the seatbelt. Hold the tongue and let it retract completely and smoothly to its stowed position.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Using Seatbelts During Pregnancy



E170730

WARNING: Position the seatbelt correctly for your safety and that of your unborn child. Do not use only the lap strap or the shoulder strap.

Pregnant women should always wear their seatbelt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

SEATBELT HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT

WARNING: Position the seatbelt height adjusters so that the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the seatbelt correctly could reduce the effectiveness of the seatbelt and increase the risk of injury in a crash.



E87511

To adjust the shoulder belt height, squeeze the button and slide the height adjuster up or down. Release the button and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.

SEATBELT REMINDER - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

Fasten Seatbelt Warning Lamp

A warning lamp illuminates if the ignition is on and any of the following occur:

- A front seat is occupied and the seatbelt has not been fastened.
- A rear seatbelt has been recently unfastened.



The warning lamp illuminates until you fasten your seatbelt.

Fasten Seatbelt Audible Warning

A warning tone sounds if the warning lamp illuminates and your vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed.

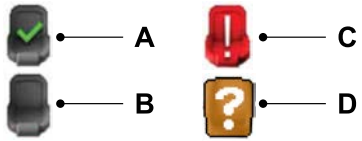
Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

The warning tone sounds for up to five minutes or until you fasten your seatbelt.

Switching the Audible Warning Off

We recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

Seatbelt Status



A Seatbelt fastened.
B Seatbelt not fastened.
C Rear seatbelt recently unfastened.
D Fault.

To view the seatbelt status, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the menu button.
Information	Press the ***OK*** button.
Seatbelts	Press the ***OK*** button.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Seatbelt Status Information Messages

Message	Description
Rear Belt Monitor Malfunction Service Required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

SEATBELT REMINDER - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

Fasten Seatbelt Warning Lamp

A warning lamp illuminates if the ignition is on and any of the following occur:

- A front seat is occupied and the seatbelt has not been fastened.
- A rear seatbelt has been recently unfastened.



The warning lamp illuminates until you fasten your seatbelt.

Fasten Seatbelt Audible Warning

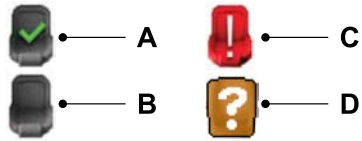
A warning tone sounds if the warning lamp illuminates and your vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed.

The warning tone sounds for up to five minutes or until you fasten your seatbelt.

Switching the Audible Warning Off

We recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

Seatbelt Status



A Seatbelt fastened.
B Seatbelt not fastened.
C Rear seatbelt recently unfastened.
D Fault.

Checking Seatbelt Status

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

2. Select ***Select Screens***.
3. Select ***Seatbelts***.

Seatbelt Status Information Messages

Message	Description
Rear Belt Monitor Malfunction Service Required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

SEATBELT MAINTENANCE

Inspect the vehicle seatbelts periodically to make sure they work properly and are not damaged. Inspect the vehicle seatbelts to make sure there are no nicks, tears, cuts or severe fraying. Replace if necessary. All vehicle seatbelt assemblies, including retractors, buckles, front seatbelt buckle assemblies, buckle support assemblies (slide bar-if equipped), shoulder belt height adjusters (if equipped), shoulder belt guide on seat back (if equipped), should be inspected after a crash.

Ford Motor Company recommends that all seatbelt assemblies in use in vehicles involved in a crash be replaced. However, if the crash was minor and an authorized dealer finds that the belts do not show damage and continue to operate properly, they do not need to be replaced. Seatbelt assemblies not in use during a crash should also be inspected and replaced if either damage or improper operation is noted.

Properly care for seatbelts. See **Vehicle Care** (page 330).

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNING: Do not fit a non-Ford approved bull bar or nudge-bar to your vehicle as this may interfere with the operation of the restraint system, including the airbag deployment, and could result in injury to yourself and others. Fitment of a non-Ford approved bull bar or nudge-bar may also void the vehicle's compliance with Australian Design Rules.

WARNING: Do not modify the front of your vehicle in any way. This could adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not fit any accessories on the front of the vehicle within 150 mm of the centre line of the vehicle as this may interfere with the operation of the front crash sensor.

WARNING: Wear a seatbelt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the seatbelt correctly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Repairs to the steering wheel, steering column, seats, airbags and seatbelts must be carried out by an authorized dealer. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. Objects could become projectiles during airbag deployment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

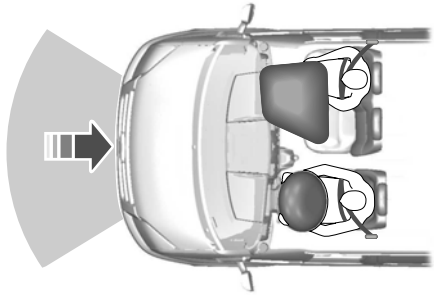
WARNING: Do not poke sharp objects into areas where airbags are fitted. This could damage and adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the deployment of the airbags and increase the risk of injuries in a crash.

Note: *You will hear a loud bang and see a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.*

Note: *Only wipe airbag covers with a damp cloth.*

DRIVER AIRBAG

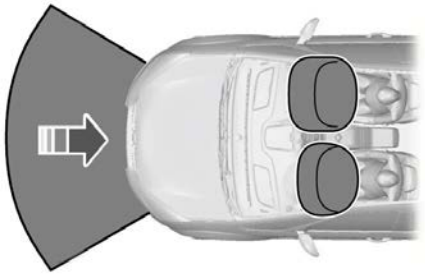


E268726

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

The airbag is designed to deploy during a significant frontal or near-frontal crash. The airbag inflates within a few thousandths of a second cushioning forward body movement and deflates on contact with the occupant. The airbag is not designed to deploy during a minor frontal crash, rear crash, side crash or a vehicle rollover.

PASSENGER AIRBAG



E74302

The airbag will deploy during significant frontal collisions or collisions that are up to 30 degrees from the left or the right. The airbag will inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupant, thus cushioning forward body movement. During minor frontal collisions, overturns, rear collisions and side collisions, the airbag will not deploy.

SIDE AIRBAGS

WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

WARNING: Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.

WARNING: Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the deployment of the airbags and increase the risk of injuries in a crash.

WARNING: Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



E72658

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

The side airbags are on the outermost side of each front seat backrest. There is a label attached to the side of each backrest to indicate this.



The side airbags are designed to inflate between the door panel and the occupant to enhance the protection in certain crashes.

The airbag is designed to deploy during a significant lateral crash. It might also deploy during a significant frontal crash. The airbag is not designed to deploy during a minor lateral or frontal crash, rear crash or a vehicle rollover.

DRIVER KNEE AIRBAG

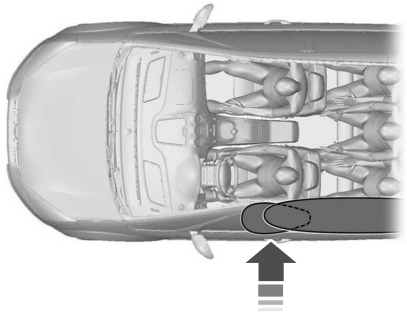
WARNING: Do not attempt to open the airbag cover.

The knee airbag is under the instrument panel. The system works along with the front airbags to help reduce injury to the legs. When the airbags activate in a crash, the knee airbag deploys from under the instrument panel. As with front and side airbags, it is important to be properly seated and restrained to reduce the risk of death or serious injury.

Note: *The airbag has a lower deployment threshold than the front airbags. During a minor crash, it is possible that only the knee airbag deploys.*

SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAGS

WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



The airbags are above the front and rear side windows.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

The airbag is designed to deploy during a significant lateral or frontal angled crash. The airbag is not designed to deploy during a minor lateral and frontal crash, rear crash or a vehicle rollover.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

PEDESTRIAN ALERT SYSTEM

Due to the quiet operation of hybrid and electric vehicles at low speeds, the system creates a subtle sound to alert pedestrians.

The system is on when your vehicle is running and not in park (P). Some sound may be audible in the passenger compartment.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

EMERGENCY ASSISTANCE

WARNING: Unless the Emergency Assistance setting is on prior to a collision, the system does not attempt to place an emergency call. This could delay the response time, increasing the risk of serious injury or death.

WARNING: Do not wait for Emergency Assistance to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid a delayed response time. If you do not hear Emergency Assistance within five seconds of the crash, the system or cell phone may be damaged or non-functional.

WARNING: Always place your phone in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile or get damaged in a crash. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone which could prevent Emergency Assistance from working properly.

Note: *The SYNC Emergency Assistance feature must be set on before the incident.*

Note: *The SYNC Emergency Assistance feature only operates in territories that are supporting the feature.*

Note: *Before setting this feature on, make sure that you read the Emergency Assistance Privacy Notice later in this section for important information.*

Note: *If any user sets Emergency Assistance to on or off, that setting applies for all paired phones. If Emergency Assistance is switched off and the phone is connected to SYNC, an icon displays on the status bar.*

Note: *Every phone operates differently. While SYNC Emergency Assistance works with most cellular phones, some may have trouble using this feature.*

If a crash deploys an airbag (excluding knee airbags and rear inflatable seatbelts [if equipped]) or activates the fuel pump shut-off, your SYNC-equipped vehicle may be able to contact emergency services by dialing Emergency number through a paired and connected Bluetooth-enabled phone. You can learn more about the Emergency Assistance feature, by visiting:

Website
www.fordsync.com

For important information about airbag deployment and the fuel pump shut-off please see the Supplementary Restrains and Roadside Emergencies sections of your owner manual.

To switch Emergency Assistance on and off please view the settings information. See **Settings** (page 413).

To make sure that Emergency Assistance works correctly:

- SYNC must be powered and working properly at the time of the incident and throughout feature activation and use.
- The Emergency Assistance feature must be set on before the incident.
- You must pair and connect a Bluetooth-enabled and compatible cell phone to SYNC.
- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the incident.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- The vehicle must have battery power and be located in a territory where Emergency Assistance is supported.

In the Event of a Crash

Not all crashes will deploy an airbag or activate the fuel pump shut-off (the triggers for Emergency Assistance). If a connected cell phone sustains damage or loses its connection to SYNC during a crash, SYNC will search for and try to connect to a previously paired cell phone; SYNC will then attempt to call the emergency services.

Before making the call:

- SYNC provides a short window of time (about 10 seconds) to cancel the call. If you fail to cancel the call, SYNC attempts to dial Emergency.
- SYNC says the following, or a similar message: "SYNC will attempt to call Emergency, to cancel the call, press Cancel on your screen or press and hold the phone button on your steering wheel."

If you do not cancel the call, and SYNC makes a successful call, a pre-recorded message plays for the Emergency operator, and then the occupant(s) in your vehicle is able to talk with the operator. Be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location immediately, because not all Emergency systems are capable of receiving this information electronically.

Emergency Assistance May Not Work If

- Your cellular phone or Emergency Assistance hardware sustains damage in a crash.
- The vehicle's battery or the SYNC system has no power.
- The phone(s) thrown from your vehicle are the ones paired and connected to the system.

Emergency Assistance Privacy Notice

When you switch on Emergency Assistance, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to Emergency Assistance may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to Emergency operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist Emergency operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not switch the feature on.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION ON RADIO FREQUENCIES

Note: *Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.*

The typical operating range for your transmitter is approximately 10 m.

A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- weather conditions
- nearby radio towers
- structures around your vehicle
- other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

The radio frequency used by your remote control can also be used by other radio transmitters, for example amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, wireless remote controls, cell phones, battery chargers and alarm systems. If the frequencies are jammed, you will not be able to use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

Note: *Make sure your vehicle is locked before leaving it unattended.*

Note: *If you are in range, the remote control will operate if you press any button unintentionally.*

Note: *The remote control contains sensitive electrical components. Exposure to moisture or impact may cause permanent damage.*

Declaration of Conformity

Your vehicle is fitted with components that transmit and receive radio waves and are therefore subject to European Directive 2014/EU.

REMOTE CONTROL

Type 1 Remote Control (If Equipped)

Note: *You may not be able to shift out of park (P) unless the remote control is inside your vehicle.*



Your passive key operates the power locks and liftgate. The remote control must be in your vehicle to activate the push-button start system.

Removable Key Blade

Your remote control also contains a removable key blade that you can use to unlock your vehicle.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing



Press the release button and pull the key blade out.



Note: *Your vehicle keys came with a security label that provides important key cut information. Keep the label in a safe place for future reference.*

Replacing the Battery

WARNING: Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.

WARNING: If the battery compartment does not securely close, stop using the remote control and replace it as soon as possible. In the meantime, keep the remote control away from children. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Note: *Refer to local regulations when disposing of remote control batteries.*

Note: *Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.*

Note: *Replacing the battery does not erase the programmed key from your vehicle. The remote control should operate normally.*



A message appears in the information display when the remote control battery is low.

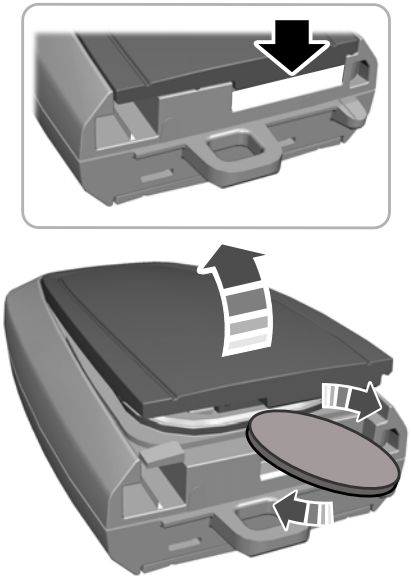
The Remote Control Battery

The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2450 or equivalent.

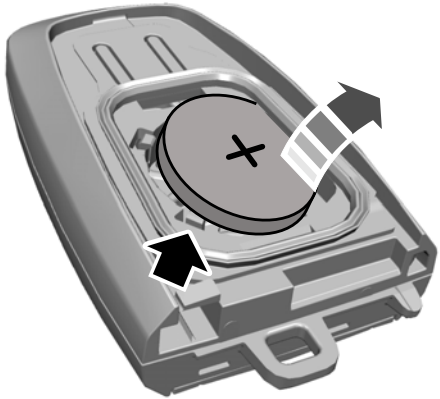


1. Push the release button and pull the key blade out.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing



2. Twist a thin coin under the tab hidden behind the key blade head to remove the battery cover.



3. Insert a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, in the position shown and carefully remove the battery.
4. Install a new battery with the **+** facing upward.
5. Reinstall the battery housing cover onto the remote control and install the key blade.

Type 2 Remote Control (If Equipped)

Note: *You may not be able to shift out of park (P) unless the remote control is inside your vehicle.*



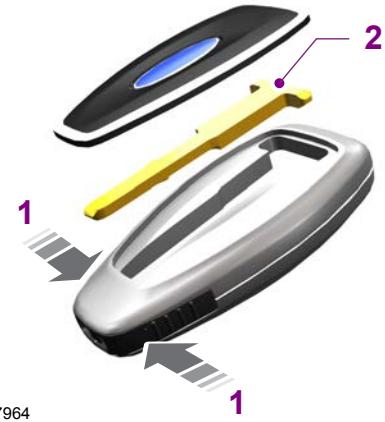
E266840

Your passive key operates the power locks and liftgate. The remote control must be in your vehicle to activate the push-button start system.

Removable Key Blade

Your remote control also contains a removable key blade that you can use to unlock your vehicle.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing



E87964

1. Press and hold the buttons on the edges of the transmitter to release the cover. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Remove the key blade from the transmitter.



Note: *Your vehicle keys came with a security label that provides important key cut information. Keep the label in a safe place for future reference.*

Replacing the Battery

WARNING: Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.

WARNING: If the battery compartment does not securely close, stop using the remote control and replace it as soon as possible. In the meantime, keep the remote control away from children. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Note: *Refer to local regulations when disposing of remote control batteries.*

Note: *Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.*

Note: *Replacing the battery does not erase the programmed key from your vehicle. The remote control should operate normally.*

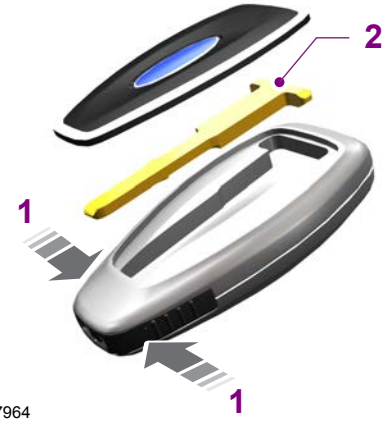


A message appears in the information display when the remote control battery is low.

The Remote Control Battery

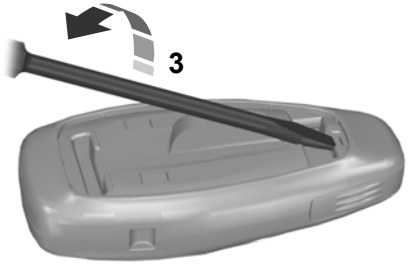
The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing



E87964

1. Press and hold the buttons on the edges of the transmitter to release the cover. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Remove the key blade from the transmitter.



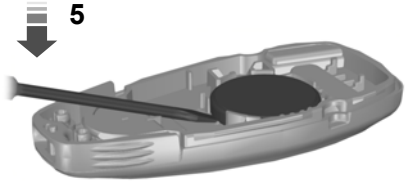
E105362

3. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, to carefully separate the two halves of the remote control.



E119190

4. Twist the screwdriver in the position shown to separate the two halves of the remote control.



E125860

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

5. Carefully remove the battery with the screwdriver.

Note: *Do not touch the battery contacts or the printed circuit board with the screwdriver.*

6. Insert a new battery with the + facing downward.

Note: *Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.*

7. Assemble the two halves of the remote control.
8. Reinstall the key blade.

Locating Your Vehicle



Press the button twice within three seconds. The direction indicators flash. We recommend you use this method to locate your vehicle.

Memory Feature (If Equipped)

You can program your remote control to recall memory positions.

If programmed to a pre-set position, the remote control recalls memory positions when you unlock your vehicle. If you have the easy entry and exit feature enabled and the ignition is off, the seat moves to the easy entry position.

The seat moves to the driver memory position when you switch the ignition on.

Remote Control Information Messages

Message	Action
Key Battery Low Replace Soon	Displays when the remote control battery requires replacing.

REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

Replacement keys or remote controls can be purchased from an authorized dealer. Authorized dealers can program remote controls for your vehicle.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

WHAT IS MYKEY

MyKey allows you to program keys with restricted driving modes to promote good driving habits.

MYKEY SETTINGS

Non-Configurable MyKey Settings

Seatbelt Reminder or Belt-Minder™

MyKey mutes the audio system until the drivers, and in some instances, passengers, fasten their seatbelts.

Note: *If your vehicle includes an AM/FM radio or a very basic audio system, then the radio may not mute.*

Satellite Radio (If Equipped)

Satellite radio adult content restrictions.

Early Low Fuel

The low fuel level warning lamp turns on earlier.

Driving and Parking Aids

Parking aids, blind spot information system and cross traffic alert turn on when you start the engine and cannot be switched off with a MyKey.

Pre-collision assist and lane keeping alert turn on when you start the engine, but can be switched off with a MyKey.

A new destination in the navigation system can only be set using voice commands when using a MyKey, and with your vehicle moving.

Note: *MyKey drivers may be able to turn the lane departure warning feature off, but this feature turns back on automatically with every new key cycle.*

Configurable MyKey Settings

You can configure the following settings after creating a MyKey. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 47).

Speed Limit

WARNING: Do not set MyKey maximum speed limit to a limit that will prevent the driver from maintaining a safe speed considering posted speed limits and prevailing road conditions. The driver is always responsible to drive in accordance with local laws and prevailing conditions. Failure to do so could result in accident or injury.

You can set a speed limit for your vehicle. Warning messages appear in the information display and a tone sounds if your vehicle reaches the set speed. You cannot override the set speed when using a MyKey.

Speed Reminder

You can set a speed reminder for your vehicle. Warning messages appear in the information display and a tone sounds if your vehicle exceeds the set speed.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Audio System Volume Limit

The audio system maximum volume is reduced. A message appears in the information display if you attempt to exceed the volume limit. Automatic volume control turns off.

Emergency Assistance

If you set emergency assistance to always on, you cannot switch it off with a MyKey.

Do Not Disturb

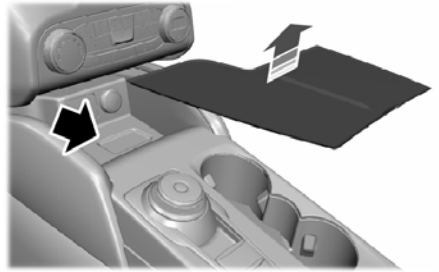
If you set do not disturb to always on, you cannot switch it off with a MyKey.

Note: *If a phone is connected using Apple CarPlay or Android Auto while driving with a MyKey, the driver can receive phone calls and text messages even if the do not disturb restriction is on. If the vehicle comes with satellite radio, the adult content is not restricted.*

Traction Control

If you set traction control to always on, you cannot switch it off with a MyKey.

CREATING A MYKEY



1. Remove the mat covering the backup location.
2. Remove the key blade from the transmitter.
3. Place the passive key in the position shown, with the buttons facing upward.
4. Switch the ignition on.
5. Using your touchscreen, press **Menu**.
6. Press **Settings**.
7. Press **Vehicle**.
8. Press **MyKey**.
9. Press **Create MyKey**.
10. Press **Yes** if you want to create the key as MyKey. A confirmation message will appear on the screen.
11. Switch the ignition off.

Note: *We recommend that you label this key.*

PROGRAMMING A MYKEY

You can program any remote control to become a restricted MyKey, but you must leave one unmodified as an admin key.

1. Switch the ignition on using an admin key.
2. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
3. Press ***Vehicle Settings***.
4. Press ***MyKey***.
5. Select a setting and press the ***OK*** button.
6. Configure the setting

CLEARING ALL MYKEYS

When you clear all MyKeys, you remove all restrictions and return all MyKeys to their original admin key status.

1. Switch the ignition on using an admin key.
2. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
3. Press ***Vehicle Settings***.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

4. Press ***MyKey***.
5. Press ***Clear All MyKeys***.
6. Press ***Yes***.

CHECKING MYKEY SYSTEM STATUS

You can find information about the distance traveled using a MyKey, and the number of admin keys and MyKeys created for your vehicle.

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
3. Press ***Vehicle Settings***.
4. Press ***MyKey***.
5. Press ***MyKey Information***.

USING MYKEY WITH REMOTE START SYSTEMS

MyKey is not compatible with unapproved, aftermarket remote start systems. If you choose to install a remote start system, see an authorized dealer for an approved remote start system.

MYKEY – TROUBLESHOOTING

MyKey – Information Messages

Message	Description
Place Key in Backup Location	Displays when trying to create a MyKey and the admin key is not placed in the backup position. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 47).
Key is Already a MyKey	Displays when trying to create a MyKey with a key already designated as a MyKey.
This Key restricted at Next Key Cycle. Label Key as MyKey	Displays to confirm that the key is restricted after you switch the ignition off.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

MyKey – Frequently Asked Questions

What is an admin key?

An admin key is a key that you have not created as a MyKey. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 47).

Why am I not able to create a MyKey?

You have not placed the admin key in the backup position. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 47). The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key. The key used to switch the ignition on is the only admin key. There has to be at least one admin key. You did not switch the ignition off after creating the last MyKey.

Why am I not able to program a MyKey?

The admin key is not inside your vehicle. The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key. You have not created any MyKeys. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 47).

Why am I not able to clear the MyKeys?

The admin key is not inside your vehicle. The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key. You have not created any MyKeys. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 47).

Why is the MyKey distance not accumulating?

The key used to start the engine is an admin key. An admin key and a MyKey are inside your vehicle. You have not created any MyKeys. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 47). You have cleared the MyKeys. See **Clearing All MyKeys** (page 47).

Why am I not able to start the engine with a MyKey?

An admin key and a MyKey are inside your vehicle. The system recognizes only the admin key when both are present.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

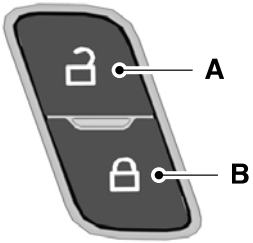
LOCKING AND UNLOCKING

You can use the power door lock control or the remote control to lock and unlock your vehicle.

Note: *Always take your keys and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle.*

Power Door Locks

The power door lock control is on the driver and front passenger door panels.



A Unlock.

B Lock.

Door Lock Indicator

An LED on the power door lock control illuminates when you lock the door.

Remote Control

Unlocking the Doors (Two-Stage Unlock)

Press the button to unlock the driver door.

Press the button again within three seconds to unlock all doors. The direction indicators flash.

With the ignition off, press and hold both the lock and unlock buttons on the remote control for three seconds to change between driver door or all door unlock mode. The direction indicators flash twice to indicate a change to the unlocking mode. Driver door mode only unlocks the driver door when you press the unlock button once. All door mode unlocks all doors when you press the unlock button once. The unlocking mode applies to the remote control, keyless entry and keypad.

To change these settings use the touchscreen to select the following:

1. Press Settings.
2. Press Vehicle.
3. Press Locks.

Note: *Depending on your vehicle options, the vehicle settings may be accessed through the instrument cluster display.*

Locking the Doors

Press the button to lock all doors. The direction indicators flash.

Press the button again within three seconds to confirm that all the doors are closed. The doors will lock again, the direction indicators flash if all the doors and the luggage compartment are closed.

Mislock

If any door or the liftgate is open, or if the hood is open on vehicles with an anti-theft alarm or remote start, the horn will sound twice and the direction indicators will not flash.

Double Locking the Doors

WARNING: Do not use double locking when passengers or animals are inside your vehicle. The doors cannot be unlocked or opened from the inside when double locked.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Double locking is a theft protection feature that prevents someone from opening the doors from the inside. It will only operate if all doors are fully closed.

Press the button twice within three seconds. Three short flashes of the direction indicators confirms that all doors have been double locked and that the alarm has been armed.

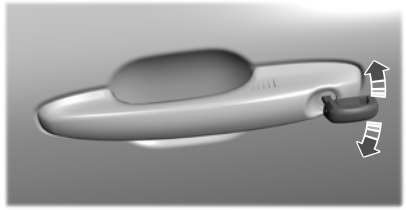
Opening the Power Liftgate

Note: *The button may vary depending on remote type.*

Press the button twice within three seconds.

Individual Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key Blade

If your remote control or central locking feature is inoperative, or your vehicle battery is dead, you can lock or unlock each door using the key blade.

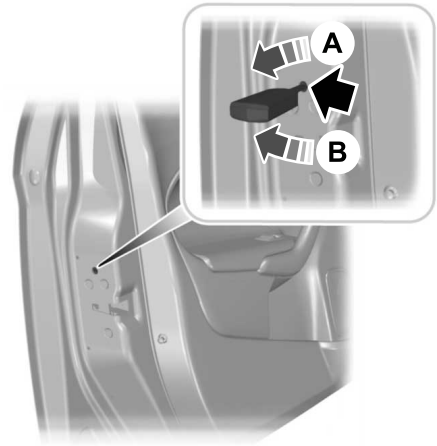


Locking the Driver Door with the Key Blade

Insert the key blade into the driver door handle lock cylinder, turn the key up toward the front of your vehicle to lock.

Unlocking the Driver Door with the Key Blade

Insert the key blade into the driver door handle lock cylinder, turn the key down toward the rear of your vehicle to unlock.



Locking the Passenger Door with the Key Blade

Insert the key blade into each door jamb lock feature, turn the key down to lock.

Unlocking the Passenger Door from the Inside

Once you unlock the driver door, pull each interior passenger door handle once to unlock and open the door.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Keyless Entry (If Equipped)

General Information

You can unlock and lock the vehicle without taking the keys out of your pocket or purse when your passive key is within 1 m of your vehicle. Keyless entry uses a sensor on the back of the door handle for unlocking, and a separate sensor on the top of each door handle for locking.

The system does not function if:

- Your vehicle battery has no charge.
- The passive key battery has no charge.
- The passive key frequencies are jammed.

Note: *The system may not function if the passive key is close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.*

Note: *If the system does not function, use the key blade to lock and unlock your vehicle.*

Unlocking Using Keyless Entry



With your passive key within 1 m of your vehicle, touch the unlock sensor on the back of the door handle for a brief period and then pull on the door handle to unlock, being careful to not touch the lock sensor at the same time or pulling the door handle too quickly. The keyless entry system requires a brief delay to authenticate your passive key.

Locking Using Keyless Entry



With your passive key within 1 m of your vehicle, touch the outer door handle lock sensor for approximately one second to lock, being careful to not touch the unlock sensor on the back of the door handle at the same time. After locking, you can immediately pull on the door handle to confirm locking occurred without inadvertently unlocking.

At the Liftgate

Press the button located in the top of the liftgate pull cup handle to unlatch the liftgate, and then pull on the outside handle.

Smart Unlocks for Passive Keys

This feature helps to prevent you from locking your passive key inside your vehicle's passenger compartment or rear cargo area. When you electronically lock your vehicle with any door open, the transmission is in park (P) and the ignition is off, the system searches for a passive key inside your vehicle after you close the last door. If the system finds a passive key, all the doors will immediately unlock and the horn will sound twice, indicating that a key is inside.

Auto Relock

If you press the unlock button on the remote control and do not open a door within 45 seconds, your vehicle locks and the alarm arms.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Autounlock

Autounlock unlocks all the doors when:

- The ignition is on, all the doors are closed, and your vehicle has been moving at a speed greater than 20 km/h.
- Your vehicle comes to a stop and you switch the ignition off or to the accessory position.
- You open the driver door within 10 minutes of switching the ignition off or to accessory.

Note: *The doors do not autounlock if you electronically lock your vehicle after you switch the ignition off and before you open the driver door.*

Enabling or Disabling Autounlock

To enable or disable autounlock use the vehicle tile located in the touchscreen. See **Settings** (page 413).

Note: *Depending on your vehicle options, the vehicle settings may be accessed through the instrument cluster display.*

Illuminated Entry

The interior lamps and some exterior lamps illuminate when you unlock the doors with the remote control.

The illuminated entry system turns off the lights if:

- The ignition is on.
- You press the remote control lock button.
- After 25 seconds of illumination.

The lights will not turn off if:

- You turn them on with the lamp control.
- Any door is open.

Illuminated Exit

The interior lamps and some exterior lamps illuminate when all doors are closed and you switch the ignition off.

The lamps turn off if all the doors remain closed and:

- 25 seconds have elapsed.
- You lock your vehicle from the outside.

Battery Saver

If you leave the courtesy lamps, interior lamps or headlamps on, the battery saver shuts them off 10 minutes after you switch the ignition off.

Accessory Mode Battery Saver for Passive Key

If you leave the ignition on after leaving your vehicle, it turns off 30 minutes after you close all of the doors.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

MANUAL LIFTGATE

WARNING: It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

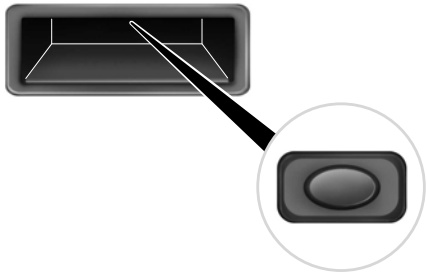
WARNING: Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. If you are unable to fully close the liftgate, open the air vents or the windows to allow fresh air to enter your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Note: *Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.*

Note: *Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

Note: *Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

Opening with the Outside Control Button



Press the control button to unlatch the liftgate and then lift to open.

Opening with the Remote Control (If Equipped)



Press the button to unlock the liftgate. The liftgate unlocks for 45 seconds, during which time you can open the liftgate using the outside control button.

Closing the Liftgate



E291353

A handle is located inside the liftgate to help with closing.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

POWER LIFTGATE (IF EQUIPPED)

WARNING: It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. If you are unable to fully close the liftgate, open the air vents or the windows to allow fresh air to enter your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Keep keys out of reach of children. Do not allow children to operate or play near an open or moving power liftgate. You should supervise the operation of the power liftgate at all times.

Note: *Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving your vehicle, especially in an enclosure, like a garage or a parking structure. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

Note: *Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

The liftgate only operates with the transmission in park (P).

If there is a problem with the open or close request, a tone sounds for one of the following reasons:

- The ignition is on and the transmission is not in park (P).
- The battery voltage is below the minimum operating voltage.
- The liftgate is not fully closed and your vehicle speed is at or above 5 km/h.

If the liftgate starts to close after it has fully opened, this indicates there may be excessive weight on the liftgate or a possible strut failure. A repetitive tone sounds and the liftgate closes under control. If the liftgate continues to close after opening, have the system checked by an authorized dealer. Remove any excessive weight from the liftgate.

Opening and Closing the Liftgate

WARNING: Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before using the power liftgate control.

Note: *Make sure the area behind your vehicle is free from obstruction and that there is enough room for you to operate the liftgate. Objects too close to your vehicle, for example a wall, garage door or another vehicle may come into contact with the moving liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

Note: *Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.*

Note: *Do not leave the liftgate open when you are driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Opening from the Instrument Panel

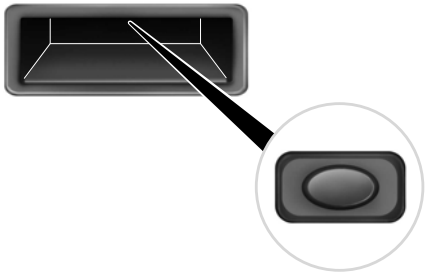
With the transmission in park (P), press the button on the instrument panel.

Opening with the Remote Control

Press the button twice within three seconds.

Opening with the Outside Control Button

1. Unlock the liftgate with the remote control or power door unlock control. If a passive key is within 1 m of the liftgate, the liftgate unlocks when you press the liftgate release button.



2. Press and release the liftgate control button.

Note: *Allow the power system to open the liftgate. Manually pushing or pulling the liftgate may activate the system's obstacle detection feature and stop the power operation or reverse its direction, replicate a strut failure, or damage mechanical components.*

Closing the Liftgate

WARNING: Keep clear of the liftgate when using the rear switch.



E291351

Press and release the liftgate button.

Stopping the Liftgate Movement

Note: *Do not apply sudden excessive force to the liftgate while it is in motion. This could damage the power liftgate and its components.*

You can stop the liftgate movement by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the liftgate control button.
- Pressing the liftgate button on the remote control twice.
- Pressing the liftgate button on the instrument panel.
- Moving your foot under and away from the center rear bumper in a single-kick motion.*

*This method only works for vehicles with the hands-free liftgate feature.

Setting the Liftgate Open Height

1. Open the liftgate.
2. Stop the liftgate movement by pressing the control button on the liftgate when it reaches the desired height.

Note: *Once the liftgate has stopped moving, you can also manually move it to the desired height.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

3. Press and hold the liftgate control button on the liftgate until you hear a tone, indicating programming is complete.

Note: *You can only use the liftgate control button to program the height.*

Note: *You cannot program the height if the liftgate position is too low.*

The new open liftgate height is recalled when the power liftgate is opened. To change the programmed height, repeat the above procedure. Once you open the power liftgate, you can manually move it to a different height.

Note: *The system recalls the new programmed height until you reprogram it, even if you disconnect the battery.*

When operating the power liftgate after you have programmed a lower height than fully open, you can fully open the liftgate by manually pushing it upward to the maximum open position.

Obstacle Detection

Note: *Entering your vehicle while the liftgate is closing can cause your vehicle to bounce and activate obstacle detection. To prevent this, let the power liftgate close completely before you enter your vehicle. Before driving off, check the instrument cluster for a liftgate or door ajar message or warning indicator. Failure to do this could result in unintentionally leaving the liftgate open while driving.*

When Closing

The system stops when it detects an obstacle. A tone sounds and the system reverses to open. Once you remove the obstacle, you can power close the liftgate.

When Opening

The system stops when it detects an obstacle and a tone sounds. Once you remove the obstacle, you can continue to operate the liftgate.

Switching the Power Liftgate On or Off

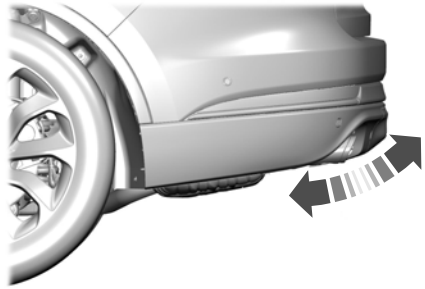
You can switch the power liftgate on or off through the vehicle settings on your touchscreen.

When switched off, the liftgate only unlatches and will not power open or close.

Hands-Free Feature (If Equipped)

Make sure you have the passive key within 1 m of the liftgate.

1. Stand behind your vehicle, and face the liftgate.
2. Move your foot, in a single-kick motion, without pausing, under and away from the rear bumper detection area.



3. The liftgate opens or closes.

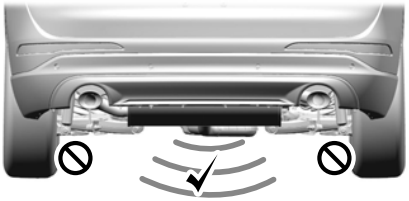
Avoid the following actions when using the hands-free opening feature:

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

- Making physical contact with the bumper.
- Holding your foot under the bumper.
- Sweeping your foot from side to side, or kicking at an odd angle.

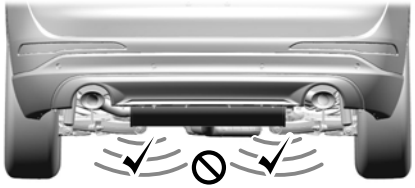
Detection Zones

Vehicles Without a Trailer Hitch



The detection area is in the center of the rear bumper.

Vehicles With a Trailer Hitch



The detection area is on the left-hand side and right-hand side of the hitch, between the exhaust and the hitch.

Note: *Allow the power system to open the liftgate. Manually pushing or pulling the liftgate may activate the system's obstacle detection feature and stop the power operation or reverse its direction, replicate a strut failure, or damage mechanical components.*

Note: *Splashing water may cause the hands-free liftgate to open. Keep the passive key away from the rear bumper detection area when you wash your vehicle.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

Principle of Operation

The system prevents someone from starting the engine with an incorrectly coded key.

Note: *Always take your keys and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle.*

Coded Keys

If you lose a key, you can obtain a replacement from an authorized dealer. If possible, provide them with the key number from the tag provided with the original keys. You can also obtain extra keys from an authorized dealer.

Note: *Have all of your remaining keys erased and recoded if you lose a key. Have replacement keys coded together with recoding your remaining keys. Ask an authorized dealer for more information.*

Note: *Metallic objects, electronic devices or a second coded key on the same key chain may result in vehicle starting problems, especially if they are too close to the key when starting your vehicle.*

Arming the Engine Immobilizer

The engine immobilizer arms after a short period of time when you switch the ignition off.

Disarming the Engine Immobilizer

The engine immobilizer disarms when you switch the ignition on with a correctly coded key.

If you are unable to start your vehicle with a correctly coded key, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

ANTI-THEFT ALARM - VEHICLES WITH: INTERIOR SENSOR (IF EQUIPPED)

Alarm System

Note: *Do not arm the alarm with full guard if passengers, animals or other moving objects are inside your vehicle.*

Perimeter Alarm

The perimeter alarm is a deterrent against unauthorized access to your vehicle through the doors and the hood. It also protects the audio unit.

Interior Sensors

The interior lamp unit sensors are in the overhead console.

Note: *Do not cover up the interior lamp unit sensors.*

The sensors act as a deterrent against unauthorized intrusion by sensing any movement inside your vehicle.

Triggering the Alarm

Once armed, the alarm triggers in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the liftgate or the hood without a valid key or remote control.
- If you switch your vehicle on without a correctly coded key.
- If the interior sensors detect movement within your vehicle.
- If the inclination sensors detect an attempt to raise your vehicle.

If the alarm triggers, the alarm horn sounds for 30 seconds and the hazard warning flasher flashes for 5 minutes.

Any further attempts to perform one of the above triggers the alarm again.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Full and Reduced Guard

Full Guard

Full guard is the standard setting.

In full guard, the interior sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

Reduced Guard

In reduced guard, the interior sensors are off when you arm the alarm.

Selecting Full or Reduced Guard

You can select full or reduced guard using the information display. See **General Information** (page 102).

Ask on Exit (If Equipped)

You can set the information display to ask you each time which level of guard you wish to set.

Using the information display controls, scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the **OK** button.
Vehicle settings	Press the **OK** button.
Alarm	Press the **OK** button.
Ask on exit	Press the **OK** button.
Reduced guard	Appears in the information display each time you switch your vehicle off. If you wish to arm the alarm with reduced guard, press the **OK** button when this message appears. If you wish to arm the alarm with full guard, leave your vehicle without pressing the **OK** button.

Note: *Selecting reduced guard does not set the alarm permanently to reduced guard. It sets it to reduced guard only for the current locking cycle.*

Arming the Alarm

To arm the alarm, lock your vehicle. See **Doors and Locks** (page 50).

Disarming the Alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors and switching your vehicle on or unlocking the doors with the remote control.

Note: *A valid remote control must be within the detection range of that door for keyless entry. See **Doors and Locks** (page 50).*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

ANTI-THEFT ALARM - VEHICLES WITH: INTEGRAL BATTERY (IF EQUIPPED)

Alarm System

Note: *Do not arm the alarm with full guard if passengers, animals or other moving objects are inside your vehicle.*

Perimeter Alarm

The perimeter alarm is a deterrent against unauthorized access to your vehicle through the doors and the hood.

Interior Sensors

The interior lamp unit sensors are located in the overhead console. Do not cover up the interior lamp unit sensors.

The sensors act as a deterrent against unauthorized access by sensing any movement within your vehicle.

Battery Back-up Sounder

The battery back-up sounder is an additional alarm system, which sounds a siren if your vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder is disconnected. When you lock your vehicle the system is armed. The sounder has its own battery and will sound an alarm siren even if someone disconnects your vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder itself.

Triggering the Alarm

Once armed, the alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the liftgate or the hood without a valid key or remote control.
- If you switch your vehicle on without a correctly coded key.
- If the interior sensors detect movement within your vehicle.
- On vehicles with a battery back-up sounder, if someone disconnects your vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder itself.

If the alarm is triggered, the alarm horn will sound for 30 seconds and the hazard warning flasher flashes for five minutes.

Any further attempts to perform one of the above sounds the alarm again.

Full and Reduced Guard

Full Guard

Full guard is the standard setting.

In full guard, the interior sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

Reduced Guard

In reduced guard, the interior sensors are off when you arm the alarm.

Note: *The alarm security level will switch back to full guard once the power is turned on.*

Selecting Full or Reduced Guard

You can select full or reduced guard using the information display. See **General Information** (page 102).

Ask on Exit (If Equipped)

You can set the information display to ask you each time which level of guard you wish to set.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Using the information display controls, scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the **OK** button.
Advanced Settings	Press the **OK** button.
Alarm system	Press the **OK** button.
Ask on exit	Press the **OK** button.
Reduced	Appears in the information display each time you switch your vehicle off. If you wish to arm the alarm with reduced guard, press the **OK** button when this message appears. If you wish to arm the alarm with full guard, leave your vehicle without pressing the **OK** button.

Note: *Selecting reduced guard does not set the alarm permanently to reduced guard. It sets it to reduced guard only for the current locking cycle.*

Arming the Alarm

To arm the alarm, lock your vehicle. See **Doors and Locks** (page 50).

Disarming the Alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors and switching your vehicle on, or by unlocking the doors or the liftgate with the remote control.

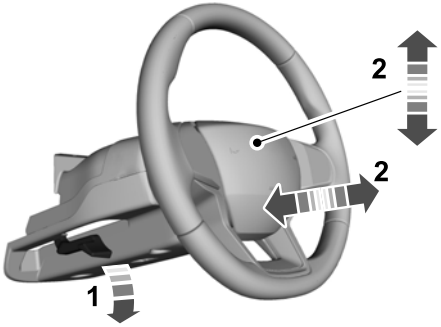
Note: *A valid passive key must be within the detection range of that door.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL

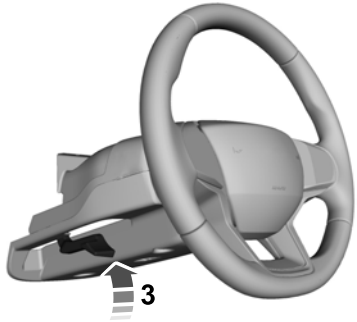
WARNING: Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

Note: *Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See* ***Sitting in the Correct Position*** *(page 150).*



E279960

1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.



E279962

3. Lock the steering column.

LOCKING THE STEERING WHEEL

The steering wheel lock locks shortly after you have parked your vehicle and the passive key is outside it.

Note: *The steering wheel lock does not lock when the ignition is on or when your vehicle is moving.*

Unlocking the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel lock unlocks when the system detects a valid passive key inside your vehicle. If the steering wheel lock relocks, switch the ignition on to unlock it.

Note: *You may have to slightly rotate the steering wheel to assist unlocking it.*

AUDIO CONTROL



E280796

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing



E280795

You can operate the following functions with the control:

Press to decrease volume level.

Press to increase volume level.

Press to silence the current media

Press to access phone mode or to answer a phone call.

Press to end a phone call.

Press to access the previous media selection.

Press to access the next media selection.

VOICE CONTROL

The controls are on the steering wheel.

Press and release to activate voice recognition.

CRUISE CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH LANE CENTERING



E289643

See **What Is Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering** (page 235).

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

CRUISE CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO



E280797

See **How Does Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go Work** (page 235).

CRUISE CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: CRUISE CONTROL



See **What Is Cruise Control** (page 233).

INFORMATION DISPLAY CONTROL - VEHICLES WITHOUT: HEAD UP DISPLAY (HUD)



E280795

See **Information Displays** (page 102).

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

INFORMATION DISPLAY CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: HEAD UP DISPLAY (HUD)



See **Information Displays** (page 102).

HEATED STEERING WHEEL (IF EQUIPPED)

The heated steering wheel button is on the climate controls.

Press the button to switch the heated steering wheel on and off.

Note: *You can use the heated steering wheel only when the engine is running.*

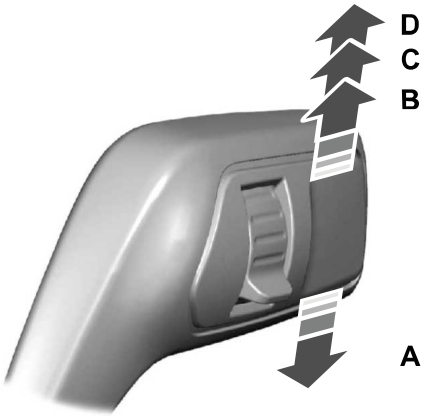
Note: *The system uses a sensor and is designed to control the temperature of the steering wheel and to prevent it from overheating.*

Note: *In warm temperatures, the steering wheel quickly reaches its maximum temperature and the system reduces the current to the heating element. This could cause you to think that the system has stopped working but it has not. This is normal.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

WINDSHIELD WIPERS

Push the lever up or down to operate the windshield wipers.



A Single wipe.
B Intermittent wipe.
C Normal wipe.
D High-speed wipe.

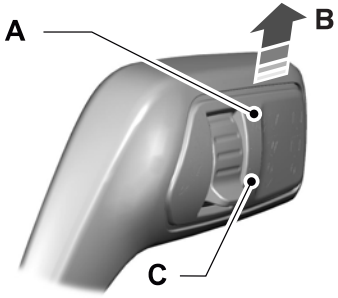
Note: *Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.*

Note: *Make sure that you switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.*

Note: *If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades.*

Note: *Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This may scratch the glass, damage the wiper blades or cause the wiper motor to burn out. Always use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.*

Intermittent Wipe



A Shortest wipe interval.
B Intermittent wipe.
C Longest wipe interval.

Use the rotary control to adjust the intermittent wipe interval.

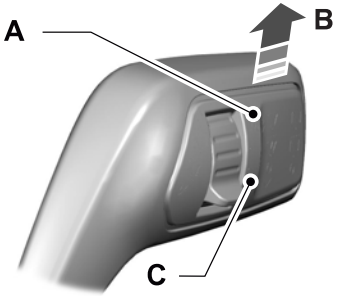
Speed Dependent Wipers

When your vehicle speed increases, the interval between wipes decreases.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

AUTOWIPERS

Wet or winter driving conditions with ice, snow or salty road mist can cause inconsistent and unexpected wiping or smearing.



A High sensitivity.
B Autowipers On.
C Low sensitivity.

Use the rotary control to adjust the sensitivity of the autowipers. When you select low sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a large amount of water on the windshield. When you select high sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a small amount of water on the windshield.

Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

In these conditions, you can do the following:

- Lower the sensitivity of the autowipers to reduce the amount of smearing on the windshield.
- Switch to normal or high-speed wipe.
- Switch autowipers off.

Note: *Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.*

Note: *Make sure that you switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.*

Note: *If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades.*

Note: *If you switch autolamps and autowipers on, the headlamps turn on when the windshield wipers continuously operate.*

Autowipers Settings

Autowipers defaults to on and remains on until you switch it off in the information display. When you switch off autowipers, the wipers operate in intermittent mode.

WINDSHIELD WASHERS



E242323

Pull the lever toward you to operate the windshield washers.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

When you release the lever, the wipers operate for a short time. When activated, a courtesy wipe occurs a short time after the wipers stop to clear any remaining washer fluid.

Note: *You can switch courtesy wipe on or off in the touchscreen. See* ***Settings*** *(page 413).*

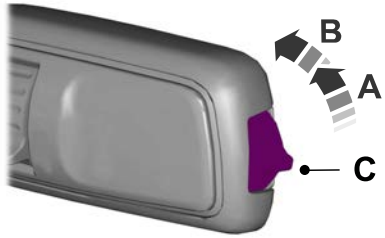
Note: *Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This could cause the washer pump to overheat.*

Front Camera Washer (If Equipped)

Operating the windshield washer also turns on the front camera washer.

REAR WINDOW WIPER AND WASHERS

Rear Window Wiper



A Intermittent wipe.

B Continuous wipe.

C Rear window wiper off.

Depending on your vehicle, when you switch on the front wipers and move the gearshift lever to reverse (R), the rear intermittent wipe may turn on.

Note: *Make sure you switch the rear window wiper off before entering a car wash.*

Rear Window Washer



E242432

Push the lever away from you to operate the rear window washer. When you release the lever, the wipers operate for a short time.

Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This could cause the washer pump to overheat.

Rear Camera Washer (If Equipped)

Switching on the rear washer also turns on the rear camera washer.

HEADLAMP WASHERS (IF EQUIPPED)

If you operate the windshield washers when the headlamps are on, the headlamp washers turn on.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Note: *The headlamp washers do not operate every time you use the windshield washers. This is to prevent the washer fluid reservoir from emptying quickly.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

Condensation in the Exterior Front Lamps and Rear Lamps

Exterior front lamps and rear lamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure.

Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

Examples of acceptable condensation are:

- The presence of a fine mist (no streaks, drip marks or large droplets).
- A fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

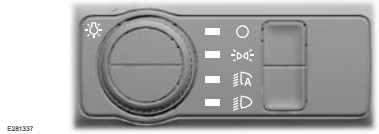
Examples of unacceptable condensation are:

- A water puddle inside the lamp.
- Streaks, drip marks or large droplets present on the interior of the lens.

If you see any unacceptable condensation, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

LIGHTING CONTROL

Lighting Control Selections


E281337

Turn the dial to make a selection.

Note: *The indicator illuminates next to the active selection.*


Lamps off.


Parking lamps, instrument panel lamps, license plate lamps and rear lamps.


Autolamps.


Headlamps on.

Note: *The lighting control defaults to autolamps every time you switch your vehicle on.*

Switching High Beam Headlamps On and Off




Push the lever away from you to switch the high beam on.

Push the lever forward again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beams off.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Flashing High Beam Headlamps



E248604

Pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the high beam headlamps.

AUTOLAMPS

WARNING: The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the headlamps on in low visibility conditions, for example daytime fog.

Autolamps turn the headlamps on in low light situations or when the wipers operate.

Switch the lighting control to the autolamps position.

Note: *The lighting control defaults to autolamps each time you switch your vehicle on.*

The headlamps remain on for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. Use the touchscreen to adjust the period of time that the headlamps remain on.

Note: *If you switch the autolamps on, you cannot switch the high beams on until the system turns the low beams on.*

Windshield Wiper Activated Headlamps

When you switch the autolamps on, the headlamps turn on within 10 seconds of switching the wipers on. They turn off approximately 60 seconds after you switch the windshield wipers off.

The headlamps do not turn on with the wipers:

- During a single wipe.
- When using the windshield washers.
- If the wipers are in intermittent mode.

Note: *If you switch the autolamps and the autowipers on, the headlamps turn on when the windshield wipers continuously operate.*

INSTRUMENT LIGHTING DIMMER

The instrument lighting dimmer buttons are on the lighting control.

Repeatedly press one of the buttons to adjust the brightness.

HEADLAMP EXIT DELAY

After you switch the ignition off, you can switch the headlamps on by pulling the direction indicator lever toward you. You will hear a short tone. The headlamps will switch off automatically after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door has been closed. You can cancel this feature by pulling the direction indicator lever toward you again or switching the ignition on.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS

WARNING: The daytime running lamps system does not activate the rear lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during low visibility driving conditions. Make sure you switch the headlamps on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a crash.

The system turns the lamps on in daylight conditions.

To switch the system on, switch the lighting control to any position except headlamps.

GLARE-FREE HIGH BEAM

WARNING: The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the high beams on or off.

WARNING: You may need to override the system when approaching other road users.

WARNING: You may need to override the system during inclement weather.

WARNING: Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.

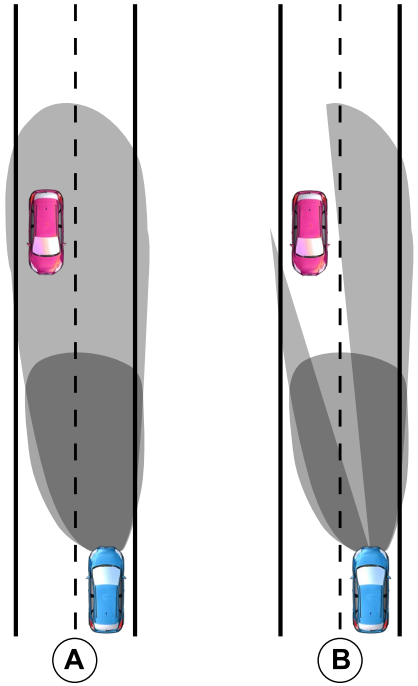
WARNING: The system may not adapt the high beams to avoid glare if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles, for example guard rails.

WARNING: Inspect and replace the windshield wiper blades regularly to make sure the camera sensor has a clear view. The windshield wiper blades must be the correct length.

About Glare-Free High Beam

The system is designed to prevent you from distracting other road users when the high beams are on.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing



A Normal High Beam.

B Glare-Free High Beam.

The system is designed to turn the high beams on if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on through your vehicle settings.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The ambient light level is low enough that high beams are required.
- There is no traffic in front of your vehicle.
- Your vehicle speed is greater than approximately 40 km/h.

The system is designed to adapt the high beams to avoid glare if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on through your vehicle settings.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or rear lamps.

The high beam headlamp indicator remains on when the system adapts the high beams to avoid glare.

The system is designed to turn the high beams off if any of the following occur:

- You switch the system off through your vehicle settings.
- You set the lighting control to any position except autolamps.
- You switch the rear fog lamps on.
- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- The system detects street lighting.
- The camera has reduced visibility.
- Your vehicle speed falls below approximately 30 km/h.

Note: *The deactivation speed is lower on curves.*

Switching Glare-Free High Beam On or Off

You can switch the system on or off through your vehicle settings.

Depending on your vehicle options, the vehicle settings may be in the following:

- Information display. See **General Information** (page 102).
- Touchscreen. See **Settings** (page 413).

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Note: *The lighting control defaults to autolamps each time you switch your vehicle on.*

Glare-Free High Beam Indicator



It illuminates to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

Overriding Glare-Free High Beam

Push the lever away from you to switch between high beam and low beam.

FRONT FOG LAMPS

Switching the Front Fog Lamps On or Off

Only switch the front fog lamps on during reduced visibility.

You can switch the front fog lamps on if any of the following occur:

- You set the lighting control to the parking lamps position.
- You set the lighting control to the headlamps position.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position and the headlamps are on.

The front fog lamp button is on the lighting control.



Press the button to switch the front fog lamps on or off.

Note: *The brightness of the daytime running lamps may decrease when the front fog lamps are switched on.*

Front Fog Lamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the front fog lamps on.

REAR FOG LAMPS

Switching the Rear Fog Lamps On or Off

WARNING: Do not use the rear fog lamps when it is raining or snowing and visibility is more than 50 m.

You can switch the rear fog lamps on if any of the following occur:

- You switched the front fog lamps on.
- You set the lighting control to the headlamps position.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position and the headlamps are on.

The rear fog lamp button is on the lighting control.



Press the button to switch the rear fog lamps on or off.

Rear Fog Lamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

HEADLAMP LEVELING - VEHICLES WITH: AUTOMATIC HEADLAMP LEVELING

This vehicle is equipped with a dynamic automatic leveling system. The headlamps do not require additional aim adjustment.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

HEADLAMP LEVELING - VEHICLES WITH: MANUAL HEADLAMP LEVELING

To adjust the level of the headlamp beams, do the following:



Rotate the control in accordance with your vehicle load to prevent you from distracting other road users when the headlamps are on.

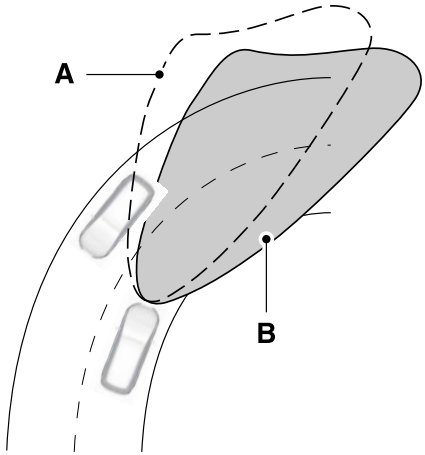
Note: *Set the control to zero when your vehicle is unloaded.*

Note: *Set the headlamp beams to give between 35–100 m of road surface illumination when your vehicle is partially or fully loaded.*

ADAPTIVE HEADLAMPS

The headlamp beams move in the same direction as the steering wheel. This provides more visibility when driving around curves.

A. Without adaptive headlamps.
B. With adaptive headlamps.



The system only works with the lighting control in the autolamp position.

You can switch the system on or off in the touchscreen.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Note: *There is a delay of two to five seconds before the system operates when you drive your vehicle.*

Note: *The system is only active at speeds above 5 km/h.*

System Check (If Equipped)

The system has a power-up movement check feature. When you start your vehicle, the lamps track left to right, then back to center to alert the driver that the system is working properly.

DIRECTION INDICATORS

Switching the Direction Indicators On and Off



Push the lever up or down to switch the direction indicators on.

Note: *Tap the lever up or down to make the direction indicators flash three times.*

Set the lever to the middle position to switch the direction indicators off.

Direction Indicator



Flashes when you switch the direction indicators on.

Note: *An increase in the rate of flashing warns of a failed indicator bulb.*

INTERIOR LAMPS

Switching All of the Interior Lamps On



Fully press the button on the overhead console towards the icon.

Switching All of the Interior Lamps Off



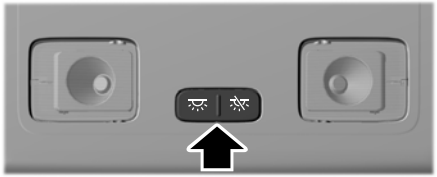
Fully press the button on the overhead console towards the icon.

Interior Lamp Function

Switching the Interior Lamp Function On

The switch is on the overhead console.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing



Set the switch to the middle position.

When you switch the interior lamp function on, the interior lamps turn on if:

- You open a door.
- You press the unlock button on the remote control.
- You switch the ignition off.

Switching the Front Interior Lamps On and Off



E249791

Press the edge of the lamp lens.

Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off

Press the edge of the lamp lens.

Note: *If the rear lamps are switched on through the overhead console, you cannot switch them off with the rear lamp switch.*

AMBIENT LIGHTING

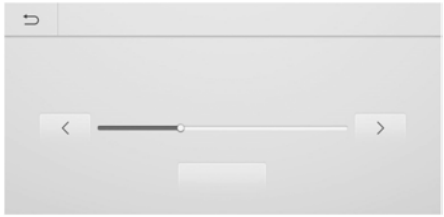
Use the touchscreen to select the following:



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

Select ***Vehicle***.

Select ***Ambient Light***.



Switching Ambient Lighting On

Drag the slider above zero brightness.

Adjusting the Brightness

Drag the slider left or right.

Switching Ambient Lighting Off

Drag the slider left to zero brightness.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

WHAT IS AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL

The system turns on high beams if it is dark enough and no other traffic is present. If it detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps, or street lighting ahead, the system turns the high beams off. Low beams remain on.

A camera sensor, centrally mounted behind the windshield of your vehicle, continuously monitors conditions to turn the high beams on and off.

SWITCHING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL ON AND OFF

WARNING: Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.

Use the touchscreen to select the following:

1. Select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Vehicle***.
3. Select ***Lighting***.

Activating the Automatic High Beam Control

Switch the lighting control to the autolamps position. See **Autolamps** (page 72).

Note: *The lighting control defaults to autolamps each time you switch your vehicle on.*

When active, the high beams turn on if all the following conditions occur:

- The ambient light level is low enough.
- There is no traffic in front of your vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than approximately 40 km/h.

When active, the high beams turn off if at least one of the following conditions occur:

- The ambient light level is high enough that you do not require high beams.
- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps.
- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- A blocked vehicle camera.
- The vehicle speed falls below approximately 30 km/h.

Note: *The deactivation speed is lower on curves.*

Note: *Certain curvy road situations may delay high beam reactivation.*

Note: *If you have a blocked sensor, the system may not operate properly. Keep the windshield free from obstruction or damage.*

Note: *The system may not operate properly in cold or inclement conditions. You can switch on the high beams by overriding the system.*

Note: *If the system detects a blockage, for example bird droppings, bug splatter, snow or ice, the system goes into low beam mode until you clear the blockage. If you have a blocked camera, a message may appear in the information display.*

Note: *Using much larger tires or equipping vehicle accessories such as snowplows can modify your vehicle's ride height and degrade automatic high beam control performance.*

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL INDICATORS

The indicator illuminates to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

OVERRIDING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL

WARNING: The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the high beams on or off.

WARNING: You may need to override the system when approaching other road users.

WARNING: You may need to override the system during inclement weather.



Push the lever away from you to switch between high beam and low beam.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

POWER WINDOWS

WARNING: Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the power windows. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: When closing the power windows, verify they are free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.



Press the control to open the window. Lift the control to close the window.

To reduce wind noise or pulsing noise when just one window is open, slightly open the opposite window.

One-Touch Down (If Equipped)

Press the switch fully and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

One-Touch Up (If Equipped)

Lift the switch fully and release it. Press or lift it again to stop the window.

Resetting One-Touch Up

Start the engine.

1. Lift and hold the window switch until you fully close the door window. Continue to hold the switch for a few seconds after you close the window.
2. Release the window switch.
3. Press and hold the window switch until you fully open the door window.
4. Release the window switch.
5. Lift and hold the window switch until you fully close the window.
6. Test for correct window operation by carrying out the one-touch down and one-touch up features.

Rear Window Lock



Press the control to lock or unlock the rear window controls. It illuminates when you lock the rear window controls.

Bounce-Back (If Equipped)

The window stops and reverses if it detects an obstruction.

Overriding the Bounce-Back Feature

WARNING: If you override bounce-back, the window does not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

Pull up the window switch and hold within a few seconds of the window reaching the bounce-back position. The window travels up with no bounce-back protection. The window stops if you release the switch before the window fully closes.

Resetting Bounce-Back

WARNING: Bounce-back is off until you reset the memory. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

If you have disconnected the battery, you must reset the bounce-back memory separately for each window.

1. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed.
2. Release the switch.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

3. Lift and hold the switch again for a few seconds.
4. Release the switch.
5. Lift and hold the switch again for a few seconds.
6. Release the switch.
7. Press and hold the switch until the window is fully open.
8. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed.
9. Release the switch.
10. Open the window and then try to close it using one-touch close.

Note: *Repeat the procedure if the window does not close when you use one-touch.*

Accessory Delay

You can use the window controls for several minutes after switching off the ignition or until opening either front door.

GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING

You can use the remote control to open and close the windows when the ignition is off.

You can switch this feature on or off in the information display. See **General Information** (page 102).

Global Opening

To open the windows and vent the moonroof, do the following:

1. Press and release the remote control unlock button.
2. Press and hold the remote control unlock button.
3. Release the button when movement starts.

Press the lock or unlock button to stop the opening function.

Note: *When you unlock your vehicle using the remote control, you can use global opening for a short period of time.*

Global Closing

WARNING: When closing the power windows, verify they are free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.

To close the windows and moonroof, do the following:

1. Press and hold the remote control lock button.
2. Release the button when movement starts.

Press the lock or unlock button to stop the closing function.

Note: *The bounce-back function is also on during global closing.*

EXTERIOR MIRRORS

Power Exterior Mirrors

WARNING: Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing



A Left-hand mirror
B Right-hand mirror



Press the arrows to adjust the mirror.

Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors

Push the mirror toward the door window glass. Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when returning it to its original position.

Auto-Folding Mirrors (If Equipped)

The exterior mirrors fold in toward the glass after you place the transmission into park (P), turn off the vehicle, open and close the driver side door and lock the vehicle. The exterior mirrors unfold and return to their driving position after you unlock the vehicle and open and close the driver side door.

You can switch this feature on and off through the information display. See **General Information** (page 102).

You can fold the mirrors on demand by pressing the power-folding mirror control on the door. The control lights and the mirrors fold in toward the glass. Press the control again to unfold the mirrors. The control light turns off.

Note: *If you use the power-folding control to fold the mirrors on demand with the auto fold feature on, you must use the control again to unfold them.*

Loose Mirror

If you manually fold your power-folding mirrors, they may not work properly even after you re-position them. You need to reset them if:

- The mirrors vibrate when you drive.
- The mirrors feel loose.
- The mirrors do not stay in the folded or unfolded position.
- One of the mirrors is not in its normal driving position.

To reset the power-fold feature, use the power-folding mirror control to fold and unfold the mirrors. You may hear a loud noise as you reset the power-folding mirrors. This sound is normal. Repeat this process as needed each time you manually fold the mirrors.

Heated Exterior Mirrors (If Equipped)

See **Heated Exterior Mirrors** (page 149).

Memory Mirrors (If Equipped)

You can save and recall the mirror positions through the memory function.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Signal Indicator Mirrors (If Equipped)

The outer portion of the appropriate mirror housing blinks when you switch on the turn signal.

Puddle Lamps (If Equipped)

The lamps on the bottom part of the mirror housing light when you use your transmitter to unlock the doors or when you open a door.

Blind Spot Monitor (If Equipped)

See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 255).

INTERIOR MIRROR

WARNING: Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

Note: *Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.*

You can adjust the interior mirror to your preference. Some mirrors also have a second pivot point. This lets you move the mirror head up or down and from side to side.

Manual Dimming Mirror

Pull the tab below the mirror toward you to reduce the effect of bright light from behind.

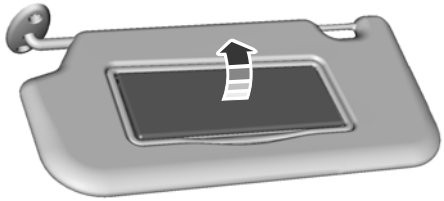
Automatic Dimming Mirror (If Equipped)

Note: *Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror. A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint may also block light from reaching the sensor.*

The mirror dims to reduce the effect of bright light from behind. It returns to normal when the bright light from behind is no longer present or if you shift into reverse (R).

SUN VISORS

Illuminated Vanity Mirror (If Equipped)



E162197

Lift the cover to switch the lamp on.

MOONROOF (IF EQUIPPED)

WARNING: Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the moonroof. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

WARNING: When closing the moonroof, verify that it is free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the roof opening.

The moonroof and sunscreen controls are located on the overhead console.

The moonroof and sunscreen have a one-touch open and close feature. To stop them during one-touch operation, press the control a second time.

Opening and Closing the Moonroof



A **Moonroof open.** Press and release to open the moonroof.

B **Moonroof vent/close.** Press and release to vent or close the moonroof.

C **Sunshade open.** Press and release to open the sunshade. The sunshade opens automatically with the moonroof. You can also open the sunshade with the moonroof closed.

D **Sunshade close.** Press and release to close the sunshade.

Note: *The sunshade stops short of its fully opened position for the comfort of rear passengers. To open the sunshade fully, press the control again.*

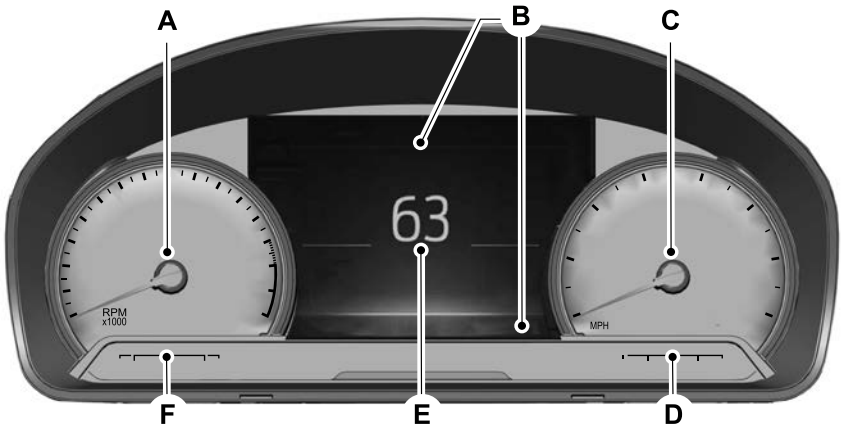
Bounce-Back

The moonroof will stop automatically while closing. It will reverse some distance if there is an obstacle in the way.

Press and hold the front of the control within two seconds of a bounce-back event to override this function. While bounce-back is active, the closing force increases for each of the next three times that you close the moonroof.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

GAUGES - VEHICLES WITH: 6.5 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN, EXCLUDING: PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)



A Tachometer.
B Information bar.
C Speedometer.
D Fuel gauge.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

E Information display.
F Engine coolant temperature gauge.

Information Bar

Displays information related to the navigation, outside air temperature, odometer and distance to empty.

Information Display

Information that appears depends on your vehicle settings. See **General Information** (page 102).

Fuel Gauge

The fuel gauge indicates about how much fuel is in the fuel tank.

The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

Note: *The fuel gauge may vary slightly when your vehicle is moving or on a slope.*

Low Fuel Reminder

A low fuel level reminder displays and sounds when the distance to empty reaches 120 km to empty for MyKey, and at 80 km, 40 km, 20 km and 0 km for all vehicle keys.

Note: *The low fuel reminder can appear at different fuel gauge positions depending on fuel economy conditions. This variation is normal.*

Distance to Empty

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on the fuel remaining in the tank. Changes in driving pattern can cause the value to not only decrease but also increase or stay constant for periods of time.

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

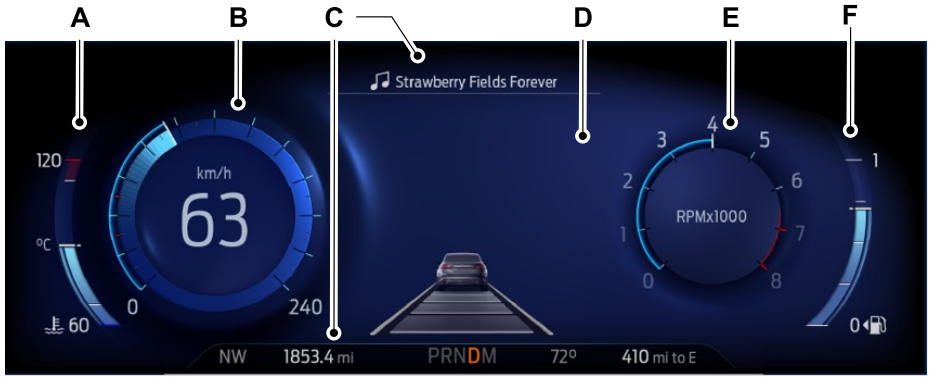
WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Indicates engine coolant temperature. At normal operating temperature, the level indicator will be in the normal range. If the engine coolant temperature exceeds the normal range, stop your vehicle as soon as safely possible, switch off the engine and let the engine cool.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

GAUGES - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN, EXCLUDING: PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

Note: *Displays may appear slightly different depending on region or your personal settings.*



A Coolant temperature gauge.
B Speedometer.
C Information bar.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

D Information display.
E Tachometer.
F Fuel gauge.

Information Bar

Displays information related to the current audio source, navigation, outside air temperature and distance to empty.

Information Display

Information that appears depends on current gauge view and on-demand settings. See **General Information** (page 102).

Fuel Gauge

The fuel gauge indicates about how much fuel is in the fuel tank.

The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

Note: *The fuel gauge may vary slightly when your vehicle is moving or on a slope.*

Low Fuel Reminder

A low fuel level reminder displays and sounds when the distance to empty reaches 120 km to empty for MyKey, and at 80 km, 40 km, 20 km and 0 km for all vehicle keys.

Note: *The low fuel reminder can appear at different fuel gauge positions depending on fuel economy conditions. This variation is normal.*

Distance to Empty

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on the fuel remaining in the tank. Changes in driving pattern can cause the value to not only decrease but also increase or stay constant for periods of time.

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

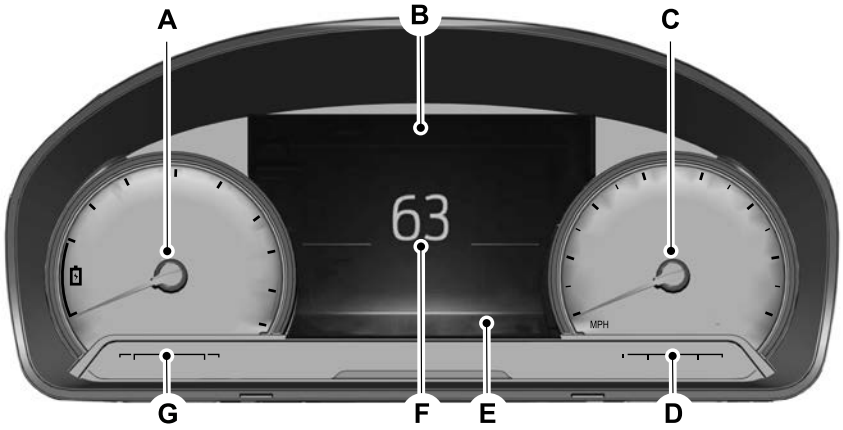
WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Indicates engine coolant temperature. At normal operating temperature, the level indicator will be in the normal range. If the engine coolant temperature exceeds the normal range, stop your vehicle as soon as safely possible, switch off the engine and let the engine cool.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

GAUGES - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV), VEHICLES WITH: 6.5 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

Note: *Displays may appear slightly different depending on region.*



A Power gauge.
B Information bar.
C Speedometer.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

D Fuel gauge.
E Battery gauge and vehicle driving range.
F Information display.
G Engine coolant temperature gauge.

Power Gauge

The power gauge displays power to the wheels when accelerating or maintaining speed. When slowing down by lifting your foot off the accelerator pedal or pressing the brake the gauge displays the power captured by the regenerative braking system and returned to the high voltage battery.

Information Bar

Displays information related to the navigation, outside air temperature, odometer and distance to empty.

Fuel Gauge

The fuel gauge indicates about how much fuel is in the fuel tank.

The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

Note: *The fuel gauge may vary slightly when your vehicle is moving or on a slope.*

Low Fuel Reminder

A low fuel level reminder displays and sounds when the distance to empty reaches 120 km to empty for MyKey, and at 80 km, 40 km, 20 km and 0 km for all vehicle keys.

Note: *The low fuel reminder can appear at different fuel gauge positions depending on fuel economy conditions. This variation is normal.*

Battery Gauge

The high voltage battery gauge displays the total amount of charge associated with your available electric only driving range. A full fill represents the total amount of energy you can get from an external charge, plugging your vehicle in. When the fill reaches empty the powertrain system automatically switches to hybrid operation. See **Plug-In Hybrid Vehicle Operation** (page 171).

Vehicle Driving Range





Vehicle range indicates the estimated distance your vehicle can travel with the energy currently onboard. Estimates vary based on the energy used while driving.

Changes in driving pattern can cause the values to not only decrease but also increase or stay constant for periods of time.

The amount of energy being used while driving is affected by:

- Mild or aggressive acceleration or braking.
- Your vehicle speed.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

- Use of accessories such as climate control.
- Ambient temperature and other weather conditions.
- Driving in a city or on a highway.
- Driving on hilly road conditions.

Note: *It is normal for vehicle range estimates to vary due to changes in average energy usage. This is why you typically see different range estimates each time you fill up your fuel tank or fully charge your battery.*

Gasoline Distance to Empty

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on the fuel remaining in the tank.

Electric Range

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on electric power only with the engine off.

Information Display

Information that appears depends on your vehicle settings. See **General Information** (page 102).

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

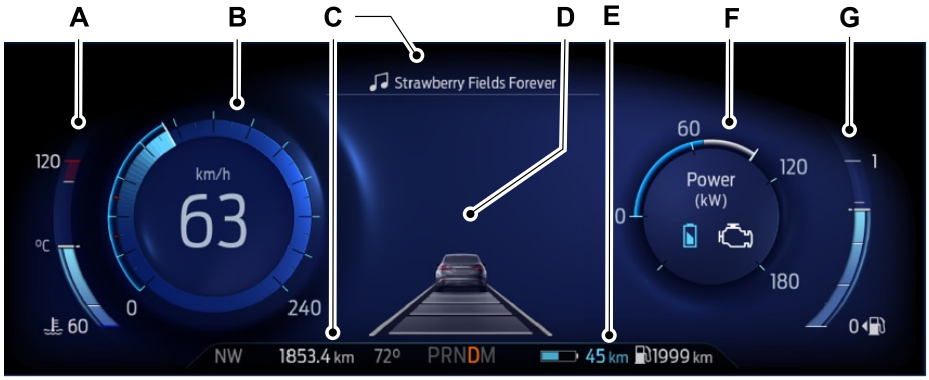
WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Indicates engine coolant temperature. At normal operating temperature, the level indicator will be in the normal range. If the engine coolant temperature exceeds the normal range, stop your vehicle as soon as safely possible, switch off the engine and let the engine cool.

GAUGES - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV), VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

Note: *Displays may appear slightly different depending on region or your personal settings.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing



A Coolant temperature gauge.
B Speedometer.
C Information bar.
D Information display.
E Battery gauge and vehicle driving range.
F Power gauge.
G Fuel gauge.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Information Bar

Displays information related to the current audio source, navigation, outside air temperature and distance to empty.

Information Display

Information that appears depends on current gauge view and on-demand settings. See **General Information** (page 102).

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Indicates engine coolant temperature. At normal operating temperature, the level indicator will be in the normal range. If the engine coolant temperature exceeds the normal range, stop your vehicle as soon as safely possible, switch off the engine and let the engine cool.

Fuel Gauge

The fuel gauge indicates about how much fuel is in the fuel tank.

The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

Note: *The fuel gauge may vary slightly when your vehicle is moving or on a slope.*

Low Fuel Reminder

A low fuel level reminder displays and sounds when the distance to empty reaches 120 km to empty for MyKey, and at 80 km, 40 km, 20 km and 0 km for all vehicle keys.

Note: *The low fuel reminder can appear at different fuel gauge positions depending on fuel economy conditions. This variation is normal.*

Battery Gauge

The high voltage battery gauge displays the total amount of charge associated with your available electric only driving range. A full fill represents the total amount of energy you can get from an external charge, plugging your vehicle in. When the fill reaches empty the powertrain system automatically switches to hybrid operation. See **Plug-In Hybrid Vehicle Operation** (page 171).

Vehicle Driving Range





Vehicle range indicates the estimated distance your vehicle will travel with the energy currently onboard. Estimates will vary based on the energy used while driving.

Changes in driving pattern can cause the values to not only decrease but also increase or stay constant for periods of time.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

The amount of energy being used while driving is affected by:

- Mild or aggressive acceleration or braking.
- Your vehicle speed.
- Use of accessories such as climate control.
- Ambient temperature and other weather conditions.
- Driving in a city or on a highway.
- Driving on hilly road conditions.

Note: *It is normal for vehicle range estimates to vary due to changes in average energy usage. This is why you typically see different range estimates each time you fill up your fuel tank or fully charge your battery.*

Gasoline Distance to Empty

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on the fuel remaining in the tank.

Electric Range

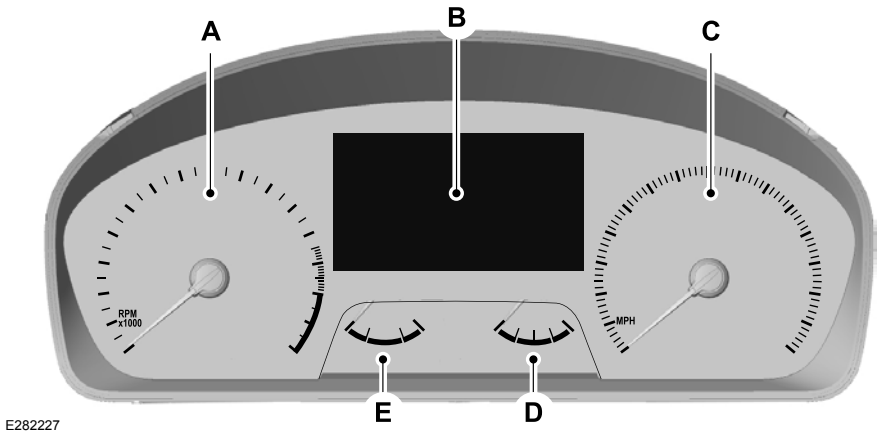
Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on electric power only with the engine off.

Power Gauge

The power gauge displays power to the wheels when accelerating or maintaining speed. The high voltage battery power and engine power contributions are distinguished by color and added together to indicate total power to the wheels. When slowing down by lifting your foot off the accelerator pedal or pressing the brake, the power captured by the regenerative braking system and returned to the high voltage battery is displayed in green.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

GAUGES - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN



A Tachometer.
B Information display.
C Speedometer.
D Fuel gauge.
E Engine coolant temperature gauge.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Information Display

Information that appears depends on your vehicle settings. See **General Information** (page 102).

Fuel Gauge

The fuel gauge indicates about how much fuel is in the fuel tank.

The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

Note: *The fuel gauge may vary slightly when your vehicle is moving or on a slope.*

Low Fuel Reminder

A low fuel level reminder displays and sounds when the distance to empty reaches 120 km to empty for MyKey, and at 80 km, 40 km, 20 km and 0 km for all vehicle keys.

Note: *The low fuel reminder can appear at different fuel gauge positions depending on fuel economy conditions. This variation is normal.*

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

Indicates engine coolant temperature. At normal operating temperature, the level indicator will be in the normal range. If the engine coolant temperature exceeds the normal range, stop your vehicle as soon as safely possible, switch off the engine and let the engine cool.

WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

The following warning lamps and indicators alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious. Some lamps illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

Note: *Some warning indicators appear in the information display and function the same as a warning lamp, but do not display when you start your vehicle.*

Adaptive Cruise Control



The speed control system indicator light changes color to indicate what mode the system is in.

Illuminates white when you switch on the adaptive cruise control system. Turns off when the speed control system is turned off.

Illuminates green when you engage the adaptive cruise control system. Turns off when you disengage the speed control system.

Anti-Lock Braking System



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a system error. You continue to have the normal braking (without ABS) unless the brake system warning lamp also illuminates. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Automatic High Beam Control



Illuminates when this feature is on.

Auto Hold Active



Illuminates when the system holds your vehicle stationary.

Auto Hold Unavailable



Illuminates when the system is on, but unavailable to hold your vehicle stationary.

Auto Start-stop (If Equipped)



Illuminates when the engine shuts down or in conjunction with a message.

Battery



If it illuminates while driving, it indicates a system error. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment and have the system checked by an authorized dealer immediately.

Blind Spot Monitor



Illuminates when you switch this feature off or in conjunction with a message. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 255).

Brake System Warning Lamp

WARNING: Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It may take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.

Note: *Indicators vary depending on region.*

This lamp is a dual function lamp and illuminates when:

- You apply the parking brake with the ignition on.
- Your vehicle has a brake fault or low brake fluid level, regardless of parking brake position.



If the lamp illuminates when you are moving, you may have the parking brake applied. Make sure the parking brake is off. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible if the lamp continues to illuminate.

Cruise Control



Illuminates when you switch this feature on.

Direction Indicator



Illuminates when you switch on the left or right direction indicator or the hazard flasher. If the indicators stay on or flash faster, check for a burned out bulb. See **Changing a Bulb** (page 326).

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Door Ajar



Illuminates when the ignition is on and any door is not completely closed.

Electric Park Brake

Note: *Indicators vary depending on region.*





Illuminates or flashes when the electric parking brake has a system error. See **Electric Parking Brake** (page 211).

Engine Coolant Temperature



Illuminates when the engine coolant temperature is high. Stop your vehicle as soon as possible, switch off the engine and let it cool. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 318).

Engine Oil



If it illuminates with the engine running or when you are driving, this indicates a system error. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 314).

Note: *Do not resume your journey if it illuminates despite the level being correct. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer immediately.*

Fasten Seatbelt



Illuminates and a tone sounds to remind you to fasten your seatbelt. See **Seatbelt Reminder** (page 29).

Fasten Rear Seatbelt



Illuminates and a tone sounds to signal the rear seatbelts are not fastened.

Front Airbag



If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, continues to flash or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Front Fog Lamps



Illuminates when you switch the front fog lamps on.

High Beam



Illuminates when you switch the high beam headlamps on. It flashes when you use the headlamp flasher.

Hood Ajar



Illuminates when the ignition is on and the hood is not completely closed.

Lamps On



Illuminates when you switch the low beam headlamps or the parking lamps on.

Liftgate Ajar



Illuminates when the liftgate is not completely closed.

Low Beam Warning



Illuminates when the low beam headlamp bulb is not functioning properly.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Low Fuel Level



Illuminates when the fuel level is low or the fuel tank is nearly empty. Refuel as soon as possible.

Low Tire Pressure Warning



Illuminates when the tire pressure is low. If the lamp remains on with the engine running or when driving, check the tire pressure as soon as possible.

It also illuminates momentarily when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

Low Washer Fluid



Illuminates when the windshield washer fluid is low.

Powertrain Fault



Illuminates when the system detects a powertrain or a 4WD/AWD fault. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Rear Fog Lamps



Illuminates when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

Service Engine Soon



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on prior to engine start to check the bulb and to indicate whether your vehicle is ready for Inspection and Maintenance (I/M) testing.

Normally, it illuminates until the engine is cranked and automatically turns off if no system errors are present. However, if after 15 seconds it flashes eight times, this indicates that your vehicle is not ready for Inspection and Maintenance (I/M) testing. See **Catalytic Converter** (page 185).

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a system error. The On Board Diagnostics system has detected an error in the vehicle emission control system.

If it flashes, engine misfire may be occurring. Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Failure to respond to the warning lamp may cause component damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Stability Control



It flashes when the system is active. If it remains illuminated or does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, this indicates a system error. During a system error the system switches off. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer immediately. See **Using Stability Control** (page 218).

Stability Control Off



Illuminates when you switch the system off. It goes out when you switch the system back on or when you switch the ignition off. See **Using Stability Control** (page 218).

AUDIBLE WARNINGS AND INDICATORS

Key in Ignition Warning (If Equipped)

Sounds when you open the driver door and you have left the key in the ignition.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Keyless Warning

Sounds the horn twice when you exit your vehicle with the remote control, after the last door is closed and your keyless vehicle is in RUN, indicating your vehicle is still on.

Headlamps On Warning

Sounds when you remove the key from the ignition and open the driver door and you have left the headlamps or parking lamps on.

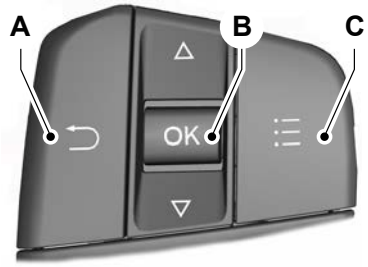
Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

You can control various systems on your vehicle using the buttons on the right-hand side of the steering wheel. The information display provides the corresponding information.

Information Display Controls



E250032

A Return button.
B OK button.
C Menu button.

Return Button

Use the return button to go back or to exit.

***OK* Button**

Use the ***OK*** button to make a selection. You can also use it to scroll through a menu.

Menu Button

Use the menu button on the main screen to display the submenu.

Display Menu



This icon shows the features on or off status. A check in the box indicates the feature is on, and unchecked indicates the feature is off.

Note: *Some options may appear different or not at all if the items are optional.*

Note: *Some MyKey menu options only appear if MyKey is enabled and at least one MyKey is programmed.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Trip Menu

Trip Menu	
Trip 1	
Trip 2	
Reset Individual Values	Select Your Setting
Configure View	Select Your Setting

- Trip Odometer - Registers the distance traveled of individual journeys or the total distance since the function was last reset.
- Trip Timer - Registers the elapsed time of individual journeys or the total time since the function was last reset.
- Average Fuel - Indicates the average fuel consumption of individual journeys or the average fuel consumption since the function was last reset.
- Average Speed - Indicates the average vehicle speed of individual journeys or the average vehicle speed since the function was last reset.
- Distance to Empty - Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on the fuel remaining in the tank. Changes in driving pattern can cause the value to not only decrease but also increase or stay constant for periods of time.

Note: *Hold **OK** to reset fuel history and average fuel economy.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

MyView

MyView
Digital Speedometer
Fuel Economy
Trip/Audio
Eco Coach
Calm Screen

Driver Assistance

Driver Assist.	
Eco Coach	Select Your Setting

Navigation

Navigation
Menu options covered in the SYNC chapter. See **Navigation** (page 402).

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Audio

Audio
Menu options covered in the SYNC chapter. See **Settings** (page 413).

Phone

Phone
Menu options covered in the SYNC chapter. See **Phone** (page 400).

Settings

Settings		
Information	Contains vehicle status information. Select Your Setting.	
Display	Language	Select Your Setting
	Measure unit	
	Temperature unit	
	Tire Pressure	
Driver Assistance	Select Your Setting	
Vehicle Maintenance	Oil Life	Select Your Setting

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Settings		
	Tire Pressure	
MyKey	MyKey Info	
	Create MyKey	

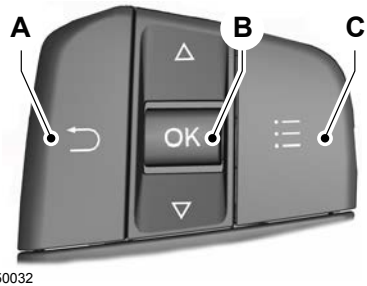
Note: *Additional vehicle settings are available through your touchscreen. See* ***Settings*** *(page 413).*

GENERAL INFORMATION - VEHICLES WITH: 6.5 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

You can control various systems on your vehicle using the buttons on the right-hand side of the steering wheel. The information display provides the corresponding information.

Information Display Controls



E250032

A Return button.
B OK button.
C Menu button.

Return Button

Use the return button to go back or to exit.

OK Button

Use the ***OK*** button to make a selection. You can also use it to scroll through a menu.

Menu Button

Use the menu button on the main screen to display the submenu.

Display Menu



This icon shows the features on or off status. A check in the box indicates the feature is on, and unchecked indicates the feature is off.

Note: *Some options may appear different or not at all if the items are optional.*

Note: *Some MyKey menu options only appear if MyKey is enabled and at least one MyKey is programmed.*

Select Screens

Select Screens
Menu options covered in personalized settings. See **Personalized Settings** (page 112).

Navigation

Navigation
Menu options covered in the SYNC chapter. See **Navigation** (page 402).

Audio

Audio
Menu options covered in the SYNC chapter. See **Settings** (page 413).

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Phone

Phone
Menu options covered in the SYNC chapter. See **Phone** (page 400).

Settings

Settings	
Brake Coach	
Oil Life	Percent Oil Life Indication XXX% Hold Ok to Reset
Tire Monitor	Hold Ok to Reset
Neutral Tow	Hold Ok to Initialize

Note: *Additional vehicle settings are available through your touchscreen. See* ***Settings*** *(page 413).*

Display Setup

Display Setup	
Speedometer Units	
Driving History[1]	Hold **OK** to Reset

[1] Hybrid only

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Note: *Additional display settings are available through your touchscreen. See* ***Settings*** *(page 413).*

Hybrid Display Information (If Equipped)

Displays unique hybrid vehicle information when you shut off your vehicle or come to a stop.

Brake Coach

The Brake Coach appears after the vehicle has come to a stop. It coaches you to brake in a manner that maximizes the amount of energy returned through the regenerative braking system.

The percent displayed is an indication of the regenerative braking efficiency with 100% representing the maximum amount of energy recovery. Brake Coach can be turned on or off in the settings menu.

Trip Summary

Displays upon shutting off your vehicle. The values are cumulative since you last started your vehicle.

The information shown is the same as the This Trip on demand screen. See **Personalized Settings** (page 112).

Vehicle Charging Status

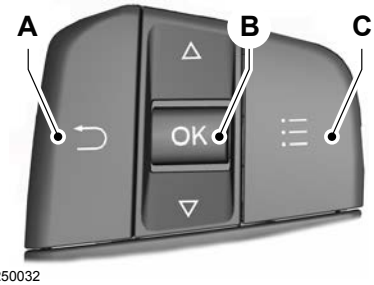
Displays when you switch off your vehicle and when you switch on your vehicle while plugged in. Charging status includes the charge start or charge end time as appropriate. You can modify your vehicle charge settings through the touchscreen. See **SYNC™ 3** (page 385).

GENERAL INFORMATION - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

You can control various systems on your vehicle using the buttons on the right-hand side of the steering wheel. The information display provides the corresponding information.

Information Display Controls



E250032

A Return button.
B OK button.
C Menu button.

Return Button

Use the return button to go back or to exit.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

OK Button

Use the ***OK*** button to make a selection. You can also use it to scroll through a menu.

Menu Button

Use the menu button on the main screen to display the submenu.

Display Menu



This icon shows the features on or off status. A check in the box indicates the feature is on, and unchecked indicates the feature is off.

Note: *Some options may appear different or not at all if the items are optional.*

Note: *Some MyKey menu options only appear if MyKey is enabled and at least one MyKey is programmed.*

Select Screens

Select Screens
Menu options covered in personalized settings. See **Personalized Settings** (page 112).

Navigation

Navigation
Menu options covered in the SYNC chapter. See **Navigation** (page 402).

Audio

Audio
Menu options covered in the SYNC chapter. See **Settings** (page 413).

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Phone

Phone
Menu options covered in the SYNC chapter. See **Phone** (page 400).

Settings

Settings	
Brake Coach	
Oil Life	Percent Oil Life Indication XXX% Hold Ok to Reset
Tire Monitor	Hold Ok to Reset
Neutral Tow	Hold Ok to Initialize

Note: *Additional vehicle settings are available through your touchscreen. See* ***Settings*** *(page 413).*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Display Setup

Display Setup	
Show Tachometer	
Show Power Gauge[1]	
Speedometer Units	
Eco Coach	Select Your Setting
Driving History[1]	Hold **OK** to Reset

[1] Hybrid only

Note: *Additional display settings are available through your touchscreen. See* ***Settings*** *(page 413).*

Hybrid Display Information (If Equipped)

Displays unique hybrid vehicle information when you shut off your vehicle or come to a stop.

Brake Coach

The Brake Coach appears after the vehicle has come to a stop. It coaches you to brake in a manner that maximizes the amount of energy returned through the regenerative braking system.

The percent displayed is an indication of the regenerative braking efficiency with 100% representing the maximum amount of energy recovery. Brake Coach can be turned on or off in the settings menu.

Trip Summary

Displays upon shutting off your vehicle. The values are cumulative since you last started your vehicle.

The information shown is the same as the This Trip on demand screen. See **General Information** (page 102).

Vehicle Charging Status

Displays when you switch off your vehicle and when you switch on your vehicle while plugged in. Charging status includes the charge start or charge end time as appropriate. You can modify your vehicle charge settings through the touchscreen. See **SYNC™ 3** (page 385).

PERSONALIZED SETTINGS

Select one of these options to display on your main screen.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Note: *Some items may appear slightly different.*

Note: *Some items are optional and may not appear at all.*

Note: *EV Now information is only available when you switch on the EV Now drive mode.*

Select Screens
Calm Screen
Fuel Economy
Trip 1
Trip 2
This Trip[4]
EV Coach[4]
Electric Efficiency[4]
Eco Coach[1]
Eco Behavior[2]
Tire Pressure
Intelligent AWD
Off Road
Trailer Light Check
Seatbelts

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Select Screens
Auto Startstop[3]
Now Playing[1]
EV Now[4]

[1] 6 inch display only.
[2] 12 inch display only.
[3] Non-hybrid only.
[4] Hybrid only.

After making your selection:

- Some features offer more information by pressing the **OK** button.
- You can also hold **OK** to reset your fuel economy and trip 1 and 2.

Fuel Economy

An instant fuel economy gauge is provided along with average fuel economy. Average fuel economy is continuously averaged since the last reset.

Hybrid features:

- When the gasoline engine is off the instant fuel economy gauge is replaced with an electric driving message.
- For plug-in vehicles, both electric only and hybrid operation are included in the calculation. More electric only driving will result in greater average fuel economy.

While viewing this screen you can reset your average fuel economy by pressing and holding **OK**.

Trip 1 and 2

Provides trip timer, trip average fuel economy, total trip distance traveled, and distance traveled. For hybrid vehicles, the trip also shows the distance traveled on electric power only.

Press and hold **OK** to reset.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Hybrid Information (If Equipped)

This Trip

Provides trip timer, trip average fuel economy, total trip distance traveled, and distance traveled on electric power only with the engine off. If the gasoline engine has not turned on during the trip then trip average fuel economy is not shown. This trip resets each time you start your vehicle.

EV Coach

EV Coach can help you to get the most out of your vehicle's electric driving and regenerative braking capabilities.

When you are accelerating or maintaining speed you will see a blue or white solid bar indicating vehicle power. You may also see a blue rectangular box which shows the power level at which the engine will turn on.

- When your power level is within the box the color of the bar will be blue. This means you are in electric operation and the engine is off.
- When your power level is outside of the box the color of the bar will be white. This means you are in hybrid operation with a combination of the electric motor and the engine providing vehicle power.

When you are decelerating with either your foot off the accelerator pedal or on the brake pedal you will see a green or white solid bar indicating the power being used to slow down the vehicle. You may also see a green rectangular box which shows the amount of power that can be recaptured by the regenerative braking system and returned to the high voltage battery.

- When your power is level is completely within the box the color of the bar will be all green. This means that the regenerative braking system is being used to efficiently slow the vehicle down and return the maximum percentage of energy to the high voltage battery.
- When your power level is outside of the green box then the bar will be white. This means that both the regenerative braking system and conventional braking system are being used.

Electric Efficiency

Note: *This feature applies to plug-in vehicles only.*

This screen shows your average driving distance per kWh of electricity used on your plug-in hybrid vehicle. The value is calculated only when your available electric range is being used and the gasoline engine is off.

Distance per full charge is also shown. This is an estimate of the electric range you would have if you plugged in and fully charged your vehicle right now. The higher your electric efficiency, the higher your distance per full charge.

Your electric efficiency is affected by your driving style and route, climate control use, outside temperature and other factors. Best efficiency is achieved in mild ambient temperatures with mild to moderate acceleration and braking, moderate speeds and low climate control usage.

INFORMATION MESSAGES

Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all of the messages display or are available.

Certain messages may be abbreviated or shortened depending upon which cluster type you have.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing



E222314

Press the **OK** button to acknowledge and remove some messages from the information display. Other messages will be removed automatically after a short time.

Certain messages need to be confirmed before you can access the menus.

Active Park

Message	Action
Active Park Fault	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Message	Action
Adaptive Cruise Malfunction	A radar malfunction is preventing the adaptive cruise from engaging.
Front Sensor Not Aligned	
Adaptive Cruise Not Available	Conditions exist such that the adaptive cruise cannot function properly.
Adaptive Cruise Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	The radar is blocked because of poor radar visibility due to bad weather or ice/mud/water in front of radar. Driver can typically clean the sensor to resolve.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Message	Action
Normal Cruise Active Adaptive Braking Off	Displayed when the automatic braking has been disabled.
Adaptive Cruise - Driver Resume Control	Displayed when the adaptive cruise has reinstated controls to the driver.
Adaptive Cruise Speed Too Low to Activate	Displays when the vehicle speed is too slow to activate the adaptive cruise.

Adaptive Headlamps

Message	Action
Check Headlamp System See Manual	Displays when a system error has occurred. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

AdvanceTrac™ and Traction Control

Message	Action
Service AdvanceTrac	The system detects a condition that requires service. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
AdvanceTrac Off	The status of the AdvanceTrac system after you switched it off.
AdvanceTrac On	The status of the AdvanceTrac system after you switched it on.
AdvanceTrac OFF in 4x4 LOW	The system is off while the vehicle is in 4x4 low.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Message	Action
AdvanceTrac SPORT MODE	The status of the AdvanceTrac sport mode after you switched it on.
Traction Control Off	The status of the traction control system after you switched it off.
Traction Control On	The status of the traction control system after you switched it on.

Alarm

Message	Action
Vehicle Alarm To Stop Alarm, Start Vehicle.	Alarm triggered due to unauthorized entry. See **Anti-Theft Alarm** (page 61).

Auto-Start-Stop

Message	Action
Auto StartStop Press Brake to Start Engine	Press the brake pedal to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Press a Pedal to Start Engine	Press the brake pedal or the accelerator pedal to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Select Neutral To Start Engine	Shift into neutral (N) to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Shift to P, then Restart Engine	Shift into park (P) and restart the engine yourself.
Auto StartStop Manual Restart Required	The system is not functioning. Restart the engine yourself.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

AWD

Message	Action
AWD Temporarily Disabled	The all-wheel drive system temporarily turns off to protect itself from overheating.
AWD Temporarily Locked	The all-wheel drive system is locking up the torque transfer clutch to help reduce clutch temperature.
AWD OFF	The all-wheel drive system temporarily turns off to protect itself from overheating or if you are using the temporary spare tire.
AWD Restored	The all-wheel drive system will resume normal function and clear this message after driving a short distance with the road tire re-installed or after the system cools.
AWD Fault Service Required	The all-wheel drive system is not operating properly. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer.
Change AWD Power Transfer Unit Lube	Displayed when the transfer case fluid requires service.
AWD Power Transfer Unit Lube Set to New	Displayed when the transfer case fluid has been changed and reset to new.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Battery and Charging System (12 Volt)

Message	Action
Check Charging System	The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Charging System Service Soon	The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Charging System Service Now	The charging system needs servicing. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Battery State of Charge Low	The battery management system determines that the 12V battery is at a low state of charge. Start the engine to charge the battery or charge the battery using an aftermarket battery charger. This message clears once you restart your vehicle and the battery state of charge has recovered.
Turn Power Off To Save Battery	The battery management system determines that the battery is at a low state of charge. Turn the ignition off as soon as possible to protect the battery. This message will clear once the vehicle has been started and the battery state of charge has recovered. Turning off unnecessary electrical loads will allow faster battery state-of-charge recovery.
Low Battery Features Temporarily Turned Off	Displayed when the battery management system detects an extended low-voltage condition. Various vehicle features will be disabled to help preserve the battery. Turn off as many of the electrical loads as soon as possible to improve system voltage. If the system voltage has recovered, the disabled features will operate again as normal.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Battery and Charging System (High Voltage)

Message	Action
Vehicle Plugged In ? Yes No	Your vehicle needs confirmation it is unplugged before allowing a start. You must make sure your vehicle is unplugged and you respond to the message prompt before starting your vehicle.
Unplug Prior to Starting Vehicle	Your vehicle detects it is still plugged in after you attempt to start it.
EV Now All Electric Driving	You selected EV Now mode with the EV button.
EV Later XX% Electric Energy Saved for Later	You selected EV Later with the EV button.
EV Charge Battery Charged by Engine	You selected EV Charge mode with the EV button.
Auto EV Normal Operation	You selected Auto EV mode with the EV button.
Engine Enabled Due to Defrost Setting	Your vehicle enables the engine due to the climate control defrost setting. This is normal operation.
Press EV Button for Full Defrost	For full defrost heat press the EV button to select either EV Later or EV Auto. The engine may run to provide more cabin heat.
Engine Enabled for System Performance	Your vehicle enables the engine for system performance. This is normal operation.
Press OK to Enable Engine	You can press OK to enable the engine temporarily for increased performance when in EV Now mode.
In Neutral Depletes HV Battery, Shift Out of Neutral for Full Vehicle Function	Displays when in neutral (N) gear with the vehicle on. Shift out of neutral to maintain full vehicle function.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Blind Spot Information and Cross Traffic Alert System

Message	Action
Blind Spot System Fault	A system error has occurred. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Blind Spot Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	The system sensors are blocked. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 255).
Cross Traffic Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	The blind spot information system and cross traffic alert system sensors are blocked. See **Cross Traffic Alert** (page 256).
Cross Traffic System Fault	A system error has occurred. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Cross Traffic Alert Deactivated Trailer Attached	The system automatically turns off and displays this message when you connect a trailer to the vehicle that does not have a trailer blind spot system or when you switch the trailer blind spot system off through the information display. See **Cross Traffic Alert** (page 256).
Blind Spot Alert Deactivated Trailer Attached	The system automatically turns off and displays this message when you connect a trailer to the vehicle that does not have a trailer blind spot system or when you switch the trailer blind spot system off through the information display. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 255).

Doors and Locks

Message	Action
Driver Door Ajar	The driver door is not completely closed.
Passenger Door Ajar	The passenger door is not completely closed.
Rear Left Door Ajar	The rear left door is not completely closed.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Message	Action
Rear Right Door Ajar	The rear right door is not completely closed.
Liftgate Ajar	The liftgate is not completely closed.
Hood Ajar	The hood is not completely closed.
Child Lock Malfunction Service Required	There is a system malfunction with the child locks. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Child Lock ON	Indicates that the rear seat interior door release switches and power windows are switched off, preventing rear seat occupants from opening the doors or windows.
Child Lock OFF	Indicates that the rear seat interior door release switches and power windows are switched on.
Factory Keypad Code {X X X X X}	The factory keypad code displays in the information display after the system resets the keypad. See **Passive Anti-Theft System** (page 59).

Driver Alert

Message	Action
Driver Alert Warning Rest Now	Stop and rest as soon as it is safe to do so.
Driver Alert Warning Rest Suggested	Take a rest soon.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Fuel

Message	Action
Fuel Level Low	An early reminder of a low fuel condition.
Check Fuel Fill Inlet	The fuel fill inlet may not be properly closed.
Please wait for fuel door to open	Wait for up to 15 seconds while the fuel system depressurizes.
Fuel Door Open	The fuel system has finished depressurizing and you can begin to refuel.
Fuel door ajar Close fully to avoid ""Check Engine"" light	A reminder to close the fuel door. Failure to follow this instruction can cause the check engine light to illuminate.
Refuel Error See Manual	There is an error in attempting to refill your vehicle.

Hill Start Assist

Message	Action
Hill Start Assist Not Available	Hill start assist is not available. Contact an authorized dealer. See **Hill Start Assist** (page 213).

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Keys and Remote Control

Message	Action
To START Press Brake	A reminder to press the brake while starting your vehicle.
No Key Detected	The system does not detect the key. See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 163).
Restart Now or Key is Needed	The Start Stop button is pressed to shut off the engine and a remote control is not detected inside your vehicle.
Full Accessory Power Active	Your vehicle is in the accessory ignition state.
Starting System Fault	There is a problem with your vehicle's starting system. See an authorized dealer for service.
Key Program Successful	During spare key programming, a key is programmed to the system.
Max Number of Keys Learned	During spare key programming, the maximum number of keys have been programmed.
Key Program Failure	Displayed during spare key programming, when a key has failed to be programmed.
Not Enough Keys Learned	Displayed during spare key programming when not enough keys have been programmed.
Key Battery Low Replace Soon	Displays when the key battery is low. Change the battery as soon as possible.
Vehicle Switched Off	Displays when the vehicle is switched off.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Lane Keeping System

Message	Action
Lane Keeping Sys. Malfunction Service Required	The system has malfunctioned. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Front Camera Temporarily Not Available	The system has detected a condition that has caused the system to be temporarily unavailable.
Front Camera Low Visibility Clean Screen	The system has detected a condition that requires the windshield to be cleaned to operate properly.
Front Camera Malfunction Service Required	The system has malfunctioned. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Keep Hands on Steering Wheel	The system requests the driver to keep their hands on the steering wheel.

Maintenance

Message	Action
Low Engine Oil Pressure	Stop your vehicle as soon as safely possible, turn off the engine. Check the oil level. If the warning stays on or continues to come on with your engine running, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Change Engine Oil Soon	The engine oil life remaining is 10% or less.
Oil Change Required	The oil life left reaches 0%.
Brake Fluid Level Low	The brake fluid level is low and the brake system should be inspected immediately. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 322).

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Message	Action
Check Brake System	The brake system needs servicing. Stop the vehicle in a safe place. Contact an authorized dealer.
Engine Coolant Over Temperature	The engine coolant temperature is excessively high.
Washer Fluid Level Low	The washer fluid is low and needs to be refilled.
Transport Mode Contact Dealer	Indicates that your vehicle is still in Transport mode. This may not allow some features to operate properly. Contact an authorized dealer.
Factory Mode Contact Dealer	Indicates that your vehicle is still in Factory mode. This may not allow some features to operate properly. Contact an authorized dealer.
See Manual	Informs the driver that the powertrain needs service due to a powertrain malfunction.
Power Reduced to Lower Engine Temp	The engine has reduced power to help reduce high engine temperature.
Brake Applied Power Reduced	The brake system has reduced stopping power.
Engine ON Due to Low Use Normal Operation	EV functionality is disabled and the engine is running to maintain oil quality. See **Plug-In Hybrid Vehicle Operation** (page 171).

MyKey

Message	Action
MyKey not Created	You cannot program a MyKey.
MyKey Active Drive Safely	MyKey is active.
Speed Limited to XX MPH/km/h	When switching on your vehicle and MyKey is in use, displays that the MyKey speed limit is on.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Message	Action
Near Vehicle Top Speed	MyKey is in use and the MyKey speed limit is on and the vehicle speed is approaching 130 km/h.
Vehicle at Top Speed of MyKey Setting	You have reached the speed limit set for your MyKey.
Check Speed Drive Safely	You have an active MyKey with a programmed set speed limit.
Buckle Up to Unmute Audio	Belt-Minder turns on with a MyKey in use.
AdvanceTrac On - MyKey Setting	With a MyKey in use, AdvanceTrac turns on.
Traction Control On - MyKey Setting	With a MyKey in use, traction control turns on.
MyKey Park Aid Cannot be Deactivated	With a MyKey in use, park aid is always on.
Lane Keeping Alert On MyKey Setting	With a MyKey in use, lane keeping alert turns on.

Park Aid

Message	Action
Check Front Park Aid	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Contact an authorized dealer.
Check Rear Park Aid	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Contact an authorized dealer.
Rear Park Aid Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	The radar is blocked due to bad weather, ice, mud or water in front of radar. You can typically clean the sensor to resolve. See **Rear Parking Aid** (page 220).
Front Park Aid Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	The radar is blocked due to bad weather, ice, mud or water in front of radar. You can typically clean the sensor to resolve. See **Front Parking Aid** (page 221).

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Message	Action
Park Aid Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	The radar is blocked due to bad weather, ice, mud or water in front of radar. You can typically clean the sensor to resolve. See **Principle of Operation** (page 219).
Front Park Aid On Off	Displays the park aid status.
Rear Park Aid On Off	Displays the park aid status.

Park Brake

Message	Action
Park Brake Engaged	The parking brake is set, the engine is running and you drive your vehicle more than 5 km/h. If the warning stays on after the parking brake is released, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
To Release: Press Brake and Switch	The electric parking brake is set and a manual release is attempted without the brake pedal being pressed.
Park Brake Use Switch to Release	The electric parking brake is set and an automatic release is attempted but cannot be performed. Perform a manual release.
Release Park Brake	The electric parking brake is set and your vehicle speed exceeds 5 km/h. Release park brake before continued driving.
Park Brake Not Applied	The electric parking brake is not fully applied.
Park Brake Not Released	The electric parking brake is not fully released.
Park Brake Maintenance Mode	The electric parking brake system has been put into a special mode that is used to allow service of the rear brakes. Contact an authorized dealer.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Message	Action
Park Brake Limited Function Service Required	The electric park brake system has detected a condition that requires service. Some functionality may still be available. Contact your authorized dealer.
Park Brake Malfunction Service Now	The electric parking brake system has detected a condition that requires service. Contact your authorized dealer.
Park Brake System Overheated	Numerous park brake applies have overheated the system. Wait 2 minutes before attempting to apply again.

Power Steering

Message	Action
Steering Fault Service Now	The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service. See an authorized dealer.
Steering Loss Stop Safely	The power steering system is not working. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Contact an authorized dealer.
Steering Assist Fault Service Required	The power steering system has detected a condition within the power steering system or passive entry or passive start system requires service. Contact an authorized dealer.
Steering Lock Malfunction Service Now	The steering lock system has detected a condition that requires service. See an authorized dealer.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Pre-Collision Assist

Message	Action
Pre-Collision Assist Not Available Sensor Blocked	You have a blocked sensor due to bad weather, ice, mud or water in front of the radar sensor. You can typically clean the sensor to resolve.
Pre-Collision Assist Not Available	A fault with the system has occurred. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Seats

Message	Action
Occupant Sensor BLOCKED Remove Objects Near Passenger Seat	Objects are by the passenger seat. After the objects are moved away from the seat, if the warning stays on or continues to come on contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Memory Recall Not Permitted While Driving	Displays as a reminder that memory seats are not available while driving.
Memory {0} Saved	Displays to show where your memory setting has been saved.

Starting System

Message	Action
To START Press Brake	Displays when starting the vehicle as a reminder to apply the brake.
Cranking Time Exceeded	Displays when the starter has exceeded its cranking time in attempting to start the vehicle.
Engine Start Pending Please Wait	Displays when the starter is attempting to start the vehicle.
Pending Start Cancelled	Displays when the pending start has been cancelled.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Message	Action
Tire Pressure Low	One or more tires on your vehicle have low tire pressure. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 336).
Tire Pressure Monitor Fault	The tire pressure monitoring system is malfunctioning. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 336).
Tire Pressure Sensor Fault	A tire pressure sensor is malfunctioning, or your spare tire is in use. For more information on how the system operates under these conditions, See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 336). If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Trailer

Message	Action
Trailer Connected	A correct trailer connection is sensed during a given ignition cycle.
Trailer Disconnected	A trailer connection becomes disconnected, either intentionally or unintentionally, and has been sensed during a given ignition cycle.
Trailer Sway Reduce Speed	The trailer sway control has detected trailer sway.
Trailer Wiring Fault	There are certain faults in your vehicle wiring and trailer wiring/brake system. See **Towing a Trailer** (page 281).
Trailer Left Turn Lamps Fault Check Lamps	There is a fault with your trailer turn lamp. Check your lamp.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Message	Action
Trailer Right Turn Lamps Fault Check Lamps	There is a fault with your trailer turn lamp. Check your lamp.
Trailer Battery Not Charging See Manual	There is a fault with your trailer battery. See **Towing a Trailer** (page 281).
Trailer Lighting Module Fault See Manual	There is a fault with your vehicle trailer lighting module. See **Towing a Trailer** (page 281).

Transmission

Message	Action
Shift to Park	You switched the engine off and shift select lever is in any position other than park (P).
Transmission Warming Up Please Wait	Transmission is too cold. Wait for it to warm up before you drive.
Press Brake Pedal	Displays when the brake pedal needs to be depressed.
Transmission Over Temperature Stop Safely	The transmission is overheating and needs to cool. Stop in a safe place as soon as it's possible.
Transmission Service Required	See an authorized dealer.
Transmission Too Hot Press Brake	The transmission is overheating and needs to cool. Stop in a safe place as soon as it's possible.
Transmission Limited Function See Manual	The transmission has limited functionality. See an authorized dealer.
Transmission Not in Park	A reminder to shift into park. In addition, this message is typical after reconnecting or recharging the battery until you cycle the ignition to the on mode. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 323).

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Message	Action
SHIFT SYS FAULT Confirm Park Brake Apply Before Exiting the Vehicle	Displays when there is a system fault and the park brake needs to be depressed before exiting the vehicle. See your authorized dealer.
SHIFT SYS FAULT Service Required	See your authorized dealer.
SHIFT SYS FAULT Vehicle is Shifting to Park	Displays when there is a system fault while the vehicle is shifting to park. See your authorized dealer.
SHIFT SYS FAULT Reverse Unavailable Service Required	Displays when there is a system fault while the vehicle is shifting to reverse. See your authorized dealer.
SHIFT SYS FAULT Drive Unavailable Select S for Drive Service Required	See an authorized dealer.
SHIFT SYS FAULT Neutral Unavailable Service Required	See your authorized dealer.
SHIFT SYS FAULT Sport Unavailable Service Required	See your authorized dealer.
Invalid Gear Selection	Displays when an invalid gear has been selected.
Depress Brake to Shift from Park	Displays when the brake pedal needs to be depressed to enable the transmission to shift from park.
Neutral Tow Engaged Turn Ignition Off for Towing	Reminder to switch off the ignition while in neutral tow.
Neutral Tow Engaged Depress Brake and Select Park to Exit Neutral Tow	Displays when neutral hold is active and you want to exit neutral tow.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Message	Action
Neutral Tow Remove Park Brake for Towing	Reminder to remove park brake while in neutral tow.
Neutral Tow Disengaged	Displays when the neutral tow is off.
Neutral Tow Enabled Leave Transmission in Neutral	Displays when neutral tow is on.

HEAD UP DISPLAY (IF EQUIPPED)


E261230

The system displays information on a display screen in your field of vision, allowing you to keep your eyes on the road. You can select which information the system displays.

Note: *Some options may appear slightly different, or not at all, if the items are optional.*

Note: *Do not place anything on the head up display, for example sunglasses or a cell phone. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.*

Cleaning the Head Up Display

Use a damp, lint-free cloth to clean the head up display.

Note: *Do not touch the display screen or mirror.*

Note: *Do not use household cleaning products or glass cleaners. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.*

Switching the Head Up Display On or Off


Press the button on the steering wheel or center console.

Note: *The head up display menu appears in the information display.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Head-Up Display (HUD)	Press the ***OK*** button.
	Press the ***OK*** button.

Note: *The system remembers the last setting when you start the engine.*

Adjusting the Head Up Display Settings

Start the engine and switch the system on.

Note: *Press the head up display button if you do not see the head up display menu in the information display.*

Note: *For your safety, some features are speed-dependent. The system limits their use to when your vehicle is not moving.*

Use the information display controls on the steering wheel to adjust the head up display settings.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Menu Item	Action
Adjustment	Press the ***OK*** button.
Position	1. Press the ***OK*** button. 2. Use the up and down toggle buttons to adjust the vertical position of the blue frame. • Make sure that you can see all of the blue frame. • Do not physically move the screen. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.
Brightness	1. Press the ***OK*** button. 2. Use the up and down toggle buttons to adjust the brightness of the display screen. • The system adjusts the brightness based on how dark it is. If you set the brightness to a high level, the system reduces the brightness at night.
Vertical Size	1. Press the ***OK*** button. 2. Use the up and down toggle buttons to adjust the vertical size of the display screen. • A small vertical size could be more suitable if you sit in a high position.

Selecting Which Information the System Displays

Start the engine and switch the system on.

Note: *Press the head up display button if you do not see the head up display menu in the information display.*

Note: *For your safety, some features are speed-dependent. The system limits their use to when your vehicle is not moving.*

Use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select which information the system displays.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Menu Item	Action
Content	Press the ***OK*** button.
Distance Indication	Press the ***OK*** button.
Eco Advice	
Incoming Calls	
Lane Keeping System	
Navigation	
Speed Assistance	
Speed Sign Recognition	

Head Up Display Indicator



Note: *The head up display indicator could illuminate to supplement an information message.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Head Up Display Information Messages

Message	Action
Head Up Display System Fault See Manual	The system is malfunctioning or something is obstructing the display. Make sure that the head up display is free from obstruction. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Head Up Display To Position Use the Information Display	Press the button on the steering wheel or center console. The head up display menu appears in the information display. Make sure the blue frame is fully visible. Do not manually move the screen. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Note: *Information messages only appear in the information display.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

WHAT IS REMOTE START

The system allows you to remotely start your vehicle and therefore to heat or cool the interior to a predetermined temperature.

REMOTE START PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

REMOTE START LIMITATIONS

Remote start does not work if:

- The alarm horn is sounding.
- The hood is open.
- The transmission is not in park (P).
- Remote start is not enabled.
- The ignition is on.

Note: *Do not use remote start if your fuel level is low.*

ENABLING REMOTE START - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Vehicle Settings***.
3. Select ***Remote Start***.
4. Switch ***System*** on.

Note: *To use remote start, make sure that the modem is enabled. See **Enabling and Disabling the Modem** (page 367).*

ENABLING REMOTE START - VEHICLES WITH: 6.5 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select ***Settings***.
3. Select ***Vehicle***.
4. Select ***Remote Start***.
5. Switch ***System*** on.

Note: *To use remote start, make sure that the modem is enabled. See **Enabling and Disabling the Modem** (page 367).*

REMOTELY STARTING AND STOPPING THE VEHICLE

WARNING: Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Use the FordPass App to start the vehicle.

Note: *The turn signal lamps flash twice.*

Note: *The parking lamps turn on when the vehicle is running.*

Note: *The horn sounds if the system fails to start.*

Note: *All other vehicle systems remain off when you have remotely started the vehicle.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Note: *You may have to wait a short period of time before remotely starting the vehicle after the vehicle stops running.*

Note: *The vehicle remains secured when you have remotely started it. A valid key must be inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and drive your vehicle.*

Note: *A maximum of two remote starts are allowed. After that you need to turn the ignition on and off before you can use remote start again.*

Use the FordPass App to switch the vehicle off.

REMOTE START SETTINGS - VEHICLES WITH: 6.5 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN, VEHICLES WITHOUT: HEATED STEERING WHEEL

Climate Control Settings

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select ***Settings***.
3. Select ***Vehicle***.
4. Select ***Remote Start***.
5. Select ***Climate Control***.
6. Select ***Auto*** or ***Last Setting***.

Note: *If you select **Auto**, the system attempts to heat or cool the interior to 22ºC.*

Note: *If you select **Last Setting**, the system remembers the last used settings.*

Note: *You cannot adjust the climate control settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.*

Note: *When you switch the ignition on, the climate control system returns to the last used settings.*

Heated Seat Settings

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select ***Settings***.
3. Select ***Vehicle***.
4. Select ***Remote Start***.
5. Select ***Seats***.
6. Select ***Auto*** or ***Off***.

Note: *If you switch the heated seat settings to **Auto**, the heated seats turn on during cold weather.*

Note: *You cannot adjust the heated seat settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.*

Setting the Remote Start Duration

You can set a duration for Remote Start to run.

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select ***Settings***.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

3. Select ***Vehicle***.
4. Select ***Remote Start***.
5. Select ***Duration***.

REMOTE START SETTINGS - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN, VEHICLES WITHOUT: HEATED STEERING WHEEL

Climate Control Settings

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Vehicle Settings***.
3. Select ***Remote Start***.
4. Select ***Climate Control***.
5. Select ***Auto*** or ***Last Settings***.

Note: *If you select **Auto**, the system attempts to heat or cool the interior to 22ºC.*

Note: *If you select **Last Settings**, the system remembers the last used settings.*

Note: *You cannot adjust the climate control settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.*

Note: *When you switch the ignition on, the climate control system returns to the last used settings.*

Heated Seat Settings

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Vehicle Settings***.
3. Select ***Remote Start***.
4. Select ***Seats***.
5. Select ***Auto*** or ***Off***.

Note: *If you switch the heated seat settings to **Auto**, the heated seats turn on during cold weather.*

Note: *You cannot adjust the heated seat settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.*

Setting the Remote Start Duration

You can set a duration for Remote Start to run.

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Vehicle Settings***.
3. Select ***Remote Start***.
4. Select ***Duration***.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

MANUAL CLIMATE CONTROL



E290056

Note: *Depending on your vehicle option package, the controls may look different from what you see here.*

Directing the Airflow

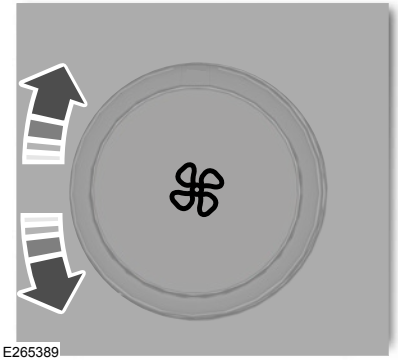
Press and release the button to direct airflow to the windshield air vents and de-mister.

Press and release the button to direct airflow to the instrument panel air vents.

Press and release the button to direct airflow to the footwell air vents.

You can direct air through any combination of these air vents.

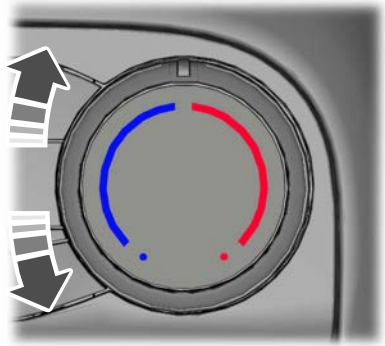
Setting the Blower Motor Speed



E265389

Turn the control to adjust the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.

Setting the Temperature



Turn the control to set the temperature.

Switching the Air Conditioning On and Off

A/C

Press and release the button to switch the air conditioning on or off.

Use air conditioning with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Note: *In certain conditions, for example, maximum defrost, the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though you switch off the air conditioning.*

Switching the Climate Control On and Off

Press and release the button.

Switching Maximum Air Conditioning On and Off

MAX A/C

Turn the temperature control counterclockwise to the lowest setting for maximum cooling.

The left-hand and right-hand settings set to LO, recirculated air flows through the instrument panel air vents, air conditioning turns on and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off

MAX

Turn the temperature control clockwise to the highest setting for maximum defrosting.

The left-hand and right-hand settings set to HI, air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed. You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice. The heated rear window also turns on when you select maximum defrost.

Note: *To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.*

Switching Recirculated Air On and Off

Press and release the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air.

The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This may reduce the time needed to cool the interior, when used with A/C, and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.

Note: *Recirculated air may turn off, or prevent you from switching on, in all air flow modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off in various air distribution control combinations during hot weather to improve cooling efficiency.*

AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL



E290005

Note: *Depending on your vehicle option package, the controls may look different from what you see here.*

Note: *For Hybrid vehicles, the air conditioning compressor may run and airflow may be felt when the climate control is off to provide cooling to the battery.*

Directing the Airflow

Press and release the button to direct airflow to the windshield air vents and de-mister.

Press and release the button to direct airflow to the instrument panel air vents.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

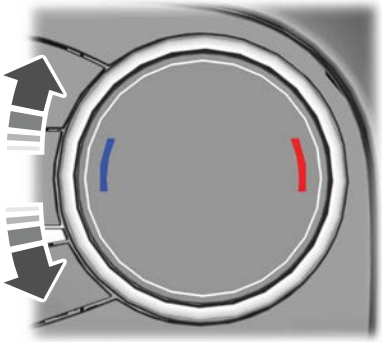
Press and release the button to direct airflow to the footwell air vents.

You can direct air through any combination of these air vents.

Setting the Blower Motor Speed

Press and release + or - to adjust the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.

Setting the Temperature



Turn the control on the left-hand side of the climate control to set the left-hand temperature.

Note: *This control also sets the right-hand side temperature when you switch off dual zone mode.*

Turn the control on the right-hand side of the climate control to set the right-hand temperature.

Switching Auto Mode On and Off

AUTO Press and release the button to switch on automatic operation. Repeatedly press the button to adjust auto mode.

The system adjusts the blower motor speed, air distribution, air conditioning operation, and outside or recirculated air to reach and maintain the temperature you have set.

Adjust the blower motor control to turn auto mode off.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Auto Mode Indicator Status

Auto Mode Indicator Status	Description

One indicator illuminated.	• The blower motor speed is reduced.
	  • Use this setting to minimize the amount of noise from the blower motor.
	  • This setting increases the time taken to cool the interior.

Two indicators illuminated.	• The blower motor speed is moderate.

Three indicators illuminated.	• The blower motor speed is increased.
	  • This setting increases the amount of noise from the blower motor.
	  • Use this setting to reduce the time taken to cool the interior.

Switching the Air Conditioning On and Off



Press and release the button to switch the air conditioning on or off.

Use air conditioning with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency.

Note: *In certain conditions, for example, maximum defrost, the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though you switch off the air conditioning.*

Switching the Climate Control On and Off



Press and release the button.

Note: *The button may be on the temperature control.*

Switching Dual Zone Mode On and Off



Press and release the button to switch on temperature control for the right-hand side of the vehicle.

Note: *The button may be on the temperature control.*

Switching Maximum Air Conditioning On and Off



Press and release the button for maximum cooling.

The system sets the left-hand and right-hand settings to LO, recirculated air flows through the instrument panel air vents, air conditioning turns on and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off



Press and release the button to switch on maximum defrost.

The system sets the left-hand and right-hand settings to HI, air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed. You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice. The heated rear window also turns on when you select maximum defrost.

Note: *To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.*

Switching Recirculated Air On and Off



Press and release the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air.

The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This may reduce the time needed to cool the interior, when used with A/C, and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.

Note: *Recirculated air may turn off, or prevent you from switching on, in all air flow modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off in various air distribution control combinations during hot weather to improve cooling efficiency.*

HINTS ON CONTROLLING THE INTERIOR CLIMATE - VEHICLES WITH: AUTOMATIC TEMPERATURE CONTROL

General Hints

Note: *Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.*

Note: *You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.*

Note: *To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.*

Note: *Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.*

Note: *Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.*

Note: *To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.*

Automatic Climate Control

Note: *Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. Automatic mode is best recommended to maintain set temperature.*

Note: *The system adjusts to heat or cool the interior to the temperature you select as quickly as possible.*

Note: *For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.*

Note: *If you select **AUTO** during cold outside temperatures, the system directs air flow to the windshield and side window air vents. In addition, the blower motor may run at a slower speed until the engine warms up.*

Note: *If you select **AUTO** during hot temperatures and the inside of the vehicle is hot, the system uses recirculated air to maximize interior cooling. Blower motor speed may also reduce until the air cools.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Quickly Heating the Interior

1. Press and release ***AUTO***.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer.

Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Press and release ***AUTO***.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22ºC as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Quickly Cooling the Interior

1. Press and release ***MAX A/C***.

Recommended Settings for Cooling

1. Press and release ***AUTO***.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22ºC as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

1. Press and release defrost or maximum defrost.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer. Use 22ºC as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

HINTS ON CONTROLLING THE INTERIOR CLIMATE - VEHICLES WITH: MANUAL TEMPERATURE CONTROL

General Hints

Note: *Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.*

Note: *You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.*

Note: *To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.*

Note: *Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.*

Note: *Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.*

Note: *To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.*

Quickly Heating the Interior

1. Adjust the blower motor speed to the highest speed setting.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the highest setting.
3. Direct air to the footwell air vents.

Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Adjust the blower motor speed to the center setting.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the hot settings.
3. Direct air to the footwell air vents.

Quickly Cooling the Interior

1. Select ***MAX A/C***.
2. Drive with the windows open for a short period of time.

Recommended Settings for Cooling

1. Adjust the blower motor speed to the center setting.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

2. Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the cold settings.
3. Direct air to the instrument panel air vents.

Vehicle Stationary for Extended Periods During Extreme High Ambient Temperatures

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Place your vehicle in park (P) or neutral.
3. Select ***MAX A/C***.
4. Adjust the blower motor speed to the lowest speed setting.

Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

1. Direct air to the instrument panel and windshield air vents.
2. Press and release ***A/C***.
3. Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer.
4. Adjust the blower motor speed to the highest setting.
5. Direct air toward the side windows.
6. Close the instrument panel air vents.

HEATED WINDSHIELD (IF EQUIPPED)



Press the button to clear the windshield of thin ice and fog. The heated windshield turns off after a short period of time.

Note: *Make sure that the engine is running before switching the heated windshield on.*

Note: *The system does not operate if the battery charge level is low.*

HEATED REAR WINDOW



Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window turns off after a short period of time.

Note: *Make sure the engine is on before operating the heated windows.*

Note: *Do not use harsh chemicals, razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage to the heated rear window grid lines.*

HEATED EXTERIOR MIRRORS

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors turn on.

Note: *Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.*

Note: *Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION

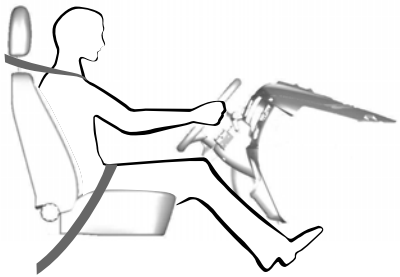
WARNING: It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: All occupants of your vehicle, including the driver, should always keep their whole body inside the vehicle when it is moving.

WARNING: Do not recline the seat backrest too far as this can cause the occupant to slide under the seatbelt, resulting in personal injury in the event of a crash.

WARNING: Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.

WARNING: Do not place objects higher than the top of the seat backrest. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, seatbelt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seat backrest so that your torso is more than 30 degrees from the upright position.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 25 cm between your breastbone and the air bag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the seatbelt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

HEAD RESTRAINTS

WARNING: Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.

WARNING: The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.

WARNING: Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

Note: *Adjust the seat backrest to an upright driving position before adjusting the head restraint. Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable. If you are extremely tall, adjust the head restraint to its highest position.*

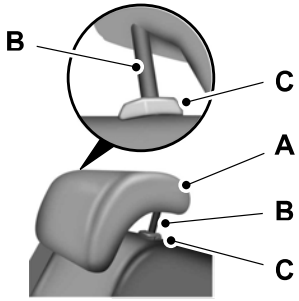
Front Seat Head Restraints



The front seat head restraints consists of:

A	An energy absorbing head restraint.
B	Two steel stems.
C	Guide sleeve adjust and unlock button.

Rear Seat Center Head Restraint



The rear seat center head restraint consists of:

A	An energy absorbing head restraint.
B	Two steel stems.
C	Guide sleeve adjust and unlock button.

Raising the Head Restraint

Pull the head restraint up.

Lowering the Head Restraint

1. Press and hold button C.
2. Push the head restraint down.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

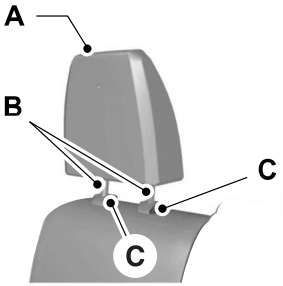
Removing the Head Restraints

1. Pull the head restraint up until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold the C buttons.
3. Pull the head restraint up.

Installing the Head Restraint

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

Rear Seat Outermost Head Restraint



The rear seat outermost head restraint consists of:

A	An energy absorbing head restraint.
B	Two steel stems.
C	Guide sleeve adjust and unlock button.

Removing the Head Restraint

1. Pull the head restraint up until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold both C buttons.
3. Pull the head restraint up.

Installing the Head Restraint

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

MANUAL SEATS (IF EQUIPPED)

WARNING: Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.

Moving the Seat Backward and Forward

WARNING: Make sure the seat fully locks into place by rocking it backward and forward.



E130249

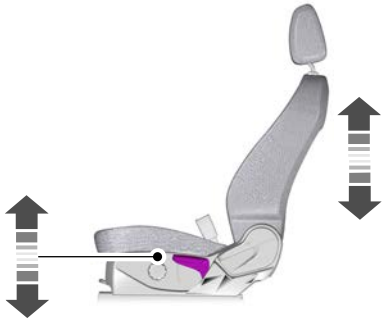
Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Adjusting the Lumbar Support



E152451

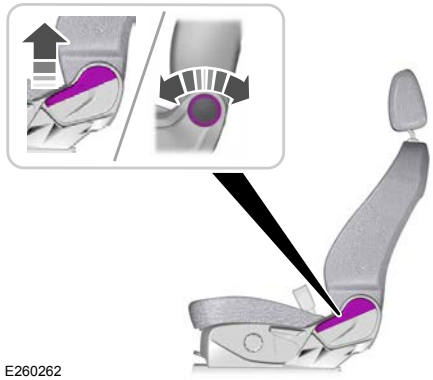
Adjusting the Seat Height (If Equipped)



E70730

Adjusting the Seat Backrest

WARNING: Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seat backrest before returning it to the original position. Pull on the seat backrest to make sure that it has fully latched after returning the seat backrest to its original position. An unlatched seat may become dangerous if you stop suddenly or have a crash.



E260262

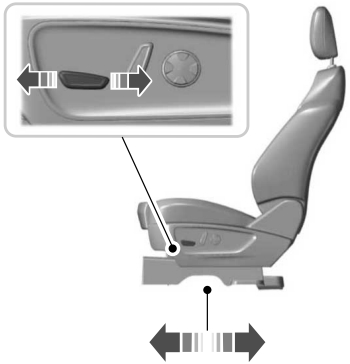
POWER SEATS (IF EQUIPPED)

WARNING: Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.

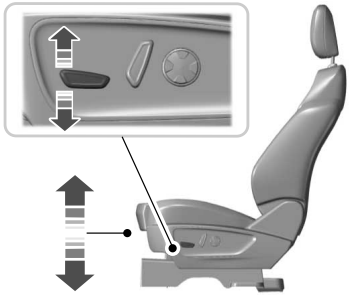
WARNING: Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seatback before returning it to the original position.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

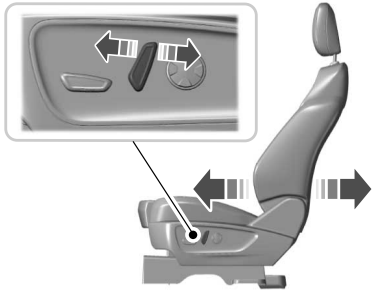
Moving the Seat Backward and Forward



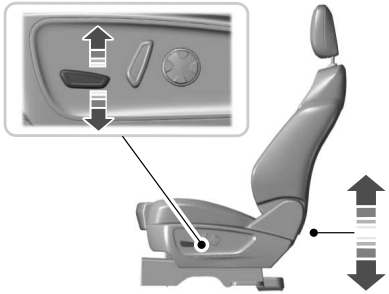
Adjusting the Seat Cushion (If Equipped)



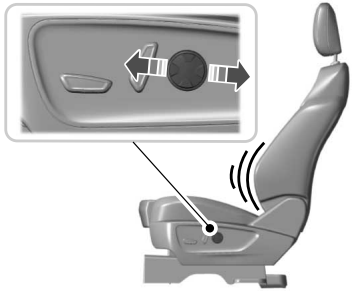
Adjusting the Seat Backrest



Adjusting the Seat Height



Adjusting the Lumbar Support



Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

REAR SEATS

Folding the Seatback

WARNING: When folding the seatbacks down, take care not to get your fingers caught between the seatback and seat frame.



E159654

With the seat empty, pull the lever up to fold the seatback forward.

Note: *Lower the head restraints. See* ***Head Restraints*** *(page 151).*

Unfolding the Seatback

WARNING: When folding the seatbacks up, make sure that the safety belts are visible to an occupant and not caught behind the seat.

WARNING: Make sure that the seats and the seatbacks are secure and fully engaged in their catches.

Recline Adjustment

With the seat occupied, pull the lever up to recline the seat backward.

HEATED SEATS

Front Seats

WARNING: People who are unable to feel pain to their skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions, must exercise care when using the heated seat. The heated seat may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or cushion. This may cause the heated seat to overheat. Do not puncture the seat with pins, needles or other pointed objects. This may damage the heating element which may cause the heated seat to overheat. An overheated seat may cause serious personal injury.

Do not do the following:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid spills on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly.

Note: *The heated seats will only function when the engine is running.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing



Press the heated seat symbol to cycle through the various heat settings and off. More indicator lights indicate warmer settings.

Note: *After 90 minutes of operation, the heated seats switch off. Press the heated seat symbol to switch the heated seats on.*

Note: *Depending on your remote start settings, the heated seats may remain on after you remote start your vehicle. The heated seats may also turn on when you start your vehicle if they were on when your vehicle was turned off.*

Rear Seats (If Equipped)

WARNING: Persons who are unable to feel pain to the skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion, or other physical conditions, must exercise care when using the seat heater. The seat heater may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or cushion, because this may cause the seat heater to overheat. Do not puncture the seat with pins, needles, or other pointed objects because this may damage the heating element which may cause the seat heater to overheat. An overheated seat may cause serious personal injury.

Do not do the following:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the seat heater if water or any other liquid spills on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly.

Note: *The heated seats will only function when the engine is running.*

The rear seat heat controls are located on the rear of the center console.



Press the heated seat symbol to cycle through the various heat settings and off. More indicator lights indicate warmer settings.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

WHAT IS THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM

The rear occupant alert system monitors vehicle conditions and notifies you to check for rear seat occupants when you switch the ignition off.

HOW DOES THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM WORK

The system monitors when rear doors have been opened and closed to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

A message displays in the information and entertainment display screen and an audible warning sounds when you switch the ignition off after any of the following conditions have been met:

- A rear door is opened or closed while the ignition is on.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of a rear door opening and closing.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of the alert having displayed or sounded.

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.

WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The system does not detect the presence of objects or passengers in the rear seat. It monitors when rear doors are opened and closed.

Note: *It is possible to receive an alert when there is no rear seat occupant, but alert conditions are met.*

Note: *It is possible to receive no alert when there is an occupant in the rear seat, if alert conditions are not met. For example, if a rear seat occupant does not enter the vehicle through a rear door.*

Note: *The audible warning does not sound when the front door is opened before you switch the ignition off.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

SWITCHING REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM ON AND OFF

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Vehicle***.
3. Switch ***Rear Occupant Alert*** on or off.

Note: *The default setting is on.*

Note: *Performing a master reset causes the system to switch on again.*

Semiannual Reminder (If Equipped)

When you switch the system off, a message appears every six months as a reminder that the system is off. You can switch the system back on or leave it off.

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM INDICATORS



Message
Check rear seats for occupants.

Displays when you switch your vehicle off after the alert conditions are met.

The message displays for a short period of time. Press ***Close*** to acknowledge and remove the message.

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Sounds when you switch your vehicle off after the alert conditions are met.

The warning sounds for a short period of time.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

12 Volt DC Power Point

WARNING: Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigar lighter socket. Incorrect use of the cigar lighter can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

Note: *If the power supply does not work after you switch the ignition off, switch the ignition on.*

Note: *When you switch the ignition on, you can use the socket to power 12 volt appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 amps.*

Note: *Do not hang any accessory from the accessory plug.*

Note: *Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 volt DC 180 watts or a fuse may blow.*

Note: *Always keep the power point caps closed when not in use.*

Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point. This will damage the power point and blow the fuse.

Run the vehicle for full capacity use of the power point.

To prevent the battery from running out of charge:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when the vehicle is not running.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when you park your vehicle for extended periods.

Locations

Power points may be in the following locations:

- On the front of the center console.
- Inside the center console.
- On the rear of the center console.
- In the cargo area.

230 Volt AC Power Point (If Equipped)

WARNING: Do not keep electrical devices plugged in the power point whenever the device is not in use. Do not use any extension cord with the 230 volt AC power point, since it will defeat the safety protection design. Doing so may cause the power point to overload due to powering multiple devices that can reach beyond the 150 watt load limit and could result in fire or serious injury.

Note: *The power point turns off when you switch the ignition off, or when the battery voltage drops below 11 volts.*

You can use the power point for electric devices that require up to 150 watts. It is on the rear of the center console

Note: *Depending on the country in which your vehicle is built, the voltage supply is either 110 volts or 230 volts.*

When the indicator light on the power point is:

- On: The power point is working, the ignition is on, or the vehicle is in accessory mode.
- Off: The power point is off, the ignition is off, or the vehicle is not in accessory mode.
- Flashing: The power point is in fault mode.

The power outlet temporarily turns off power when in fault mode if the device exceeds the 150 watt limit. Unplug your device and switch the ignition off. Switch the ignition back on, but do not plug your device back in. Let the system cool off and switch the ignition off to reset the fault mode. Switch the ignition back on and make sure the indicator light remains on.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Do not use the power point for certain electric devices, including:

- Cathode-ray, tube-type televisions.
- Motor loads, such as vacuum cleaners, electric saws and other electric power tools or compressor-driven refrigerators.
- Measuring devices, which process precise data, such as medical equipment or measuring equipment.
- Other appliances requiring an extremely stable power supply such as microcomputer-controlled electric blankets or touch-sensor lamps.

WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER

WARNING: Wireless charging devices can affect the operation of implanted medical devices, including cardiac pacemakers. If you have any implanted medical devices, we recommend that you consult with your physician.

The system supports one wireless charging compatible device on the charging area.

Note: *Devices without built-in Qi standards for wireless charging require an additional Qi receiver or sleeve.*

Note: *For compatible devices with built-in Qi wireless charging capability, a case may affect the charging performance of your device. It may be necessary to remove the case to wirelessly charge your device.*

Note: *Software and firmware updates to your device could affect the charging operation.*

Make sure the charging area is clean and free from obstruction before charging a device to allow the device to lay flat on the charging area.

Do not place items with a magnetic strip, for example passports, parking tickets or credit cards near the charging area when charging a device. This could damage the magnetic strip.

Do not place metal objects, for example remote controls, coins or keys on or near the charging area when charging a device. Metal objects may heat up and degrade the charging performance.



The charging area is on the center console or lower instrument panel.

Place the device with the charging side down to begin charging. The charging stops after your device reaches a full charge.

You can charge a device if the vehicle is on, when in accessory mode, or anytime SYNC is on.

Note: *Placing the device outside the charging area could affect the charging process.*

Note: *Charging time and temperature are dependent on the device used. The system stops charging the device if it reaches a high temperature.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Wireless Accessory Charging Information Messages

Message	Action
Wireless Charger Active	Displays when wireless charging has started.
Charging Terminated Phone misaligned or object between phone and charger detected. Correct the condition to resume charging.	Displays when wireless charging has stopped. Remove objects from the charging surface and place phone on center of charging surface.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

OVERHEAD CONSOLE



E131605

Press near the rear edge of the door to open it.

REAR SEAT ARMREST



E138656

Fold the armrest down to use the armrest and cupholder.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

WARNING: Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.

WARNING: Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.

WARNING: Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

If you stop your vehicle and then leave the engine idling for long periods, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 3 cm.
- Set your climate control to outside air.

PUSH BUTTON IGNITION SWITCH



Switching the Ignition Off

When the ignition is on or in accessory mode, press the push button ignition switch once without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal.

Switching the Ignition to Accessory Mode

When the ignition is off, press the push button ignition switch once without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal.

All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

Starting the Engine

Press the brake or clutch pedal and press the push button ignition switch. An indicator light on the button illuminates when then ignition is on and when the engine starts.

Note: *The system may not function if the passive key is close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.*

Note: *A valid key must be inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the engine.*

STARTING THE ENGINE

Starting a Gasoline Engine

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure that the parking brake is on.
- Make sure that the transmission is in park (P).

1. Fully press the brake pedal.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Note: *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*



2. Press the push button ignition switch.

Note: *The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.*

Note: *The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.*

Starting a Hybrid Electric Vehicle System

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Make sure the transmission is in park (P).

Note: *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

1. Fully press the brake pedal.



2. Press the push button ignition switch.

Note: *The green ready indicator illuminates letting you know that your vehicle is ready for driving. Since your vehicle is equipped with a silent key start, the engine may not start when your vehicle starts.*

When the engine starts for the first time on your drive, the idle speed increases, this helps to warm up the engine. If the engine idle speed does not slow down, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

The system does not function if:

- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The key battery has no charge.

Restarting the Engine After Stopping it

The system allows you to start the engine within 10 seconds of switching it off, even if it does not detect a valid passive key.

Within 10 seconds of switching the engine off, fully press the brake or clutch pedal and press the push button ignition switch. After 10 seconds, you can no longer start the engine if the system does not detect a valid passive key.

When you start the engine, it remains running until you press the push button ignition switch, even if your vehicle does not detect a valid passive key. If you open and close a door when the engine is running, the system searches for a valid passive key.

STOPPING THE ENGINE

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary

1. Shift into park (P).
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Wait until the engine reaches idle speed.



4. Press the push button ignition switch.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving

WARNING: Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.



1. Press and hold the push button ignition switch until the engine stops, or press it three times within two seconds.
2. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. Shift into park (P).
4. Apply the parking brake.

AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP

How Does Automatic Engine Stop Work

Automatic engine stop automatically shuts down the vehicle if it has been idling for an extended period. The ignition also turns off to save battery power. Before your vehicle shuts down, a message appears in the information display showing a timer counting down. If you do not intervene within 30 seconds, your vehicle shuts down. Another message appears in the information display to inform you that your vehicle has shut down to save fuel. Start your vehicle as normal.

Switching Automatic Engine Stop On and Off - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Vehicle Settings***.
3. Switch ***30min Max Idle*** on or off.

Note: *You cannot permanently switch off the automatic shutdown. If you switch it off, it turns on each time you switch the ignition on.*

Switching Automatic Engine Stop On and Off - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select ***Settings***.
3. Switch ***Auto Engine Off*** on or off.

Note: *You cannot permanently switch off the automatic shutdown. If you switch it off, it turns on each time you switch the ignition on.*

Overriding Automatic Engine Stop

You can stop the shutdown, or reset the timer, at any point before the 30-second countdown has expired by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the brake or accelerator pedal.
- Pressing the ***OK*** or ***RESET*** button during the 30-second countdown.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – TROUBLESHOOTING

Starting and Stopping the Engine – Warning Lamps



Malfunction Indicator Lamp

Check Engine

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. The On Board Diagnostics system has detected a malfunction of the vehicle emission control system.

If it flashes, engine misfire may be occurring. Increased exhaust gas temperatures could damage the catalytic converter or other vehicle components. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.



Powertrain Warning Lamp

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. If it flashes when you are driving, immediately reduce the vehicle speed. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.

If both lamps illuminate when the engine is running, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Switch the ignition off and attempt to restart the engine. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

Starting and Stopping the Engine – Information Messages

Message	Action
Cranking Time Exceeded	Displays if you exceed the starting time limit. You cannot attempt to start the engine for 15 minutes. If you cannot start the engine after 15 minutes passes, have your vehicle immediately checked.
Starting System Fault	Displays if you are unable to start your vehicle with a correctly coded key. The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
No Key Detected	Displays if the system does not detect a valid passive key.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Starting and Stopping the Engine — Frequently Asked Questions

Why is the engine idle speed high when I am starting the engine?

The speed at which the engine idles immediately after starting is optimized to minimize vehicle emissions and maximize cabin comfort and fuel economy.

Why does the engine not crank?

You can only attempt to start the engine for a limited amount of time before the starting system temporarily disables. If you exceed the starting time limit, a message may appear and you cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes.

Why do I experience different driving characteristics?

If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 8 km after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

Why can I not start the engine?

If you cannot start the engine after 3 attempts, wait 10 seconds and do the following:

1. Fully press the brake pedal or the clutch pedal.

Note: *Make sure that the parking brake is applied.*

Note: *Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).*

2. Fully press the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
3. Press the push button ignition switch.

Note: *The engine cranks for a short period of time and then it stops.*

4. Release the accelerator pedal.



5. Press the push button ignition switch.

Why does the system not detect a passive key?

If the system does not detect a passive key and you are unable to start the engine, insert the passive key into the backup position and press the push button ignition switch to start the engine.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

AUTO-START-STOP (IF EQUIPPED)

The system helps reduce fuel consumption by automatically shutting off and restarting the engine while your vehicle is stopped. The engine will restart automatically when you release the brake pedal. In some situations, your vehicle may restart automatically, for example:

- To maintain interior comfort
- To recharge the battery

Note: *Power assist steering is turned off when the engine is off.*

WARNING: Always fully apply the parking brake and make sure you shift into park (P). Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system may require the engine to automatically restart when the auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green or flashes amber. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

The Auto-Start-Stop system status is available at a glance within the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 102).

Enabling Auto-Start-Stop

The system is automatically enabled every time you start your vehicle if the following conditions are met:

- The Auto-Start-Stop button is not pressed (button is not illuminated).
- Your vehicle exceeds an initial speed of 5 km/h after the vehicle has been initially started.
- Your vehicle is stopped.
- Your foot is on the brake pedal.
- The transmission is in drive (D).
- The driver's door is closed.
- There is adequate brake vacuum.
- The interior compartment has been cooled or warmed to an acceptable level.
- The front windshield defroster is off.
- The steering wheel is not being turned.
- The vehicle is not on a steep road grade.
- The battery is within optimal operating conditions (battery state of charge and temperature in range).
- The engine coolant is at operating temperature.
- Vehicle is not being driven at a high altitude.
- Ambient temperature is moderate.



The green Auto-Start-Stop indicator light on the instrument cluster will illuminate to indicate when the automatic engine stop occurs.



If the instrument cluster is equipped with a grey Auto-Start-Stop indicator light, it is illuminated when automatic engine stop is not available due to one of the above noted conditions not being met.

Automatic Engine Restart

Any of the following conditions will result in an automatic restart of the engine:

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

- Your foot is removed from the brake pedal.
- You press the accelerator pedal.
- You press the accelerator and the brake pedal at the same time.
- The driver seatbelt becomes unfastened or the driver door is ajar.
- Your vehicle is moving.
- The interior compartment does not meet customer comfort when air conditioning or heat is on.
- Fogging of the windows could occur and the air conditioning is on.
- The battery is not within optimal operating conditions.
- The maximum engine off time is exceeded.
- When you press the Auto-Start-Stop button while the engine is stopped automatically.
- The heated windshield is turned on.

Any of the following conditions may result in an automatic restart of the engine:

- The blower fan speed is increased or the climate control temperature is changed.
- An electrical accessory is turned on or plugged in.

Disabling Auto-Start-Stop

Press the Auto-Start-Stop button located on the center console to switch the system off. The button will illuminate. The system will only be deactivated for the current ignition cycle. Press the button again to restore Auto-Start-Stop function.

If your vehicle is in an Auto-Start-Stop state and you shift the transmission to reverse while the brake is not depressed, a message telling you to press the brake will appear. You must press the brake pedal within 60 seconds, or a shift to park and a manual restart will be required.

Note: *If the Shift to P, Restart Engine message appears and the amber Auto-Start-Stop indicator light is flashing, automatic restart is not available. The vehicle must be restarted manually. See* ***Information Displays*** *(page 102).*

HYBRID VEHICLE OPERATION

This hybrid vehicle combines electric and gasoline propulsion to provide breakthrough performance and improved efficiency. Familiarizing yourself with these unique characteristics provides an optimal driving experience from your vehicle.

Starting



When you start your vehicle, a green READY indicator light appears in the instrument cluster letting you know that your vehicle is ready for driving.

The engine may not start because your vehicle has a silent key start feature. This fuel saving feature allows your vehicle to be ready to drive without requiring the gas engine to be running. The indicator remains on when your vehicle is on, whether the engine is running or not, to indicate your vehicle is capable of movement using the electric motor, gas engine or both. Typically, the engine does not start unless the vehicle is cold, a climate control change is requested or you press the accelerator pedal.

Driving

The gas engine automatically starts and stops to provide power when needed and to save fuel when not needed. When coasting at low speeds, coming to a stop, or standing, the gas engine normally shuts down and your vehicle operates in electric-only mode.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Conditions that may cause the engine to start up or remain running include:

- Considerable vehicle acceleration.
- Climbing a hill.
- Charge level of high voltage battery is low.
- High or low outside temperatures in order to provide system heating or cooling.
- Engine not warm enough to provide passenger requested cabin temperature.
- Towing a trailer.
- Selectable drive modes: Certain selectable drive modes may cause the engine to run. See **What Is Drive Mode Control** (page 269).
- Live in Drive: Use of the paddle shifters while in drive (D) may cause the engine to run. See **Automatic Transmission** (page 200).

Stopping

The gas engine may shut off to conserve fuel as you come to a stop. Restarting your vehicle is not required. Simply step on the accelerator when you are ready to drive.

Transmission Operation

The engine and electric motor together propel the vehicle through the automatic transmission. This is normal hybrid operating and helps deliver fuel efficiency and performance.

Battery

Your hybrid is equipped with a high voltage battery. A cool battery maintains battery life and provides the best possible performance. The high voltage battery is cooled by the vehicle's air conditioning system. When the air conditioning system is on, you may notice a slight increase in air temperature coming from the climate control vents while the battery is cooling. You may also notice cool air flowing from the vents when the air conditioning or blower is off.

Braking

Your hybrid is equipped with standard hydraulic braking and regenerative braking. Regenerative braking is performed by your transmission and it captures brake energy and stores it in the high voltage battery.

You may also notice during extending downhill driving that your engine continues to run instead of shutting off. During this engine braking, the engine stays on, but it is not using any fuel. You may also hear a slight whine or whistle when operating your vehicle. This is the normal operation of the electric motor in the hybrid system.

Driving to Optimize Fuel Economy

Note: *Having your engine running is not always an indication of inefficiency. In some cases, it is actually more efficient than driving in electric mode.*

Your fuel economy should improve throughout your hybrid's break-in period. As with any vehicle, your driving habits and accessory usage can significantly impact your fuel economy. For best results, keep these tips in mind:

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

- Keep the tires properly inflated and only use the recommended size.
- Aggressive driving increases the amount of energy required to move your vehicle. In general, you can achieve better fuel economy with mild to moderate acceleration and deceleration. Moderate braking is particularly important since it allows you to maximize the energy captured by the regenerative braking system.

Additional Tips:

- Do not carry extra loads.
- Be mindful of adding external accessories that may increase aerodynamic drag.
- Observe posted speed limits.
- Perform all scheduled maintenance.
- There is no need to wait for your engine to warm up. The vehicle is ready to drive immediately after starting.

PLUG-IN HYBRID VEHICLE OPERATION

Plug in your vehicle regularly for optimal use of the high voltage battery's electric-only range capability. Charging your vehicle adds electrical energy. This energy propels the vehicle.

You can see your estimated electric-only driving range in blue next to the gasoline range on the information display.

The system maximizes the use of electric-only operation in Normal drive mode. System conditions could require engine operation, however, the system uses the available electric range whenever possible.

When your electric-only range reaches zero, the powertrain system switches to hybrid operation. This means that you have depleted the energy you gained from plugging in and charging your vehicle. Both the gasoline engine and electric motor power your vehicle and maximize fuel economy during hybrid operation. You receive some electric-only driving with hybrid operation as the powertrain system maintains the high voltage battery charge within functional limits.

Electric Vehicle (EV) Modes



Your vehicle contains selectable electric vehicle (EV) modes. Press the button on the center console to change the mode. EV Now and EV Later modes are only available when you have electric-only driving range available.

Note: *EV mode availability also depends on the state of the selectable drive mode system.*

Auto EV



This mode provides an automatic use of high voltage battery power during the drive, staying in electric mode when possible and running the engine when needed.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

EV Now



This mode provides an electric only driving experience. Do not use EV Now when towing a trailer. The electric drive system is not designed for towing. An EV Now information on demand screen appears. This screen allows you to enable your engine while in EV Now mode.

Your vehicle could accelerate slower and the top speed could be lower than when in Auto EV mode.

You can enable your engine at any time by using one of the following methods:

- Fully press the accelerator pedal. A pop-up message appears. Press the OK button on the steering wheel to enable the engine. When the engine is no longer needed, your vehicle returns to EV Now. The message disappears if you release the accelerator pedal.
- Press the EV button. This exits EV Now mode and permits engine operation. To return to EV Now mode, select it again using the EV button.

Your vehicle could enter Engine Enabled mode if system conditions require it. A message displays if this occurs. This is a normal function of the system and your vehicle returns to EV Now mode when possible.

When you enable EV Now mode, a blue EV Now icon appears in the information display. If your vehicle is in Engine Enabled mode, the EV Now icon is amber. EV Now exits when your available electric range reaches zero.

EV Later



In EV Later, your vehicle runs on the engine as needed and saves most of the available electric range for later use in Auto EV or EV Now mode.

For example, your initial drive is at high speeds on open roads, but later your drive is at low speeds in an urban area where electric only driving is most efficient. In this case, you can select EV Later for the higher speed portion of your trip and then select Auto EV or EV Now for the urban portion.

When you enable EV Later, a white EV Later icon appears in the information display. EV Later resets to Auto EV when you switch off your vehicle. You may select EV Later again using the EV button during your next drive.

When you select EV Later with the vehicle fully charged or near fully charged, the battery uses some electric-only driving range to discharge the battery, and allows for full operation of the regenerative braking system.

EV Charge



This mode uses your vehicle's engine to charge the high voltage battery versus plugging the vehicle into a utility grid.

The electric range gained through EV Charge allows you to switch to Auto EV or EV Now for full electric operation later in your drive. The battery cannot completely charge to 100% when in EV Charge mode. This is to allow for full operation of the regenerative braking system. When the battery reaches its EV Charge limit, the vehicle remains in EV Charge mode and maintains that charge level, until you select another EV Mode, or until you switch the vehicle off.

When you enable EV Charge, a white EV Charge icon appears in the information display.

EV Charge resets to Auto EV when you switch off your vehicle. You may select EV Charge again using the EV button during your next drive.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Low Engine Use

The low engine use mode maintains proper engine lubrication at sufficient temperature, and activates when you drive your vehicle with limited engine operation. When in low engine use mode, your vehicle runs the engine as necessary. When low engine use mode begins, a message appears in the information display. If low engine use mode does not complete before you switch your vehicle off, it continues the next time you start your vehicle and the message reappears.

EV Now mode is not available during low engine use mode.

Note: *Cold temperatures affect the engine warm up time and the low engine use mode could operate more frequently.*

Note: *You do not require an oil change, but it gives you the option of not running a low engine use cycle. Resetting the oil life monitoring system suspends the low engine use mode.*

HYBRID VEHICLE FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Question	Answer
What are the series of clicks from the cargo area when I first turn the key in the ignition?	The high voltage battery is electrically isolated from the rest of the vehicle when the key is off. When you switch the key on, high voltage contactors inside the battery are closed to make the electricity available to the motor and generator and enable the vehicle to drive. The clicks are the sound of these contactors as they close and open during start up and shut down.
Why does the engine sometimes start at key-on?	The vehicle's computer will determine if an engine start is required at key-on. Silent key start will start the engine if it is necessary for cabin heating, windshield defrost, or if the outside temperature is low.
Why does it take a long time before the engine shuts down?	There are several reasons the engine stays on for an extended amount of time when you first start it. One common reason is to make sure that the emissions components are warm enough to minimize tailpipe emissions. As the climate gets cooler, this engine-on time is extended.
Why does my engine never shut down above 137 km/h?	The engine is required to turn on above this speed to protect the transmission hardware.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Question	Answer
Why does my engine stay on when it is extremely cold outside?	In order to make sure that the climate control system can begin heating the cabin or defrosting the windshield as soon as a driver requests it, the engine coolant temperature has to be kept sufficiently hot. Keeping the engine on is required to maintain the correct coolant temperature.
Why does my engine rev up so high sometimes when I accelerate?	Your vehicle's engine and transmission are designed to deliver the power you need at the most efficient engine speed. This may be higher than expected during heavy accelerations, and may fluctuate when driving at a steady speed. These are characteristics of the Atkinson engine cycle and the transmission technology that help maximize your hybrid's fuel economy.
Can I put E15 or E85 in my vehicle, and how will it affect my fuel economy?	Yes. Your hybrid vehicle can use E15 (15% ethanol, 85% gasoline) fuel, but you may notice slightly reduced fuel economy because ethanol contains less energy per gallon than gasoline. Your hybrid vehicle is not designed to use E85 (85% ethanol).
How long will my high voltage battery last? Does it need maintenance?	The high voltage battery system is designed to last the life of the vehicle and requires no maintenance.
Can you charge the battery with a plug into an AC outlet?	The plug-in hybrid high voltage battery can be charged by plugging the vehicle into an AC outlet.
	There are no provisions for charging the conventional hybrid high voltage battery from a power supply external to the vehicle.
Can I tow the hybrid behind my motor home with all four wheels on the ground?	Yes. Your hybrid vehicle can be flat towed with all four wheels on the ground. See **Towing** (page 285).

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

WARNING: The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

WARNING: Fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.

WARNING: Fuel may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.

WARNING: When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

Follow these guidelines when refueling:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Always switch the engine off before refueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed immediately call a physician, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be apparent for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling fuel vapor can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel in your eyes. If you splash fuel in your eyes, immediately remove contact lenses (if worn), flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If you splash fuel on your skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and thoroughly wash your skin with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking Antabuse or other forms of Disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing fuel vapors could cause an adverse reaction, serious personal injury or sickness. Immediately call a physician if you experience any adverse reactions.

FUEL QUALITY

WARNING: Do not mix gasoline with oil, diesel or other liquids. This could cause a chemical reaction.

WARNING: Do not use leaded gasoline or gasoline with additives containing other metallic compounds (e.g. manganese-based). They could damage the emission system.

Note: *We recommend that you use only high quality fuel.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Note: *We do not recommend the use of additional additives or other engine treatments for normal vehicle use.*

The engine in your vehicle has been optimized for operation using 95 octane unleaded gasoline that meets the specification defined by EN 228 or the equivalent national specification.

The engine in your vehicle can also operate using 91 octane unleaded gasoline. However if you choose to do so, you may notice some minor loss of performance, economy and increase engine noise.

Your vehicle is suitable for use with ethanol blends up to 10% (E5 and E10).

Note: *Using gasoline containing more than 10% ethanol may damage the engine or emission system and may affect the vehicle Warranty.*

Note: *The use of gasoline containing ethanol may increase the fuel consumption of your vehicle.*

Long-Term Storage

Most gasoline contains ethanol. We recommend that you fill the fuel tank with fuel that does not contain ethanol if you intend to store your vehicle for more than two months. Alternatively, we recommend that you seek advice from an authorized dealer.

FUEL FILLER FUNNEL LOCATION

The fuel filler funnel is in the spare wheel storage tray.

RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

Running out of fuel can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

If your vehicle runs out of fuel:

- Add a minimum of 5 L of fuel to restart the engine.
- You may need to switch the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. When restarting, cranking time takes a few seconds longer than normal.

Note: *If your vehicle is on a steep slope, more fuel may be required.*

Filling a Portable Fuel Container

WARNING: Flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity. This can cause a fire if you are filling an ungrounded fuel container.

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up, which can produce a spark, when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Only use an approved fuel container to transfer fuel to your vehicle. Place the container on the ground when filling it.
- Do not fill a fuel container when it is inside your vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container when filling it.
- Do not use a device that holds the fuel pump nozzle lever in the fill position.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container

WARNING: Do not insert the nozzle of a fuel container or an aftermarket funnel into the fuel filler neck. This may damage the fuel system filler neck or its seal and cause fuel to run onto the ground.

WARNING: Do not try to pry open or push open the capless fuel system with foreign objects. This could damage the fuel system and its seal and cause injury to you or others.

WARNING: Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, use the fuel filler funnel included with your vehicle. See **Fuel Filler Funnel Location** (page 176).

Note: *Do not use aftermarket funnels as they may not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it.*

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, do the following:

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.
2. Fully insert the fuel filler funnel into the fuel filler inlet.

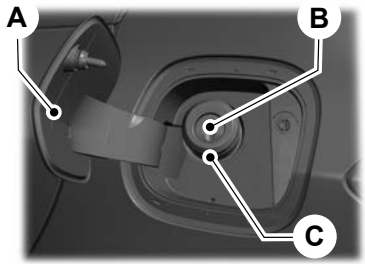


3. Add fuel to your vehicle from the fuel container.
4. Remove the fuel filler funnel.
5. Fully close the fuel filler door.
6. Clean the fuel filler funnel and place it back in your vehicle or correctly dispose of it.

Note: *Extra funnels can be purchased from an authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.*

REFUELING - EXCLUDING: PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

Refueling System Overview



A	Fuel filler door.
B	Fuel tank filler valve.
C	Fuel tank filler pipe.

Your vehicle does not have a fuel tank filler cap.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing



A Left-hand side. To open the fuel filler door, press the center rear edge of the fuel filler door and then release.

B Right-hand side. To open the fuel filler door, press the center rear edge of the fuel filler door and then release.

C Left-hand side. Pull the rear of the fuel filler door to open it.

D Right-hand side. Pull the rear of the fuel filler door to open it.

Refueling Your Vehicle

WARNING: When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

WARNING: The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

WARNING: Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.

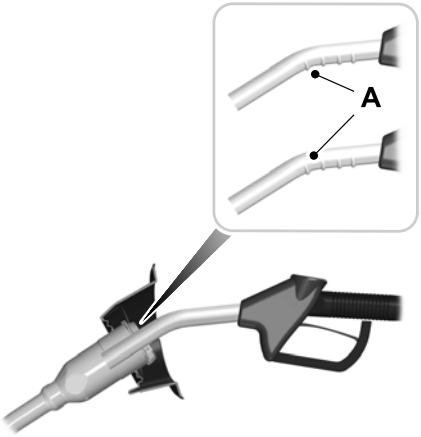
WARNING: Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.

WARNING: Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

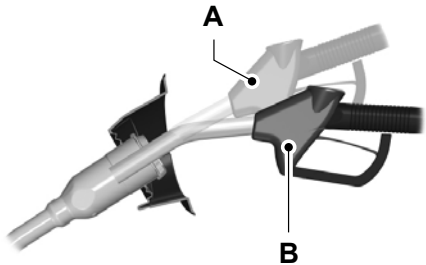
WARNING: Wait at least five seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.
2. Select the correct fuel pump nozzle for your vehicle.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

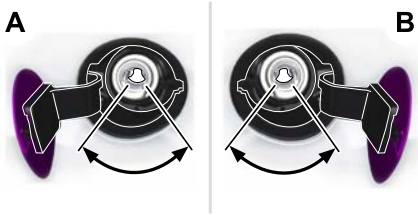


3. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch on the nozzle A. Keep the fuel pump nozzle resting on the fuel tank filler pipe.

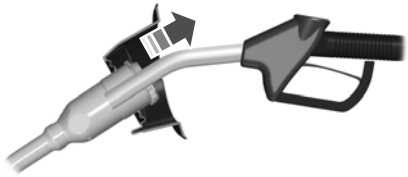


E139203

4. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position B when refueling. Holding the fuel pump nozzle in position A can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel pump nozzle before the fuel tank is full.



5. Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown.



6. When you finish refueling slightly raise the fuel pump nozzle and slowly remove it.
7. Fully close the fuel filler door.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with incorrect fuel. Incorrect fuel use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

Refueling System Warning (If Equipped)

If the fuel tank filler valve does not fully close, a message could appear in the information display.

Message
Check Fuel Fill Inlet

If the message appears, do the following:

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off.
2. Shift into park (P) or neutral (N).
3. Apply the parking brake.
4. Fully open the fuel filler door.
5. Check the fuel tank filler valve for any debris that may be restricting its movement.
6. Remove any debris from the fuel tank filler valve.
7. Fully insert a fuel pump nozzle or the fuel filler funnel provided with your vehicle into the fuel filler pipe. See **Fuel Filler Funnel Location** (page 176). This action should dislodge any debris that may be preventing the fuel tank filler valve from fully closing.
8. Remove the fuel pump nozzle or fuel filler funnel from the fuel filler pipe.
9. Fully close the fuel filler door.

Note: *The message may not immediately reset. If the message continues to appear and a warning lamp illuminates, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

REFUELING - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

WARNING: Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

WARNING: Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.

WARNING: When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

WARNING: Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.

WARNING: Wait at least five seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

WARNING: The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

WARNING: Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.

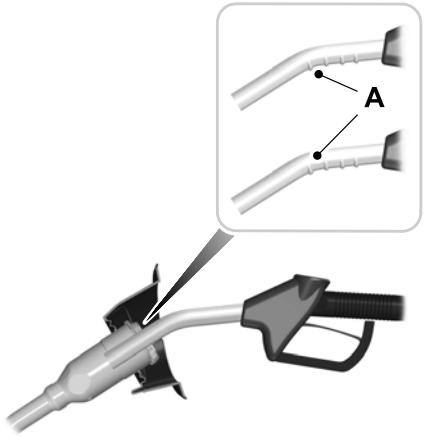
1. When you stop your vehicle, shift into park (P) and switch the ignition off.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

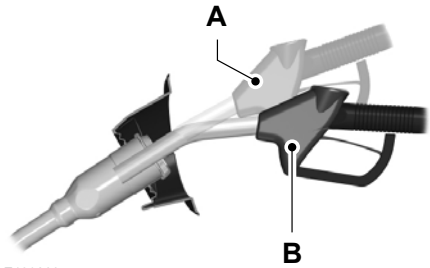


E146221

2. Press the button next to the lighting control to open the fuel filler door. The fuel filler door can take up to 15 seconds to open before you can insert a fuel filler nozzle.

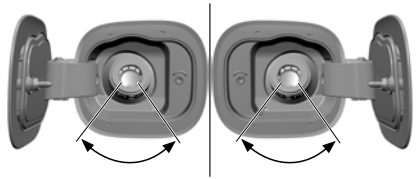


3. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch on the nozzle A. Keep it resting on the cover of the fuel tank filler pipe opening.



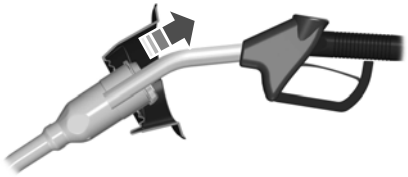
E139203

4. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position B when refueling. Holding the fuel nozzle in position A can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the nozzle before the fuel tank is full.



5. Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing



6. When the nozzle shuts off, wait at least 5 seconds, then slightly raise the fuel pump nozzle and slowly remove it.
7. Fully close the fuel filler door.

Note: *To close the fuel filler door, press the center rear edge of the fuel filler door and then release.*

Complete the refueling process within 20 minutes. If 20 minutes elapses, press the button on the dashboard again. Fuel pump nozzle automatic shut off could occur if you do not press the button on the dashboard.

System Warnings

If the fuel filler door fails to open, an information message appears in the information display.

Message	Description and Action
Refuel Error See Manual	A warning message appears in the information display when the fuel system fails to depressurize or the fuel filler door fails to open. You may have to use the fuel filler door manual override lever.

If the information message appears, do the following:

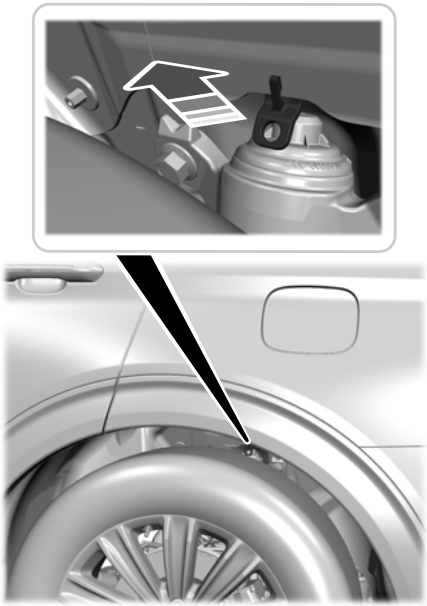
1. Check the fuel filler door for anything that may be obstructing its movement, for example ice or snow.
2. Remove any obstruction from the fuel filler door.
3. Press the button on the dashboard to open the fuel filler door.
4. If the fuel filler door fails to open and the information message remains in the information display, use the fuel filler door manual override lever.

Fuel Filler Door Manual Override Lever

When using the manual override lever do the following:

Note: *The transmission must be in park (P) or neutral (N).*

1. Switch the ignition on.



Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Note: *The manual override lever is in the driver side rear wheel well area.*

2. Pull the manual override lever.
3. Switch the ignition off.
4. Complete the refueling process within 20 minutes.

FUEL CONSUMPTION

Advertised Capacity

The advertised capacity is the maximum amount of fuel that you can add to the fuel tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 354).

In addition, the fuel tank contains an empty reserve. The empty reserve is an unspecified amount of fuel that remains in the fuel tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty.

Note: *The amount of fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range.*

Filling the Fuel Tank

For consistent results when refueling:

- Turn the ignition off before fueling; an inaccurate reading results if the engine is left running.
- Use the same fill rate (low-medium-high) each time the tank is filled.
- Allow no more than one automatic shut-off when refueling.

Results are most accurate when the filling method is consistent.

Calculating Fuel Economy

Your vehicle calculates fuel economy figures through the trip computer average fuel function. See **Information Displays** (page 102).

The first 1,600 km of driving is the break-in period of the vehicle. A more accurate measurement is obtained after 3,200–4,800 km.

1. Completely fill the fuel tank and record the initial odometer reading. See **Refueling** (page 177).
2. Each time you fill the fuel tank, record the amount of fuel added.
3. After at least three fill ups, fill the fuel tank and record the current odometer reading.
4. Subtract your initial odometer reading from the current odometer reading.

To calculate L/100 km (liters per 100 kilometers) fuel consumption, multiply the liters used by 100, then divide by kilometers traveled. To calculate MPG (miles per gallon) fuel consumption, divide miles traveled by gallons used.

Keep a record for at least one month and record the type of driving, for example city or highway. This provides an accurate estimate of your vehicle's fuel economy under current driving conditions. Keeping records during summer and winter shows how temperature impacts fuel economy.

Conditions Influencing Fuel Efficiency

- Carrying unnecessary weight in your vehicle will reduce fuel efficiency.
- Avoid adding accessories that increase aerodynamic drag to your vehicle such as bug deflectors, car top carriers and ski or bike racks.
- Remove empty roof racks and keep windows shut at high speeds to reduce wind resistance and fuel use.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

- Check and adjust tire pressure regularly. Under inflated tires will increase fuel consumption.
- Sudden acceleration and braking degrade fuel efficiency. Drive smoothly looking as far ahead as possible and avoid short trips when possible.
- Fuel efficiency degrades with lower temperatures.
- Comfort Features use additional energy and consume more fuel. Use AC and other comfort features only when necessary.
- Using fuel blended with alcohol may increase fuel consumption.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

CATALYTIC CONVERTER

WARNING: Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.

WARNING: The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the catalytic converter. The catalytic converter heats up to a very high temperature after only a short period of engine operation and stays hot after the engine is switched off.

WARNING: Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

Your vehicle has various emission control components and a catalytic converter that enables it to comply with applicable exhaust emission standards.

To make sure that the catalytic converter and other emission control components continue to work properly:

- Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not run the engine with a spark plug lead disconnected.
- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 289).
- Use only the specified fuel listed.
- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving.
- Avoid running out of fuel.
- Have the items listed in scheduled maintenance information performed according to the specified schedule.

Note: *Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

The scheduled maintenance items listed in scheduled maintenance information are essential to the life and performance of your vehicle and to its emissions system.

If you use anything other than Ford, Motorcraft or Ford-authorized parts for maintenance replacements or for service of components affecting emission control, such non-Ford parts should be equivalent to genuine Ford Motor Company parts in performance and durability.

Illumination of the service engine soon indicator, charging system warning light or the temperature warning light, fluid leaks, strange odors, smoke or loss of engine power could indicate that the emission control system is not working properly.

An improperly operating or damaged exhaust system may allow exhaust to enter the vehicle. Have a damaged or improperly operating exhaust system inspected and repaired immediately.

Do not make any unauthorized changes to your vehicle or engine. By law, vehicle owners and anyone who manufactures, repairs, services, sells, leases, trades vehicles, or supervises a fleet of vehicles are not permitted to intentionally remove an emission control device or prevent it from working. Information about your vehicle's emission system is on the Vehicle Emission Control Information Decal located on or near the engine. This decal also lists engine displacement.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Please consult your warranty information for complete details.

On-Board Diagnostics (OBD-II)

Your vehicle has a computer known as the on-board diagnostics system (OBD-II) that monitors the engine's emission control system. The system protects the environment by making sure that your vehicle continues to meet government emission standards. The OBD-II system also assists a service technician in properly servicing your vehicle.



When the service engine soon indicator illuminates, the OBD-II system has detected a malfunction. Temporary malfunctions may cause the service engine soon indicator to illuminate. Examples are:

1. Your vehicle has run out of fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly.
2. Poor fuel quality or water in the fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly.
3. The fuel fill inlet may not have closed properly. See **Refueling** (page 177).
4. Driving through deep water—the electrical system may be wet.

You can correct these temporary malfunctions by filling the fuel tank with good quality fuel, properly closing the fuel fill inlet or letting the electrical system dry out. After three driving cycles without these or any other temporary malfunctions present, the service engine soon indicator should stay off the next time you start the engine. A driving cycle consists of a cold engine startup followed by mixed city and highway driving. No additional vehicle service is required.

If the service engine soon indicator remains on, have your vehicle serviced at the first available opportunity. Although some malfunctions detected by the OBD-II may not have symptoms that are apparent, continued driving with the service engine soon indicator on can result in increased emissions, lower fuel economy, reduced engine and transmission smoothness and lead to more costly repairs.

Readiness for Inspection and Maintenance (I/M) Testing

Some state and provincial and local governments may have Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) programs to inspect the emission control equipment on your vehicle. Failure to pass this inspection could prevent you from getting a vehicle registration.



If the service engine soon indicator is on or the bulb does not work, your vehicle may need service. See On-Board Diagnostics.

Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test if the service engine soon indicator is on or not working properly (bulb is burned out), or if the OBD-II system has determined that some of the emission control systems have not been properly checked. In this case, the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing.

If the vehicle's engine or transmission has just been serviced, or the battery has recently run down or been replaced, the OBD-II system may indicate that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing. To determine if the vehicle is ready for I/M testing, turn the ignition key to the on position for 15 seconds without cranking the engine. If the service engine soon indicator blinks eight times, it means that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing; if the service engine soon indicator stays on solid, it means that your vehicle is ready for I/M testing.

The OBD-II system checks the emission control system during normal driving. A complete check may take several days.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

If the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing, you can perform the following driving cycle consisting of mixed city and highway driving:

1. 15 minutes of steady driving on an expressway or highway followed by 20 minutes of stop-and-go driving with at least four 30-second idle periods.
2. Allow your vehicle to sit for at least eight hours with the ignition off. Then, start the vehicle and complete the above driving cycle. The vehicle must warm up to its normal operating temperature. Once started, do not turn off the vehicle until the above driving cycle is complete.

If the vehicle is still not ready for I/M testing, you need to repeat the above driving cycle.

GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER

WARNING: Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

To reduce the risk of causing damage to the gasoline particulate filter:

- Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables.
- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving.
- Do not ignore warning lamps, indicators or information messages.

Gasoline Particulate Filter Regeneration

Particles in the exhaust gas collect in the gasoline particulate filter causing a gradual restriction over time. This restriction is removed through a regeneration process controlled by the engine control system. The regeneration process converts the particles in the exhaust gas into harmless gases.

Regeneration occurs during normal driving, to varying degrees depending on how you drive. Passive regeneration occurs when you drive at moderate to high speed but if you generally drive short distances at low speed, the engine control system could actively raise the exhaust gas temperature to remove the particles that have collected in the filter to make sure that it continues to correctly operate.

To assist passive regeneration, we recommend that you make occasional journeys that allow you to:

- Drive at a varied range of conditions, including highway conditions for a minimum of 20 minutes.
- Avoid prolonged engine idling.
- Select a suitable gear to maintain engine speed between 1500 and 4000 RPM.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

If the filter is saturated or is approaching saturation, a warning lamp illuminates or a message appears in the information display.

Note: *A warning lamp illuminates and a message appears in the information display on some vehicles.*

If you do not take action when a warning lamp illuminates or a message appears in the information display, you could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Gasoline Particulate Filter Warning Lamps and Indicators



Malfunction indicator lamp.

Gasoline Particulate Filter Information Messages

Message	Action
Exhaust Filter at Limit Drive to Clean	• Drive at a varied range of conditions, including highway conditions for 20 minutes or until the message disappears. • Avoid prolonged engine idling. • Select a suitable gear to maintain engine speed between 1500 and 4000 RPM.
Exhaust Filter Over Limit Service Now	• Drive at a moderate speed. • Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration. • Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNING: This battery pack should only be serviced by an authorized electric vehicle technician. Improper handling can result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not touch the electronic ignition system parts after you have switched the ignition on or when the engine is running. The system operates at high voltage. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan.

Note: *The high-voltage battery does not require regular service maintenance.*

Your vehicle consists of various high-voltage components and wiring. All of the high-voltage power flows through specific wiring assemblies labeled as such or covered with a solid orange convolute, or orange striped tape, or both. Do not come in contact with these components.

The high-voltage battery pack contains a lithium-ion battery. The pack is underneath the vehicle. The high-voltage battery system uses an advanced liquid heating and cooling system to regulate the high-voltage battery temperature and help maximize high-voltage battery life.

CHARGING THE HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY (IF EQUIPPED)

IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS

WARNING: This equipment has arcing or sparking parts. Do not expose to flammable vapors. Position this equipment at least 450 mm above the floor.

RISK OF FIRE or ELECTRIC SHOCK

WARNING: The AC wall plug must fit firmly into the AC outlet. If the connection feels loose, worn or the AC outlet is damaged, please have a qualified electrician replace the AC outlet. Using a convenience cord with a worn outlet may cause burns, property damage and increase the risk of electric shock.

WARNING: Do not use the 240 V convenience cord with an extension cord, two-prong adapter, surge protector, timer or other adapter.

WARNING: Do not allow charging equipment to be immersed in water or liquids. Failure to follow this warning could result in fire, serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not attempt to open the charging equipment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, death or property damage.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

WARNING: Do not use the charging equipment if it is faulty or has been damaged. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, death or property damage.

WARNING: You risk death or serious injury to yourself and others if you do not follow the instruction highlighted by the warning symbol. Failure to follow the specific warnings and instructions could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Install charging equipment in compliance with local regulations. Failure to follow this warning could result in fire, serious personal injury or death.

Note: *This product must be grounded. If it should malfunction or break down, grounding provides a path of least resistance for electric current to reduce the risk of electric shock. This product comes with a cord having an equipment grounding conductor and a grounding plug. The plug must be plugged into an appropriate outlet that is properly installed and grounded in accordance with all local codes and ordinances.*

OPERATION INSTRUCTIONS

- Read all the instructions before using this product.
- This device should be supervised when used around children.
- Do not put fingers into the electric vehicle (EV) connector.
- Do not use this product with the flexible power cord or EV cable frayed, broken insulation, or showing any other signs of damage.
- Do not use this product with the enclosure or the EV connector broken, cracked, open, or showing any other indication of damage.

Charging Equipment

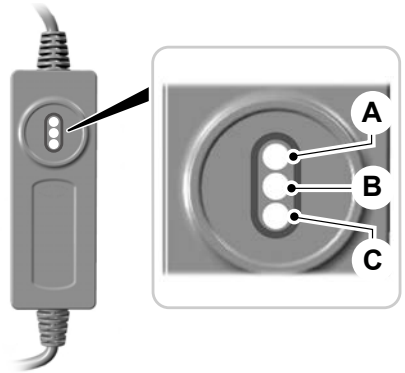
Your vehicle has a convenience cord in the luggage compartment.

Note: *Do not use the 240 volt convenience cord with an extension cord, two-prong adapter, surge protector, timer or other adapter.*

Note: *If charging for your plug-in vehicle fails, please call the Customer Relationship Center, or click on Call for support or Live Chat at your regional vehicle manufacture's website.*

Note: *Store the convenience cord in a clean, dry place between the temperature of -40–90°C.*

Convenience Cord



A. Power.
B. Fault.
C. Check Outlet.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

CAUTION: TO REDUCE THE RISK OF FIRE Make sure to use a two-prong AC outlet that is properly grounded, and in good condition. Use a dedicated line. You cannot have other appliances connected to the same circuit. If you do not use a dedicated circuit, the circuit breaker could trip or open. If you do not have a dedicated circuit, contact a licensed professional electrician for proper installation.

Max Pilot Current Rating	Amperage Rating
Australia, New Zealand	8A

Make sure that the convenience cord is completely unwrapped before charging. Always plug the cord into the AC outlet before connecting the charging coupler into the charge port on your vehicle.

Note: *When the convenience cord is plugged into an outlet, use the following table to determine your vehicle charge status. If the power indicator light is off after plugging in the convenience cord, use a different outlet.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Convenience Cord LED Indicators			What it Means	What to Do
Power (Green)	Fault (Red)	Check Outlet (Amber)		
Off	Off	Off	If the LED indicators are off after plugging in the convenience cord and the plug is experiencing a no power condition from the wall outlet, use a different outlet.	Use a different wall outlet.
On	Off	Off	The convenience cord is plugged into the wall outlet and ready to charge your vehicle. Reference the charge port section below for information on vehicle charging. The charge cord performs a self-test.	No action required.
On	Flashing	Off	The convenience cord is experiencing a ground fault at the charge port. The convenience cord is in retry mode to return to normal condition. Your vehicle is not charging.	Unplug and re-plug to the vehicle charge port.
On	Flashing	On	The convenience cord AC plug is experiencing an overheat condition. Convenience cord is in retry mode to return to normal condition. If the fault persists, you have a bad wall outlet.	Check the outlet. If the problem persists, use different outlet.
On	Off	Flashing	The convenience cord is charging at a reduced current rate due to a wall outlet over temperature condition.	Check the outlet. If the problem persists, use different outlet.
On	On	Flashing	The convenience cord AC plug has overheated. Cordset retry mode exhausted. Your vehicle is not charging. You have a bad wall outlet.	Have the outlet serviced.

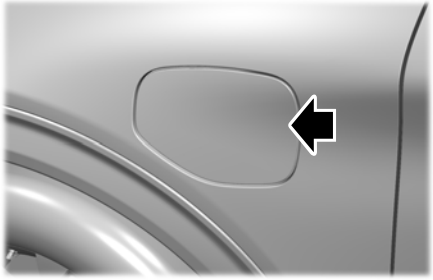
Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Convenience Cord LED Indicators			What it Means	What to Do
Power (Green)	Fault (Red)	Check Outlet (Amber)		
On	On	Off	The convenience cord is experiencing a ground fault at the charge port. Your vehicle is not charging. Call for service.	Request vehicle service.
On	On/Two flash interval	Two flash interval	Missing ground at AC outlet. Your vehicle is not charging.	Connect to a properly grounded AC outlet.
On	On/Flashing	Off	Convenience cord internal fault. Call for service.	Request cordset service. Replace cordset.

Note: *Make sure that the electrical source outlet meets the convenience cord requirements for the high voltage batteries to charge properly.*

Charge Port

The charge port is between the front left-hand side door and front left-hand wheel well. To open, press the center right edge of the charge port door and then release.



Note: *Do not force the charge port door open or closed. Forcing the door open or closed will damage the charge port.*

The charge status indicator around the charge port indicates the charge status of the high voltage battery in your vehicle.

Divided into five zones, the charge status indicator displays the state of charge in 20 percent increments.

The color white is used as a courtesy light to help with plugging in and to acknowledge actions such as plugging in, unplugging or pressing the charge times button.

The color blue is used when the vehicle is plugged in and either charging or waiting to charge.

The color orange is used to indicate charge faults.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Charge Times Button

Use the charge times button to either turn off or turn on your charge times settings for this location. Select charge settings on the home page of your touchscreen or under the vehicle settings menu to access charge preferences. See **SYNC™ 3** (page 385).



Charging



Note: *Your vehicle must be in park (P) to charge and for the charge status indicator to illuminate.*

Note: *Pump fan noise could be present when charging the high voltage battery. The pump fan noise is normal to hear as it circulates liquid and keeps your high voltage battery cool while charging.*

Note: *You cannot disconnect the charging coupler until charging stops or completes.*

To charge the high-voltage battery:

1. Put the vehicle in park (P).
2. Press the center right edge of the charge port door and then release to open the door.
3. Plug the charging coupler into the charge port receptacle on your vehicle. Make sure the button clicks confirming that you have completely engaged the coupler.

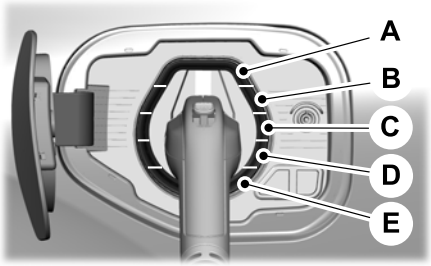


4. Verify that the cord acknowledgment feature activates. This indicates the beginning of a normal charge cycle. The charge status indicator lights up each zone alternately from bottom to top and from bottom to top again.
5. If using a charging station, follow the instructions on the charge station to begin the charging process.

The charge status indicator displays how far along the charge is:

- When the bottom zone is pulsing, the charge is between 0-20 percent.
- When the bottom zone illuminates and the next is pulsing, the charge is between 20-40 percent.
- When two zones illuminate and the next is pulsing, the charge is between 40-60 percent.
- When three zones illuminate, and the next is pulsing, the charge is between 60-80 percent.
- When four zones illuminate, and the top zone is pulsing, the charge is between 80-100 percent.
- When all zones illuminate, the charge is 100 percent.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing



A. 80%-100% State of Charge.
B. 60%-80% State of Charge.
C. 40%-60% State of Charge.
D. 20%-40% State of Charge.
E. 0%-20% State of Charge.

Note: *When charging stops, the charge status indicator shows all the completed zones solidly lit up in blue color for 30 seconds before turning off. For example, if charging stops at 70 percent, then the bottom three zones light up solidly to indicate a battery charge level of at least 60 percent but less than 80 percent. Charging stops when complete or when paused due to preferred charge settings or charge station actions.*

Note: *If the charge status indicator does not light up or pulse after plugging in, please verify that the charge port light setting is "On". If you do not wish to have the charge status indicator light up at all while charging, then you can turn it "Off". See charge port light under vehicle settings on your touchscreen. See* ***SYNC™ 3*** *(page 385).*

Note: *Charging faults are identified by the color orange on the charge status indicator. Faults can occur within the vehicle charging system or outside the vehicle, such as with the charge cord, charge station or electrical supply.*

Note: *If the system detects a fault in the vehicle charging system at any point in a charge cycle, the entire charge status indicator lights up solidly in orange color for 30 seconds and then turns off. If this happens, unplug the charging coupler and then plug it back into the charge port receptacle. If the problem persists, contact your dealer.*

Note: *If the system detects a fault outside the vehicle, such as with the charge station or charge cord, the entire charge status indicator flashes continuously for 30 seconds and then turns off. If this happens, check the charge cord and the charge station or electrical supply.*

Locking the Charging Coupler



Note: *You need a padlock or a combination lock with a shackle diameter of 5 mm or less and the straight portion of the shackle of 25.4 mm of length or more.*

1. Insert the lock through the hole in the charging coupler button.
2. Lock the padlock or combination lock.

Waiting to Charge

Note: *Select charge settings on the home page of your touchscreen or under the vehicle settings menu to access charge preferences. See* ***SYNC™ 3*** *(page 385).*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Charging may not begin upon plugging in if you have set up preferred charge times for this vehicle location. Your vehicle could delay charging to take advantage of off-peak electricity rates. Your vehicle optimizes the charge schedule to be complete by your next departure time.

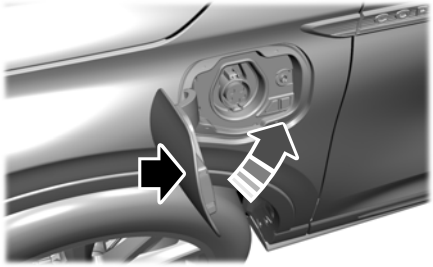
When waiting to charge (plugged in and not currently charging), the charge status indicator shows the present state of charge of the high voltage battery by lighting up all completed zones for 30 seconds before turning off. For example, if the battery is at 70 percent charge then the bottom three zones solidly light up to indicate a battery charge level of at least 60 percent but less than 80 percent. Consequently, when the current state of charge is less than 20 percent none of the zones light up.

Note: *When your vehicle is waiting to charge, the charge status indicator turns off 30 seconds after displaying the present state of charge. When your vehicle begins charging, the charge status indicator turns on and displays how far along the charge is, as previously described.*

Disconnecting the Charging Coupler

Note: *Do not pull the wall plug from the wall while your vehicle is charging. Doing so could damage the outlet and the cord.*

1. If you have installed a padlock or combination lock then remove it.
2. Press the button on the charging coupler.
3. While holding the button, remove the charging coupler from the charge port receptacle.



4. Press the center right edge of the charge port door to close.

MOVING AND STORAGE INSTRUCTIONS

Note: *Do not hold the convenience cord by the flexible power cable. Always hold the complete unit.*

Make sure to completely wrap the convenience cord after charging.

When complete, replace the convenience cord in the luggage compartment.

Note: *Store the convenience cord in a clean, dry place between the temperature of -40–90°C.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - EXCLUDING: PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

WARNING: Always fully apply the parking brake and make sure you shift into park (P). Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than a few seconds will limit engine performance, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.

WARNING: When your vehicle is stationary, keep the brake pedal fully pressed when shifting gears. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, death or property damage.

Note: *You may not be able to shift out of park (P) unless the remote control is inside your vehicle.*

Understanding the Shift Positions of Your Automatic Transmission



Putting your vehicle in or out of gear:

Your vehicle has an electronic transmission shifter. The transmission selector is on the center console, below the climate control system.

To place the vehicle in gear from park (P):

1. Fully press and hold the brake pedal when shifting out of park (P).
2. Rotate the outer ring of the transmission selector clockwise from park (P), until the desired gear illuminates on the transmission selector.
3. Release the brake pedal and the transmission remains in the selected gear.

The instrument cluster also displays the current gear.

Park (P)

With the transmission selector in park (P), the vehicle locks the transmission and prevents the wheels from turning. Always come to a complete stop before putting the vehicle into and out of park (P). An audible tone sounds once you select park (P).

The electric parking brake may apply when you shift to Park (P) without the brake pedal fully depressed. The electric parking brake applies when you shift to Park (P) on large slopes, and releases with the drive away release function.

Reverse (R)

With the transmission selector in reverse (R), your vehicle moves backward. Always come to a complete stop before shifting into and out of reverse (R).

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Neutral (N)

With the transmission selector in neutral (N), you can start your vehicle and it is free to roll. Hold the brake pedal down when in this position.

WARNING: In neutral (N) your vehicle has the ability to roll freely. If you intend to leave your vehicle, make sure you apply the parking brake.

Drive (D)

Drive (D) is the normal driving position for the best fuel economy.

Low (L) (If Equipped)

- Provides maximum engine braking.
- Shift the transmission into low (L) at any vehicle speed.
- The intent is not for use under extended or normal driving conditions and results in lower fuel economy.

Manual (M) (If Equipped)

In manual (M), you can upshift or downshift using the paddle shifters.

With your vehicle in drive (D), press the manual (M) button to activate manual mode.

SelectShift

Use this feature to upshift or downshift using the paddle shifters.

You can only use this feature in drive (D) or manual (M).



- Pull the right paddle (+) to upshift.
- Pull the left paddle (-) to downshift.

In manual (M), press the manual (M) button to switch the feature off and return to drive (D).

Note: *SelectShift in drive (D) provides temporary manual control of the gear selection.*

Automatic Return to park

Note: *This feature does not operate when your vehicle is in stay in neutral mode.*

Your vehicle has a feature that shifts your vehicle into park (P) when any of the following conditions occur:

- You turn the vehicle off.
- You open the driver door with your seatbelt unlatched.
- You unlatch your seatbelt when the driver door is open.

Note: *This feature may not work properly if the door ajar switch is malfunctioning. If your door ajar indicator does not illuminate when you open the driver door or the indicator illuminates with the driver door closed, see your authorized dealer.*

Stay in Neutral Mode

WARNING: When doing this procedure, you need to take the transmission out of park (P) which means your vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, always fully apply the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheels chocks if appropriate.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Note: *Stay in neutral is a temporary vehicle state with the ignition off. Once in this mode, sufficient battery voltage must be maintained or your vehicle will return to park. Failure to follow this instruction could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.*

Note: *When entering an automatic car wash, always shift to neutral (N). If you are exiting the vehicle before the car wash, stay in neutral mode is available.*

Stay in neutral mode allows your vehicle to stay in neutral when you exit your vehicle. Your vehicle must be stationary to enter this mode.

Note: *Failure to follow this instruction could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.*

Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.

To enter Stay in Neutral mode

1. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Shift into Neutral (N).

Note: *When in neutral (N), a message appears in the display screen informing you how to access stay in neutral mode.*

4. Press the manual (M) or Low (L) button in the middle of the transmission selector to enter stay in neutral mode.

Note: *A message appears in the display screen confirming your vehicle is in stay in neutral mode. The neutral (N) indicator light on the transmission selector flashes slowly.*

5. Release the brake pedal.
6. Switch the ignition off.

To exit stay in neutral mode, place your foot on the brake pedal and shift into park (P), or start the engine and shift into Drive (D) or Reverse (R).

Stay in Neutral Mode - Failure to Start

Use this feature to move the transmission selector out of park (P) if you cannot start the engine.

Note: *This feature does not function if the vehicle battery charge is low.*

Do not tow your vehicle in stay in neutral mode.

WARNING: When doing this procedure, you need to take the transmission out of park (P) which means your vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, always fully apply the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheels chocks if appropriate.

1. Switch the ignition on without your foot on the brake pedal.
2. Fully press the brake pedal. Keep the brake pedal fully pressed.
3. Fully press the accelerator pedal. Keep the accelerator pedal fully pressed.
4. Shift from park (P) to neutral (N).
5. Press the manual (M) or low (L) button.
6. Attempt to start the engine.

Note: *A confirmation message appears in the information display when your vehicle has entered stay in neutral mode.*

Note: *You must complete this procedure within 20 seconds.*

7. Release the accelerator and brake pedals.
8. Switch the ignition off.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

The transmission returns to park (P) if the vehicle battery charge is low.

Note: *Prolonged use of stay in neutral mode could cause the vehicle battery to run out of charge.*

To exit stay in neutral mode, press the brake pedal and shift into park (P).

If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck in Mud or Snow

Note: *Do not rock the vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission could occur.*

Note: *Do not rock the vehicle for more than a minute or damage to the transmission and tires could occur, or the engine may overheat.*

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow, rock it out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

Automatic Transmission Information Messages

Message	Description
Park Brake Not Applied	The electric parking brake is not fully applied.
Transmission Not in Park	A reminder to shift into park. In addition, this message is typically after reconnecting or recharging the battery until you cycle the ignition to the on mode.
SHIFT SYS FAULT Apply Park Brake Before Exiting the Vehicle	Displays when there is a system fault and the park brake needs to be depressed before exiting the vehicle. See your authorized dealer.
Transmission Malfunction Service Now	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Select M To Confirm Stay In Neutral Mode	Displays when you shift into neutral (N).
Stay in Neutral Mode Engaged	Displays to confirm that your vehicle has entered Stay in Neutral Mode.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

WARNING: Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than a few seconds will limit engine performance, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

WARNING: When your vehicle is stationary, keep the brake pedal fully pressed when shifting gears. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, death or property damage.

WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Note: *The ready to drive indicator may be off and you may not be able to shift out of park (P) unless the remote control is inside your vehicle.*

Understanding the Shift Positions of Your Automatic Transmission



E224178

Putting your vehicle in or out of gear:

Your vehicle has an electronic transmission shifter. The transmission selector is on the center console, below the climate control system.

To place your vehicle in gear from park (P):

1. Fully press and hold the brake pedal when shifting out of park (P).
2. Rotate the outer ring of the transmission selector clockwise from park (P), until the desired gear illuminates on the transmission selector.
3. Release the brake pedal and the transmission remains in the selected gear.

The instrument cluster also displays the current gear.

Park (P)

With the transmission selector in park (P), your vehicle locks the transmission and prevents the wheels from turning. Always come to a complete stop before putting your vehicle into and out of park (P).

Reverse (R)

WARNING: Move the transmission selector lever to reverse (R) only when your vehicle is stationary and the engine is at idle speed.

With the transmission selector in reverse (R), your vehicle moves backward. Always come to a complete stop before shifting into and out of reverse (R).

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Neutral (N)

WARNING: In neutral (N) your vehicle has the ability to roll freely. If you intend to leave your vehicle, make sure you apply the parking brake.

With the transmission selector in neutral (N), your vehicle can be started and is free to roll. Hold the brake pedal down when in this position.

Drive (D)

Drive (D) is the normal driving position for the best fuel economy.

Low (L)

- Provides maximum engine braking.
- The transmission may be shifted into low (L) at any vehicle speed.
- Is not intended for use under extended or normal driving conditions and results in lower fuel economy.

Automatic Return to Park

Your vehicle shifts into park (P) when your vehicle is stationary and any of the following occur:

- You switch the vehicle off.
- You open the driver door with your seatbelt unlatched.
- You unlatch the driver seatbelt when the driver door is open.

Note: *This feature does not operate when your vehicle is in stay in neutral mode.*

Automatic return to park (P) may not work if the door ajar switch is malfunctioning.

See an authorized dealer if any of the following occur:

- Door ajar indicator does not illuminate with the driver door open.
- Door ajar indicator illuminates with the driver door closed.
- Transmission not in park message appears with the driver door closed, after you shift out of park (P).

Note: *Do not use automatic return to park (P) when your vehicle is moving, except in an emergency.*

Stay in Neutral Mode

This mode keeps your vehicle in neutral (N) when you switch your vehicle off. Use this mode if you exit your vehicle or switch your vehicle off at an automatic car wash.

Your vehicle could shift to park (P) after 30 minutes, or when the vehicle battery charge level is low. Prolonged use of this mode can cause the vehicle battery to run out of charge.

Do not tow your vehicle in this mode. Failure to follow these instructions could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Note: *Automatic return to park (P) is delayed when your vehicle is in this mode.*

To enter Stay in Neutral Mode

1. Power your vehicle on. See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 163).
2. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop.
3. Press and hold the brake pedal.
4. Shift into neutral (N).

Note: *An instructional message appears.*

5. Press the low (L) button in the middle of the transmission selector.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Note: *A confirmation message appears when your vehicle enters the mode and the neutral (N) button on the transmission selector flashes.*

6. Release the brake pedal.

Note: *Your vehicle is free to roll.*

7. Switch your vehicle off.

Note: *Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.*

To exit Stay in Neutral Mode

1. Press the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P), or power your vehicle on and shift into drive (D) or reverse (R).

Grade Assist



Press the grade assist button to activate grade assist. The grade assist lamp appears in the instrument cluster. Press the button again to switch it off.

- Provides additional grade braking with a combination of engine motoring and high-voltage battery charging to help maintain vehicle speed when descending a slope.
- As your vehicle determines the amount of engine motoring and high-voltage battery charging, you may notice the engine speed increasing and decreasing to help maintain your vehicle speed when descending a slope.

If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck in Mud or Snow

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow, rock it out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

Note: *Do not rock the vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission could occur.*

Note: *Do not rock the vehicle for more than a minute or damage to the transmission and tires could occur, or the engine could overheat.*

Automatic Transmission Information Messages

Message	Description
Park Brake Not Applied	The electric parking brake is not fully applied.
Transmission Not in Park	A reminder to shift into park. In addition, this message typically appears after reconnecting or recharging the battery until you cycle the ignition to the on mode.
SHIFT SYS FAULT Apply Park Brake Before Exiting the Vehicle	Displays when there is a system fault and the park brake needs to be depressed before exiting the vehicle. See your authorized dealer.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Message	Description
Transmission Malfunction Service Now	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Select L To Confirm Stay In Neutral Mode	Displays when you shift into neutral (N).
Stay in Neutral Mode Engaged	Displays to confirm that your vehicle has entered stay in neutral mode.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

USING ALL-WHEEL DRIVE

Note: *When a system malfunction is present, a warning message will be displayed in the information display. See* ***Information Messages*** *(page 115). This means the system is not functioning correctly and has defaulted to front-wheel drive only. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.*

Note: *A message will be displayed in the information display when the system overheats and switches to front-wheel drive. This condition may occur if you operate your vehicle in extreme high-load conditions or with excessive wheel slip, (i.e. deep sand). To resume all-wheel drive function as soon as possible, stop your vehicle in a safe location and switch the ignition off. After the system cools and normal all-wheel drive functionality resumes, a message displays for approximately five seconds.*

Note: *If a warning message appears in the information display when using the spare tire, it should turn off after reinstalling the repaired or replaced road tire and you switch the ignition on.*

Note: *It is recommended that you reinstall the repaired tire or replace the tire as soon as possible. Major dissimilar tire sizes between the front and rear axles could cause system damage or default the system to front-wheel drive.*

Your all-wheel drive vehicle is not intended for off-road use. The all-wheel drive feature gives your vehicle some limited off-road capabilities in which driving surfaces are relatively level, obstruction-free and otherwise similar to normal on-road driving conditions. Operating your vehicle in other than those conditions could subject the vehicle to excessive stress which might result in damage which is not covered by your warranty.



E142669

A graphic will be displayed in the information display to advise you of the power distribution between the front and rear wheels. The more the area is filled the more power is being distributed to that wheel.

Driving in Special Conditions With All-Wheel Drive

All-wheel drive has operating characteristics that are somewhat different from two-wheel drive, both on and off the freeway.

Note: *It may be useful to switch traction control off. This allows for more wheel spin and engine torque in certain conditions or if your vehicle becomes stuck.*

When driving at slow speeds under high-load conditions, use a low gear when possible. Low gear operation will maximize the engine and transmission cooling capability.

Under severe operating conditions, the air conditioning may cycle on and off to prevent the engine from overheating.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Basic Operating Principles

- Drive slower in strong crosswinds which can affect the normal steering characteristics of your vehicle.
- When driving your vehicle on surfaces made slippery by loose sand, water, gravel, snow or ice, proceed with care.

If Your Vehicle leaves the Road

If your vehicle leaves the road, reduce your vehicle speed and avoid severe braking. When your vehicle speed has been reduced, ease your vehicle back onto the road. Do not turn the steering wheel sharply while returning your vehicle to the road.

It may be safer to stay on the shoulder of the road and slow down gradually before returning to the road. You may lose control if you do not slow down or if you turn the steering wheel too sharply or abruptly.

It may be less risky to strike small objects, such as freeway reflectors, with minor damage to your vehicle rather than attempt a sudden return to the road which could cause your vehicle to slide sideways out of control or roll over. Remember, your safety and the safety of others should be your primary concern.

Emergency Maneuvers

In an unavoidable emergency situation where a sudden sharp turn must be made, remember to avoid over-driving your vehicle (i.e. turn the steering wheel only as rapidly and as far as required to avoid the emergency). Excessive steering can result in loss of vehicle control. Apply smooth pressure to the accelerator pedal or brake pedal when changes in vehicle speed are required. Avoid abrupt steering, acceleration and braking. This could result in an increased risk of vehicle roll over, loss of vehicle control and personal injury. Use all available road surface to bring your vehicle to a safe direction of travel.

In the event of an emergency stop, avoid skidding the tires and do not attempt any sharp steering wheel movements.

If your vehicle goes from one type of surface to another (i.e. from concrete to gravel) there will be a change in the way your vehicle responds to a maneuver (i.e. steering, acceleration or braking).

Sand

When driving over sand, try to keep all four wheels on the most solid area of the trail. Avoid reducing the tire pressure. Shift to a lower gear and drive steadily through the terrain. Apply the accelerator slowly and avoid excessive wheel slip.

Do not drive your vehicle in deep sand for an extended period of time. This will cause the system to overheat. A message appears in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 115).

To resume operation, switch the ignition off and allow the system to cool down for a minimum of 15 minutes. After the system has cooled down, a message appears briefly in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 115).

When driving at slow speeds in deep sand under high outside temperatures, use a low gear when possible. Low gear operation will maximize the engine and transmission cooling capability.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Avoid driving at excessive speeds, this causes vehicle momentum to work against you and your vehicle could become stuck to the point that assistance may be required from another vehicle. Remember, you may be able to back out the way you came if you proceed with caution.

Mud and Water

Mud

Be cautious of sudden changes in vehicle speed or direction when you are driving in mud. Even all-wheel drive vehicles can lose traction in slick mud. If your vehicle does slide, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle.

After driving through mud, clean off residue stuck to rotating driveshafts and tires. Excess mud stuck on tires and rotating driveshafts can cause an imbalance that could damage drive components.

Water

If you must drive through high water, drive slowly. Traction or brake capability may be limited.

When driving through water, determine the depth and avoid water higher than the bottom of the wheel rims. If the ignition system gets wet, your vehicle may stall.

Once through water, always try the brakes. Wet brakes do not stop your vehicle as effectively as dry brakes. Drying can be improved by applying light pressure to the brake pedal while moving slowly.

Note: *Driving through deep water may damage the transmission. If the front or rear axle is submerged in water, the axle lubricant and power transfer unit lubricant should be checked and changed if necessary.*

Driving on Hilly or Sloping Terrain

Although natural obstacles may make it necessary to travel diagonally up or down a hill or steep incline, you should always try to drive straight up or straight down.

Note: *Avoid turning on steep slopes or hills. A danger lies in losing traction, slipping sideways and possible vehicle roll over. Whenever driving on a hill, determine beforehand the route you will use. Do not drive over the crest of a hill without seeing what conditions are on the other side. Do not drive in reverse over a hill without the aid of an observer.*

When climbing a steep slope or hill, start in a lower gear rather than downshifting to a lower gear from a higher gear once the ascent has started. This reduces strain on the engine and the possibility of stalling.

If your vehicle stalls, do not try to turn around because this could cause vehicle roll over. It is better to reverse back to a safe location.

Apply just enough power to the wheels to climb the hill. Too much power will cause the tires to slip, spin or lose traction, resulting in loss of vehicle control.



Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Descend a hill in the same gear you would use to climb up the hill to avoid excessive brake application and brake overheating. Do not descend in neutral. Disengage overdrive or move the transmission selector lever to a lower gear. When descending a steep hill, avoid sudden hard braking as you could lose control. The front wheels have to be turning in order to steer your vehicle.

Your vehicle has anti-lock brakes, therefore apply the brakes steadily. Do not pump the brake pedal.

Driving on Snow and Ice

WARNING: If you are driving in slippery conditions that require tire chains or cables, then it is critical that you drive cautiously. Keep speeds down, allow for longer stopping distances and avoid aggressive steering to reduce the chances of a loss of vehicle control which can lead to serious injury or death. If the rear end of your vehicle slides while cornering, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle.

Note: *Excessive tire slippage can cause transmission damage.*

All-wheel drive vehicles have advantages over two-wheel drive vehicles in snow and ice but can skid like any other vehicle. Should you start to slide while driving on snowy or icy roads, turn the steering wheel in the direction of the slide until you regain control.

Avoid sudden applications of power and quick changes of direction on snow and ice. Apply the accelerator slowly and steadily when starting from a full stop.

Avoid sudden braking. Although an all-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in snow and ice, it will not stop any faster as braking occurs at all four wheels. Do not become overconfident as to road conditions.

Make sure you allow sufficient distance between you and other vehicles for stopping. Drive slower than usual and consider using one of the lower gears. In emergency stopping situations, apply the brake steadily. As your vehicle has a four wheel anti-lock brake system, do not pump the brake pedal. See **Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes** (page 210).

If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or Snow

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow, it may be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

Note: *Do not rock your vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature, as damage to the transmission may occur.*

Note: *Do not rock your vehicle for more than a minute, as damage to the transmission and tires may occur or the engine may overheat.*

Maintenance and Modifications

The suspension and steering systems on your vehicle have been designed and tested to provide predictable performance whether loaded or empty. For this reason, we strongly recommend that you do not make modifications such as adding or removing parts (i.e. lift kits or stabilizer bars) or by using replacement parts not equivalent to the original factory equipment.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

We recommend that you use caution when your vehicle has either a high-load or device (i.e. ladder or luggage racks). Any modifications to your vehicle that raise the center of gravity may cause your vehicle to roll over when there is a loss of vehicle control.

Failure to maintain your vehicle correctly may void the warranty, increase your repair cost, reduce vehicle performance and operational capabilities and adversely affect you and your passenger's safety. We recommend you frequently inspect your vehicle's chassis components when your vehicle is subject to off road usage.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

Note: *Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out and an authorized dealer should check them. If the vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, an authorized dealer should check your vehicle.*

Note: *Brake dust may accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is inevitable as the brakes wear and does not contribute to brake noise. Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when driving from a car wash or standing water to dry the brakes.*

See **Cleaning the Wheels** (page 333).

Brake Over Accelerator

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Switch the engine off, move the transmission to park (P) and apply the parking brake. Inspect the accelerator pedal and the area around it for any items or debris that may be obstructing its movement. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorized dealer.

Emergency Brake Assist

Emergency brake assist detects when you brake heavily by measuring the rate at which you press the brake pedal. It provides maximum braking efficiency as long as you press the pedal. Emergency brake assist can reduce stopping distances in critical situations.

Anti-lock Brake System

This system helps you maintain steering control during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking.



If the light does not momentarily illuminate, continues to flash or remains on when you switch the ignition on or apply the parking brake, the anti-lock braking system could be disabled. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer. If the anti-lock brake system is disabled, normal braking is still effective.

See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 97).

Note: *Indicators vary depending on region.*



If the light does not momentarily illuminate, continues to flash or remains on when you switch the ignition on or apply the parking brake, have the system checked by an authorized dealer. If the brake warning lamp illuminates with the parking brake released, have the system checked immediately.

HINTS ON DRIVING WITH ANTI-LOCK BRAKES

The anti-lock braking system does not eliminate the risks when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.
- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

Note: *If the system activates, the brake pedal may pulse and may travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal. You may also hear a noise from the system. This is normal.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

WARNING: Always fully apply the parking brake and make sure you shift into park (P). Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: If you drive extended distances with the parking brake applied, you could cause damage to the brake system.

WARNING: The electric parking brake does not operate if the vehicle battery is running out of charge.

Your vehicle has an electric parking brake. You operate it with a switch instead of a lever. The switch is on the center console or to the left-hand side of the steering wheel, on the lower part of the instrument panel.

Note: *The electric parking brake makes noises during operation. This is normal.*

Applying the Electric Parking Brake



Pull the switch upward.



The red warning lamp flashes during operation and illuminates when the parking brake is applied.

Note: *It remains illuminated for a short period of time after you switch the ignition off.*

If it continues to flash or does not illuminate, the system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: *You can apply the electric parking brake when the ignition is off.*

Note: *The electric parking brake could automatically apply when you shift into park (P). See* ***Automatic Transmission*** *(page 200).*

Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an Emergency

Note: *Do not apply the electric parking brake when your vehicle is moving, except in an emergency. If you repeatedly use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle, you could cause damage to the brake system.*

You can use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle in an emergency.



Pull the switch upward and hold it.



The red warning lamp illuminates, a tone sounds and the stoplamps turn on.

The electric parking brake continues to slow your vehicle down unless you release the switch.

Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake

Switch the ignition on.

Press and hold the brake pedal.



Push the switch downward.



The red warning lamp turns off.

If it remains illuminated or flashes, the system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Pulling Away on a Hill When Towing a Trailer

Press and hold the brake pedal.



Pull the switch upward and hold it.

Shift into gear.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Press the accelerator pedal until engine has developed sufficient torque to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the hill.



Release the switch and pull away in a normal manner.

Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake

Close the driver door.

Shift into gear.

Press the accelerator pedal and pull away in a normal manner.



The red warning lamp turns off.

If it remains illuminated or flashes, the electric parking brake has not released. Manually release the parking brake.

Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if the Vehicle Battery is Running Out of Charge

Connect a booster battery to the vehicle battery to release the electric parking brake if the vehicle battery is running out of charge. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 289).

Electric Parking Brake Information Messages

Message	Action
Park Brake Malfunction Service Now	The electric parking brake has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park Brake Not Released	The electric parking brake has not released. Manually release the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park Brake Not Applied	The electric parking brake has not applied. Apply the electric parking brake.If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park Brake Use Switch to Release	The electric parking brake has not automatically released. Manually release the electric parking brake.
To Release: Press Brake and Switch	You have not pressed the brake pedal. Press the brake pedal to release the parking brake.
Park Brake Limited Function Service Required	The electric parking brake has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park Brake System Overheated	The electric parking brake has overheated. Wait for the electric parking brake to cool down.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Message	Action
Park Brake Off	The electric parking brake is released.
Release Park Brake	The electric parking brake has not released. Manually release the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park Brake On	The electric parking brake is applied.

HILL START ASSIST

WARNING: The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.

WARNING: You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system will turn off if a malfunction is apparent or if you rev the engine excessively. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

The system makes it easier to pull away when your vehicle is on a slope without the need to use the parking brake.

When the system is active, your vehicle remains stationary on the slope for two to three seconds after you release the brake pedal. This allows time to move your foot from the brake to the accelerator pedal. The system releases the brakes automatically once the engine has developed sufficient torque to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the slope. This is an advantage when pulling away on a slope, for example from a car park ramp, traffic lights or when reversing uphill into a parking space.

The system activates on any slope that causes your vehicle to roll.

Note: *There is no warning light to indicate the system is either on or off.*

Using Hill Start Assist

1. Press the brake pedal to bring your vehicle to a complete standstill. Keep the brake pedal pressed and shift into a forward gear when facing uphill, or reverse (R) when facing downhill.
2. If the sensors detect that your vehicle is on a slope, the system activates automatically.
3. When you remove your foot from the brake pedal, your vehicle remains on the slope without rolling away for about two to three seconds. This hold time automatically extends if you are in the process of driving off.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

4. Drive off in the normal manner. The system releases the brakes automatically.

Note: *When you remove your foot from the brake pedal and press the pedal again when the system is active, you will experience significantly reduced brake pedal travel. This is normal.*

Switching the System On and Off

Vehicles with Manual Transmission

You can switch this feature on or off in the information display. The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

When you switch the ignition on, the system automatically turns on. You cannot turn the system on or off.

AUTO HOLD

WARNING: The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.

WARNING: You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system turns off if there is a malfunction or if you excessively rev the engine.

The system is designed to apply the brakes to hold your vehicle at a standstill after you stop your vehicle and release the brake pedal. This could be beneficial in certain situations, for example when waiting on a hill or in traffic.

Switching Auto Hold On and Off



Press the button on your console to access the Auto Hold feature on the touchscreen.

Note: *You can only switch the system on after you close the driver door, fasten your seatbelt and start the engine.*

Note: *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*

Make sure you switch the system off before towing with your vehicle or before using an automatic car wash.

Using Auto Hold

1. Use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a complete stop. The auto hold active indicator illuminates in the information display.
2. Release the brake pedal. The system holds your vehicle at a standstill. The auto hold active indicator remains illuminated in the information display.

Note: *The system only activates if you apply enough brake pressure. If your vehicle is on a steep slope, you need to press the brake pedal harder before the system activates.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Note: *Under certain conditions, the system could apply the electric parking brake. The brake system warning lamp illuminates. The electric parking brake releases when you press the accelerator pedal. See* ***Electric Parking Brake*** *(page 211).*

Note: *If auto-start-stop turns off the engine, auto hold remains active.*

Note: *The system deactivates if you shift into reverse (R) and press the brake pedal.*

3. Pull away in the normal manner. The system releases the brakes and the auto hold active indicator turns off.

Auto Hold Indicator



The auto hold indicator illuminates in the information display when the system is on and is either active or unavailable.



Illuminates when the system is active. Your vehicle remains stationary after you release the brake pedal.

Illuminates when the system is on but unavailable to hold your vehicle at a standstill.

The system could be unavailable when any of the following occur:

- During an active park assist maneuver.
- Your vehicle is in stay in neutral mode.
- The driver door is open.
- You do not fasten your seatbelt.
- You shift into reverse (R) before the system is active.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The traction control system helps avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces engine power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces engine power in order to increase traction.

USING TRACTION CONTROL

WARNING: The stability and traction control light illuminates steadily if the system detects a failure. Make sure you did not manually disable the traction control system using the information display controls or the switch. If the stability control and traction control light is still illuminating steadily, have the system serviced by an authorized dealer immediately. Operating your vehicle with the traction control disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

If your vehicle is stuck in mud or snow, switching traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin.

Note: *When you switch traction control off, stability control remains fully active.*

Switching the System Off

When you switch the system off or on, a message appears in the information display showing system status.

You can switch the system off by either using the information display controls or the switch.

Using the Information Display Controls

You can switch this feature off or on in the information display. See **General Information** (page 102).

Using a Switch (If Equipped)

Use the traction control switch on the instrument panel to switch the system off or on.

System Indicator Lights and Messages



The stability and traction control light:

- Temporarily illuminates on engine start-up.
- Flashes when a driving condition activates either of the systems.
- Illuminates if a problem occurs in either of the systems.



The stability and traction control off light temporarily illuminates on engine start-up and stays on when you switch the traction control system off.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNING: Vehicle modifications involving braking system, aftermarket roof racks, suspension, steering system, tire construction and wheel and tire size may change the handling characteristics of your vehicle and may adversely affect the performance of the electronic stability control system. In addition, installing any stereo loudspeakers may interfere with and adversely affect the electronic stability control system. Install any aftermarket stereo loudspeaker as far as possible from the front center console, the tunnel, and the front seats in order to minimize the risk of interfering with the electronic stability control sensors. Reducing the effectiveness of the electronic stability control system could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

WARNING: Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It's always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage. Activation of the electronic stability control system is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this could reduce the operator's ability to control the vehicle potentially resulting in a loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. If your electronic stability control system activates, SLOW DOWN.

The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

If a fault occurs in either the stability control or the traction control system, you may experience the following conditions:

- The stability and traction control light illuminates steadily.
- The stability control and traction control systems do not enhance your vehicle's ability to maintain traction of the wheels.

If a driving condition activates either the stability control or the traction control system you may experience the following conditions:

- The stability and traction control light flashes.
- Your vehicle slows down.
- Reduced engine power.
- A vibration in the brake pedal.
- The brake pedal is stiffer than usual.
- If the driving condition is severe and your foot is not on the brake, the brake pedal may move as the system applies higher brake force.

The stability control system has several features built into it to help you maintain control of your vehicle:

Electronic Stability Control

The system enhances your vehicle's ability to prevent skids or lateral slides by applying brakes to one or more of the wheels individually and, if necessary, reducing engine power.

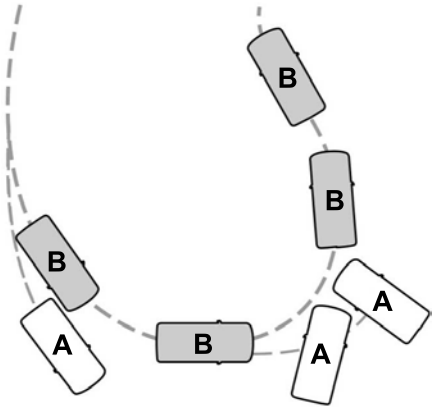
Roll Stability Control

The system enhances your vehicle's ability to prevent rollovers by detecting your vehicle's roll motion and the rate at which it changes by applying the brakes to one or more wheels individually.

Traction Control

The system enhances your vehicle's ability to maintain traction of the wheels by detecting and controlling wheel spin. See **Using Traction Control** (page 216).

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing



A Vehicle without stability control skidding off its intended route.

B Vehicle with stability control maintaining control on a slippery surface.

USING STABILITY CONTROL

The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

You cannot switch the stability control and roll stability control systems off, but when you shift into reverse (R), the systems deactivate.

You can switch the traction control system off or on. See **Using Traction Control** (page 216).

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNING: To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.

WARNING: The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

WARNING: Traffic control systems, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.

WARNING: The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.

WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

WARNING: The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.

WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

WARNING: The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.

Note: *If your vehicle has MyKey™, the sensing system cannot be switched off when a MyKey™ is present. See* ***What Is MyKey*** *(page 46).*

Note: *Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.*

Note: *If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia and you leave it misaligned or bent, the sensing zone may be altered causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.*

Note: *Certain add-on devices installed around the bumper or fascia may create false alerts. For example, large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, bumper covers or any other device that may block the normal detection zone of the system. Remove the add-on device to prevent false alerts.*

Note: *When you connect a trailer to your vehicle, the rear parking aid may detect the trailer and therefore provide an alert. Disable the rear parking aid when you connect a trailer to prevent the alert.*

The sensing system warns you of obstacles within a certain range of your vehicle. The system turns on when you switch the ignition on.

You can switch the system off through the information display menu or from the pop-up message that appears once you shift the transmission into reverse (R). See **General Information** (page 102). If your vehicle has a parking aid button, you can switch the system off by pressing the button. The system turns on when you switch the ignition on.

If a fault is present in the system, a warning message appears in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 115).

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

REAR PARKING AID (IF EQUIPPED)

WARNING: The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

WARNING: The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.

WARNING: To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.

WARNING: The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.

Note: *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.*

Note: *Do not cover up the sensors.*

Note: *Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.*

Note: *If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.*

Note: *Some accessories, for example large trailer hitches or bike or surfboard racks can cause reduced performance or false alerts.*

The sensors are on the rear bumper.

The sensors are active when the transmission is in reverse (R) and the vehicle speed is less than 5 km/h. When the parking aid system sounds a tone, the audio system may reduce the set volume.

A warning tone sounds when your vehicle approaches an object. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases. The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 30 cm or less from the center of the rear bumper.

Note: *There is a decreased coverage area at the outer corners.*



The sensor coverage area is up to 180 cm from the rear bumper.

If the system detects a fault, a warning message appears in the information display.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

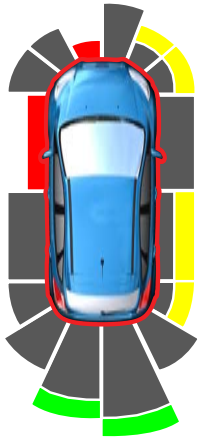
The system detects large objects when you shift into reverse (R) and any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is moving backward at low speed.
- Your vehicle is stationary but an object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at low speed.
- Your vehicle is moving backward at low speed and an object is moving toward your vehicle, for example another vehicle at low speed.

If your vehicle remains stationary for two seconds the audible warning turns off. If your vehicle moves backward the tone sounds again.

Note: *If the detected object is 30 cm or less from the rear bumper, the audible warning does not turn off.*

Object Distance Indicator (If Equipped)



The system provides object distance indication through the information display.

- As the distance to the object decreases, the indicator blocks illuminate and move toward the vehicle icon.
- If the system does not detect an object, the distance indicator blocks are gray.

When you shift into reverse (R), the system provides audible warnings and visual indication when your vehicle is moving and the detected object is moving toward your vehicle. When you stop your vehicle, the audible warnings stop after two seconds. Visual indication remains on when the transmission is in reverse (R).

FRONT PARKING AID (IF EQUIPPED)

WARNING: The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

WARNING: The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.

WARNING: To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

WARNING: The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.

Note: *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.*

Note: *Do not cover up the sensors.*

Note: *Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.*

Note: *If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.*

Note: *Some accessories, for example large trailer hitches or bike or surfboard racks can cause reduced performance or false alerts.*

The sensors are on the front bumper.

The sensors are active when the transmission is in any position other than park (P). When the parking aid system sounds a tone, the audio system may reduce the set volume.

A warning tone sounds when your vehicle approaches an object. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases. The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 30 cm or less from the front bumper.

Note: *There is a decreased coverage area at the outer corners.*

The system turns off when the vehicle speed reaches 8 km/h.



The sensor coverage area is up to 70 cm from the center of the bumper.

If the transmission is in reverse (R), the system detects objects when your vehicle is moving at low speed or an object is moving toward your vehicle, for example another vehicle at low speed. When you stop your vehicle, the audible warning turns off after two seconds.

If the transmission is in any forward gear, the system provides audible warnings when your vehicle is moving and an object is within the detection area. When you stop your vehicle, the audible warning turns off after two seconds and the visual warning turns off after four seconds.

If the system detects a fault, a warning message appears in the information display.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Object Distance Indicator (If Equipped)



The system provides object distance indication through the information display.

- As the distance to the object decreases, the indicator blocks illuminate and move toward the vehicle icon.
- If there is no object detected, the distance indicator blocks are gray.

When you shift into any forward gear, the system provides audible warnings and visual indication when your vehicle is moving at a speed of approximately 8 km/h or below and the system detects an object within the detection zone. When you stop your vehicle, the audible warnings stop after two seconds and visual indication stops after four seconds.

Note: *If the detected object is 30 cm or less from your vehicle, visual indication remains on.*

When you shift into neutral (N), the system only provides visual indication if your vehicle is moving at a speed of approximately 8 km/h or below, for example, your vehicle is moving on a slope, and the system detects an object moving toward your vehicle. When you stop your vehicle, visual indication stops after four seconds.

SIDE SENSING SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

WARNING: The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

WARNING: The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.

WARNING: To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.

WARNING: The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.

The system uses the front and rear outermost parking aid sensors to detect objects that are near to the sides of your vehicle. The system displays them on a virtual map in the information display as your vehicle moves past them.

The sensors are on the front and rear bumpers.

Note: *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.*

Note: *Do not cover up the sensors.*

Note: *Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Note: *If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.*

The system may not function if:

- You switch the ignition on, off and back on within a few seconds.
- Your vehicle remains stationary for over two minutes.
- The anti-lock brake system activates.
- The traction control system activates.

Note: *If you switch traction control off, the side sensing system also turns off.*

Note: *Some accessories, for example large trailer hitches or bike or surfboard racks can cause reduced performance or false alerts.*

To reinitialize the system, you may have to drive your vehicle approximately 3 m.



The sensor coverage area is up to 60 cm from the side of your vehicle.

When the system detects an object within the coverage area and the driving path of your vehicle, an audible warning sounds. As your vehicle moves closer to the object, the rate of the tone increases.

Note: *The system does not detect an object that is moving toward the side of your vehicle, for example another vehicle moving at low speed, if it does not pass a front or rear sensor.*

Object Distance Indicator (If Equipped)



The system provides object distance indication through the information display.

- As the distance to the object decreases, the indicator blocks illuminate and move toward the vehicle icon.
- If there is no object detected, the distance indicator blocks are gray.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

When you shift into reverse (R), the system provides audible warnings and a visual indication when detected objects are within 60 cm and are inside the driving path of your vehicle. When you stop your vehicle, the audible warnings turn off after two seconds.

When you shift into any forward gear, the system provides audible warnings and a visual indication when your vehicle is moving at a speed of approximately 8 km/h or below and the system detects an object within the detection zone. When you stop your vehicle, the audible warnings turn off after two seconds and the visual indication turns off after four seconds.

When you shift into neutral (N), the system only provides a visual indication if your vehicle is moving at a speed of approximately 8 km/h or below. For example, your vehicle is moving on a slope, and the system detects an object moving toward your vehicle. When you stop your vehicle, the visual indication turns off after four seconds.

If the system is not available, the side distance indicator blocks do not display.

ACTIVE PARK ASSIST (IF EQUIPPED)

WARNING: You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause interference.

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

The system assists parking into and out of parking spaces. It uses sensors to detect parking spaces. The system then steers, accelerates, brakes and shifts gear as required to maneuver into or out of a parking space.

Using Active Park Assist



The parking button is near the transmission selector on the center console.

Press the parking button to bring up full screen notifications. Press either the parking button or the soft keys on the display screen to switch between Parallel Park In, Perpendicular Park In or Parallel Park Out parking modes.

Driving into a Parking Space

Note: *When parking perpendicularly, the system backs your vehicle into parking spaces.*

1. Press the active park assist button.

Note: *The system does not recognize parking space lines and centers your vehicle between objects.*

Note: *The system detects other vehicles and curbs to find a parking space.*

Note: *The system searches for parallel parking spaces on the passenger side. Press the active park assist button again to make the system search for perpendicular spaces.*

2. Use the direction indicator lever to search for a parking space on the driver or passenger side of your vehicle.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

3. Drive your vehicle approximately 1 m away from and parallel to the other parked vehicles when searching for a parking space.

Note: *A tone sounds and a message appears in the information display when active park assist finds a suitable parking space.*

4. Press and hold the brake pedal.
5. Release the steering wheel and shift into neutral (N).
6. Press and hold the active park assist button.
7. Release the brake pedal to allow the vehicle to park.

Note: *When parallel parking between objects, the system parks closer to the object in front of your vehicle to allow easier access to your luggage compartment.*

Note: *When perpendicular parking, the system aligns the front end of your vehicle with the object next to it.*

Note: *When perpendicular parking, if the system detects only one object, it allows enough distance to open the door on either side.*

Note: *You can slow down your vehicle at any time by pressing the brake pedal.*

Note: *When parking is complete the vehicle shifts into park (P).*

Leaving a Parking Space

The system assists leaving only parallel parking spaces.

1. Press the active park assist button.
2. Use the direction indicator lever to choose the direction to leave.
3. Press and hold the brake pedal.
4. Release the steering wheel and shift into neutral (N).
5. Release the parking brake.
6. Press and hold the active park assist button.
7. Release the brake pedal to allow the vehicle to move.

Note: *You can slow down your vehicle at any time by pressing the brake pedal.*

Note: *After the system drives your vehicle to a position where you can exit the parking space in a forward movement, a message appears instructing you to take full control of your vehicle.*

Canceling Active Park Assist

To cancel parking assistance at any time, shift out of neutral (N).

Note: *If you turn the steering wheel or open the driver door the parking assistance also cancels.*

Pausing Active Park Assist

To pause parking assistance at any time, release the active park assist button.

The vehicle stops moving until you press and hold the active park assist button again.

Note: *If you open the passenger or rear doors the parking assistance also pauses.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Active Park Assist Troubleshooting

Symptom	Possible Cause
The system does not correctly operate.	The system is unable to detect a vehicle, curb or object to park next to, or in-between. This could occur because of sensors not operating correctly, not enough room for your vehicle, or the traction control is off.
The system does not search for a parking space.	You may have switched traction control off.
	The transmission is in reverse (R). Your vehicle must be moving forward to be able to detect a parking space.
The system does not offer a parking space.	There could be blockage on the sensors. For example, snow, ice or large accumulations of dirt. Blocked sensors can affect how the system functions.
	The sensors in the front or rear bumper could be damaged.
	There is not enough room in the parking space for your vehicle to safely park.
	There is not enough space for the parking maneuver on the opposite side of the parking space.
	The parking space is more than 1.5 m or less than 0.5 m away.
	The vehicle speed is greater than 35 km/h for parallel parking or greater than 30 km/h for perpendicular parking.
	You recently disconnected or replaced the battery. After you reconnect the battery you must drive your vehicle on a straight road for a short period of time.
The system does not correctly position your vehicle in a parking space.	An irregular curb along the parking space prevents the system from correctly aligning your vehicle.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Symptom	Possible Cause
	Vehicles or objects bordering the space may not be correctly parked.
	Your vehicle stopped too far past the parking space.
	The tires may not be correctly installed or maintained. For example, not inflated correctly, improper size, or of different sizes.
	A repair or alteration changes the detection capabilities.
	A parked vehicle has a high attachment. For example, a salt sprayer, snowplow or moving truck bed.
	The parking space length or position of parked objects changes after your vehicle passes the space.
	You are using a spare tire or a tire more significantly worn than the other tires.
	The temperature around your vehicle quickly changes. For example, driving from a heated garage into cold outside temperature, or after leaving a car wash.

REAR VIEW CAMERA

WARNING: The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.

WARNING: Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.

WARNING: Use caution when the rear cargo door is ajar. If the rear cargo door is ajar, the camera will be out of position and the video image could be incorrect. All guide lines disappear when the rear cargo door is ajar. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

WARNING: Use caution when turning camera features on or off when the transmission is not in park (P). Make sure your vehicle is not moving.

Note: *Back up as slow as possible since higher speeds might limit your reaction time to stop your vehicle.*

The rear view camera system provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle.

During operation, lines appear in the display which represent your vehicle's path and proximity to objects behind your vehicle.



The camera is located on the liftgate.

Using the Rear View Camera System

The rear view camera system displays what is behind your vehicle when you place the transmission in reverse (R).

Note: *The reverse sensing system is not effective at speeds above 10 km/h and may not detect certain angular or moving objects.*

The system uses three types of guides to help you see what is behind your vehicle:

- Active guidelines: Show the intended path of your vehicle when reversing.
- Fixed guidelines: Show the actual path your vehicle is moving in while reversing in a straight line. This can be helpful when backing into a parking space or aligning your vehicle with another object behind you.
- Centerline: Helps align the center of your vehicle with an object (for example, a trailer).

Note: *If the transmission is in reverse (R) and the luggage compartment door or liftgate is open, no rear view camera features will display.*

Note: *When towing, the camera only sees what you are towing. This might not provide adequate coverage as it usually provides in normal operation and some objects might not be seen. In some vehicles, the guidelines may disappear when you connect the trailer tow connector.*

The camera may not operate correctly under the following conditions:

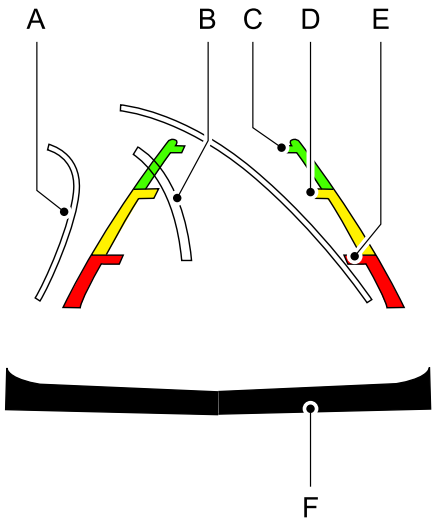
- Nighttime or dark areas if one or both reverse lamps are not operating.
- Mud, water or debris obstructs the camera's view. Clean the lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner.
- The rear of your vehicle is hit or damaged, causing the camera to become misaligned.

Camera Guidelines

Note: *Active guidelines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).*

Note: *Upon a battery disconnect, the active guidelines may not be functional until your vehicle has been driven a short distance and exceeds a speed of 20 km/h.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing



A Active guidelines
B Centerline
C Fixed guideline: Green zone
D Fixed guideline: Yellow zone
E Fixed guideline: Red zone
F Rear bumper

Active guidelines are only shown with fixed guidelines. To use active guidelines, turn the steering wheel to point the guidelines toward an intended path. If you change the steering wheel position while reversing, your vehicle might deviate from the original intended path.

The fixed and active guidelines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guidelines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.

Always use caution while reversing. Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects are getting closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of the vehicle.

Manual Zoom

WARNING: When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

Note: *Manual zoom is only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).*

Note: *When you enable manual zoom, only the centerline is shown.*

Selectable settings for this feature are Zoom in (+) and Zoom out (-). Press the symbol in the camera screen to change the view. The default setting is Zoom OFF.

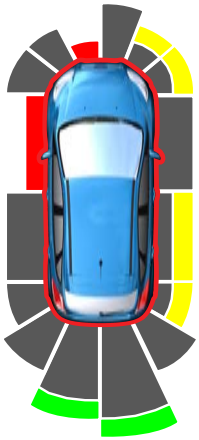
This allows you to get a closer view of an object behind your vehicle. The zoomed image keeps the bumper in the image to provide a reference. The zoom is only active while the transmission is in reverse (R).

Camera System Settings

The rear view camera system settings can be accessed through the display screen. See **General Information** (page 102).

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Obstacle Distance Indicator



The system uses red, yellow and green highlights that appear on top of the video image when any of the sensing systems detect an object.

Rear Camera Delay

Selectable settings for this feature are ON and OFF.

The default setting for the rear camera delay is OFF.

When shifting the transmission out of reverse (R) and into any gear other than park (P) while the Delay Mode is ON, the camera image remains in the display until:

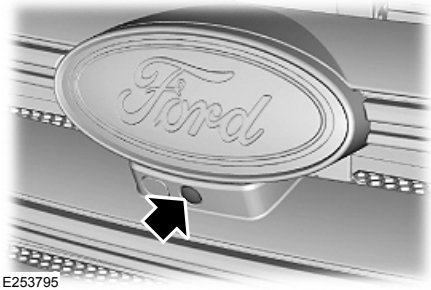
- Your vehicle speed sufficiently increases.
- You shift your vehicle into park (P) on vehicles with automatic transmission.
- You enable the hand brake on vehicles with manual transmission.

180 DEGREE CAMERA (IF EQUIPPED)

WARNING: The front camera system still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with looking out of your vehicle.

WARNING: Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.

WARNING: Use caution when turning camera features on or off when the transmission is not in park (P). Make sure your vehicle is not moving.



E253795

The front view camera is located in the grille. The camera provides a video image of the area in front of your vehicle.

Note: *The area displayed on the screen may vary according to your vehicle's orientation or road condition.*

Note: *The front view camera switches off if your vehicle speed exceeds 10 km/h. You have to switch the system back on by using the camera system button once below the speed threshold.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Using the System

The 180 degree camera system consists of front and rear cameras. The system:

- Allows you to see what is directly in front or behind your vehicle.
- Provides cross traffic view in front and behind your vehicle.
- Provides visibility during parking maneuvers.


The camera system button is located on the center stack and allows you to toggle through different camera views.

Note: *The camera system may not operate correctly if mud, water or debris obstructs the camera's view. You can clean the lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner or by using your front or rear washer. See* ***Wipers and Washers*** *(page 67).*

Camera Views

Press the camera button to toggle between different views.

- **Normal Rear View:** Provides an image of what is directly behind your vehicle when your vehicle is in reverse (R).
- **Expanded Rear View:** Provides an expanded 180 degree image of what is directly behind your vehicle when your vehicle is in reverse (R).
- **Normal Front View:** Provides an image of what is directly in front your vehicle when your vehicle is in park (P), neutral (N) or drive (D).
- **Expanded Front View:** Provides an expanded 180 degree image of what is directly in front your vehicle when your vehicle is in park (P), neutral (N) or drive (D).

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

WHAT IS CRUISE CONTROL

Cruise control lets you maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.

Requirements

Use cruise control when the vehicle speed is greater than 30 km/h.

SWITCHING CRUISE CONTROL ON AND OFF

WARNING: Do not use cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

Switching Cruise Control On



Press the button to put the system in standby mode.

Switching Cruise Control Off



Press the button when in standby mode or switch the ignition off.

Note: *When you switch cruise control off the set speed clears.*

SETTING THE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED

WARNING: When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.

Drive to the speed you prefer.



Press the toggle button upward or downward to set the current speed.



Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Note: *The indicator changes color in the information display.*

Changing the Set Speed



Press and release the toggle button upward to increase the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the toggle button upward to accelerate. Release the button when you have reached your preferred speed.



Press and release the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the toggle button downward to decelerate. Release the button when you have reached your preferred speed.

Note: *If you accelerate by pressing the accelerator pedal, the set speed does not change. When you release the accelerator pedal, your vehicle returns to the speed that you previously set.*

CANCELING THE SET SPEED



Press the button, or tap the brake pedal to cancel the set speed.

Note: *The system remembers the set speed.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Note: *The system cancels if the vehicle speed drops below 16 km/h under the set speed when driving uphill.*

RESUMING THE SET SPEED

RES Press the button.

CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS

 Illuminates when you switch the system on.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

HOW DOES ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO WORK

Adaptive cruise control with stop and go uses radar and camera sensors to adjust the speed of your vehicle to maintain a set gap from the vehicle in front of you in the same lane while following it to a complete stop. You can also engage the system to follow a vehicle in front of you and adjust set speed while stopped.

WHAT IS ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH LANE CENTERING

Adaptive cruise control with lane centering uses radar and camera sensors to help keep your vehicle in the lane by applying continuous assistance steering torque input toward the lane center on highways.

Note: *The adaptive cruise control gap setting operates normally.*

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL PRECAUTIONS - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH LANE CENTERING

Adaptive cruise control precautions apply to lane centering unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a lane centering precaution. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions** (page 235).

WARNING: Do not use the system when towing a trailer. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not use the system if any changes or modifications to the steering wheel have been made. Any changes or modifications to the steering wheel could affect the functionality or performance of the system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL PRECAUTIONS - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Pay close attention to changing road conditions such as entering or leaving a highway, on roads with intersections or roundabouts, roads without visible lanes of travel, roads that are winding, slippery, unpaved, or steep slopes.

WARNING: The system does not control speed in low traction conditions or extremely steep slopes. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

WARNING: The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.

WARNING: Do not use the system when towing a trailer that has aftermarket electronic trailer brake controls. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended because this can affect the normal operation of the system. Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.

WARNING: Do not use the system with a snow plow blade installed.

WARNING: Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.

When Following a Vehicle

WARNING: When following a vehicle that is braking, your vehicle does not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Hilly Condition Usage

You should select a lower gear when the system is active in situations such as prolonged downhill driving on steep grades, for example in mountainous areas. The system needs additional engine braking in these situations to reduce the load on the vehicle's regular brake system to prevent it from overheating.

Note: *An audible alarm sounds and the system shuts down if it applies brakes for an extended period of time. This allows the brakes to cool. The system functions normally again after the brakes cool.*

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL LIMITATIONS - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH LANE CENTERING

Adaptive cruise control limitations apply to lane centering unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a lane centering limitation. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations** (page 236).

The system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is not centered in the lane.
- The lane is too narrow or wide.
- The system does not detect at least one lane marking or when lanes merge or split.
- You switch the direction indicator on.
- Limited steering torque input is applied.
- Areas under construction or new infrastructure.
- When modifications to the steering system have been made.
- When using a spare tire.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Note: *The driving assistance torque is limited and may not be sufficient for all driving situations such as driving through tight curves or driving through curves at high speeds.*

Note: *In exceptional conditions, the system may deviate from the center line.*

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL LIMITATIONS - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL/ ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO

Sensor Limitations

WARNING: On rare occasions, detection issues can occur due to the road infrastructures, for example bridges, tunnels and safety barriers. In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.

WARNING: If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

WARNING: Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

WARNING: The system only warns of vehicles detected by the radar sensor. In some cases there may be no warning or a delayed warning. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system may not detect stationary or slow moving vehicles below 10 km/h.

WARNING: The system does not detect pedestrians or objects in the road.

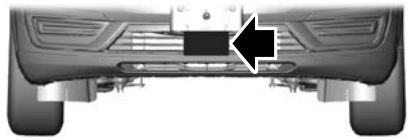
WARNING: The system does not detect oncoming vehicles in the same lane.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

WARNING: The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.



The camera is mounted on the windshield behind the interior mirror.



The radar sensor is in the lower grille.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Note: *You cannot see the sensor. It is behind a fascia panel.*

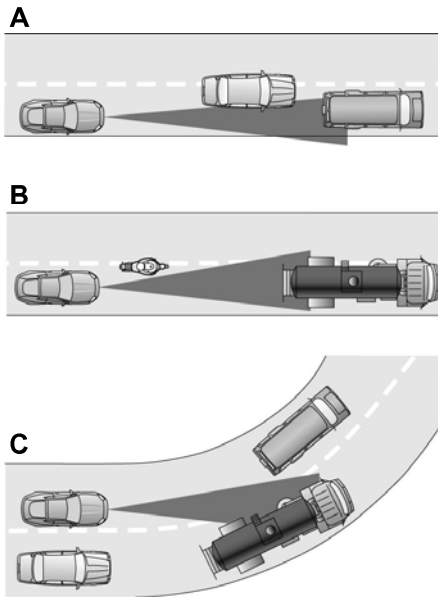
Note: *Keep the front of your vehicle free of dirt, metal badges or objects. Vehicle front protectors, aftermarket lights, additional paint or plastic coatings could also degrade sensor performance.*

A message displays if something obstructs the camera or the sensor. When something blocks the sensor, the system cannot detect a vehicle ahead and does not function. See **Adaptive Cruise Control – Information Messages** (page 244).

The radar sensor has a limited field of view. It may not detect vehicles at all or detect a vehicle later than expected in some situations. The lead vehicle image does not illuminate if the system does not detect a vehicle in front of you.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Detection issues can occur:



A When driving on a different line than the vehicle in front.

B With vehicles that edge into your lane. The system can only detect these vehicles once they move fully into your lane.

C There may be issues with the detection of vehicles in front when driving into and coming out of a bend or curve in the road.

In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly.

If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs, the radar-sensing zone may change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detection.

Optimal system performance requires a clear view of the road by the windshield-mounted camera.

Optimal performance may not occur if:

- The camera is blocked.
- There is poor visibility or lighting conditions.
- There are bad weather conditions.

SWITCHING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL ON AND OFF

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel. See **Cruise Control** (page 65).

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On



Press the button to set the system in standby mode.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off



Press the button when the system is in standby mode, or switch the ignition off.

Note: *You erase the set speed when you switch the system off.*

Automatic Cancellation or Deactivation

The system may cancel if:

- The tires lose traction.
- You apply the parking brake.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

The system may cancel and set the parking brake if:

- You unbuckle the seatbelt and open the driver door after you stop your vehicle.
- Your vehicle is at a stop continuously for more than three minutes.

The system may deactivate or prevent activating when requested if:

- The vehicle has a blocked sensor.
- The brake temperature is too high.
- There is a failure in the system or a related system.

SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED

Drive to the speed you prefer.

SET+ Press the toggle button upward or downward to set the current speed.

SET-

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.



A vehicle image illuminates if there is a vehicle detected in front of you.

Note: *When adaptive cruise control is active, the speedometer may vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the information display.*

Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed from a Complete Stop

SET+ Press the toggle button upward or downward while keeping the brake pedal fully pressed.

SET-

The set speed adjusts to 30 km/h.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.

Manually Changing the Set Speed

SET+ Press and release the toggle button upward to increase the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the toggle button upward to increase the set speed in large increments. Release the button when you reach the speed you prefer.

SET- Press and release the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed in large increments. Release the button when you reach the speed you prefer.

You can also press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the speed you prefer. Press the toggle button upward or downward to select the current speed as the set speed.

The system may apply the brakes to slow the vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed continuously displays in the information display when the system is active.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL GAP

Press the button to cycle through the four gap settings.



The selected gap appears in the instrument cluster display as shown by the bars in the image.

Note: *The gap setting is time dependent and therefore, the distance adjusts with your vehicle speed.*

Note: *It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.*

Adaptive Cruise Control Gap Settings

Graphic Display, Bars Indicated Between Vehicles	Gap Distance	Dynamic Behavior
1	Closest.	Sport.
2	Close.	Normal.
3	Medium.	Normal.
4	Far.	Comfort.

Each time you switch the system on, it selects the last chosen gap setting.

Following a Vehicle

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain the gap setting.

Note: *When you are following a vehicle and you switch on a turn signal lamp, adaptive cruise control may provide a small, temporary acceleration to help you pass.*

Your vehicle maintains a consistent gap from the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of the lane you are in.
- You set a new gap distance.

The system applies the brakes to slow down your vehicle to maintain a safe gap distance from the vehicle in front of you. The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system by applying the brakes.

Note: *The brakes may emit noise when applied by the system.*

If the system determines that its maximum braking level is not sufficient, an audible warning sounds, a message appears in the instrument cluster display and an indicator flashes when the system continues to brake. Take immediate action.

CANCELING THE SET SPEED

Press the button or tap the brake pedal.

The set speed does not erase.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

RESUMING THE SET SPEED

RES Press the button.

Your vehicle speed returns to the previously set speed and gap setting. The set speed displays continuously in the information display when the system is active.

Note: *Only use resume if you are aware of the set speed and intend to return to it.*

Resuming the Set Speed from a Complete Stop

If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for less than three seconds, your vehicle accelerates from a stationary position to follow the vehicle ahead.

RES If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for more than three seconds, press and release the button or press the accelerator pedal to follow the vehicle ahead.

OVERRIDING THE SET SPEED

WARNING: If you override the system by pressing the accelerator pedal, it does not automatically apply the brakes to maintain a gap from any vehicle ahead.

When you press the accelerator pedal, you override the set speed and gap distance.

Use the accelerator pedal to intentionally exceed the set speed limit.

When you override the system, the green indicator illuminates and the vehicle icon does not appear in the instrument cluster display.

The system resumes operation when you release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle speed decreases to the set speed, or a lower speed if following a slower vehicle.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH LANE CENTERING

 Illuminates when you switch lane centering on. The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

Gray indicates the system is on but inactive.

Green indicates the system is active and applying assistance steering torque input to keep your vehicle in the center of the lane.

Amber with an audible tone and then gray indicates a system auto-cancellation.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO

 Illuminates when you switch adaptive cruise control on. The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

White indicates the system is on but inactive.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Green indicates that you set the speed and the system is active.

SWITCHING FROM ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL TO CRUISE CONTROL

WARNING: Normal cruise control will not brake when your vehicle is approaching slower vehicles. Always be aware of which mode you have selected and apply the brakes when necessary.

Use the touchscreen to select the following:

1. Select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Driver Assist.***.
3. Select ***Cruise Control***.
4. Select ***Normal***.



The cruise control indicator replaces the adaptive cruise control indicator if you select normal cruise control. The gap setting does not display, and the system does not respond to lead vehicles. Automatic braking remains active to maintain set speed. The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

SWITCHING LANE CENTERING ON AND OFF

The controls are on the steering wheel. See **Cruise Control** (page 64).



Press the button.

The indicator appears in the information display. When the system is on, the color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators** (page 242).

Note: *Adaptive cruise control must be on before you can switch lane centering on.*

Activating Lane Centering

The system only activates when all of the following occur:

- You have adaptive cruise control with stop-and-go on.
- Your hands are on the steering wheel.
- The system detects both lane markings.

Note: *If it does not detect valid lane markings, the system stays inactive until valid markings are available.*

You can override the system at any time by steering your vehicle.

If you drive off-center within the lane, the system sets and maintains that preferred lane position. The system provides continuous assistance steering torque input toward the preferred position.

Note: *The system can only set preferred lane positions within the lane.*

Note: *If the system cancels, the preferred position erases. On the next activation, the system provides continuous assistance steering torque input toward the lane center.*

System Alerts and Automatic Cancellation

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

When the system is active and detects no steering activity for a certain period of time, the system alerts you to put your hands on the steering wheel. If you do not react to the warnings the system cancels and slows your vehicle down to idle speeds while maintaining steering control.

The system also alerts you if your vehicle crosses lane markings without detected steering activity.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Note: *The system may detect a light grip or touch on the steering wheel as hands-off driving.*

When an external condition cancels the system, for example, no lane markings available, a tone sounds and a message appears in the information display.



If your vehicle starts to slow down, you must contribute to the steering control and press and release the button to regain full system performance.

Automatic cancellation can also occur if:

- The lane becomes too wide or too narrow.
- The system cannot detect valid lane markings.
- Lane markings are crossed.

Note: *The system disables until the next key cycle if your vehicle slows down due to driver inactivity twice within a key cycle.*

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

Adaptive Cruise Control – Information Messages - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering

Note: *Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all messages display or are available.*

Note: *The system could abbreviate or shorten certain messages depending upon which cluster type you have.*

Message	Action
Keep Hands on Steering Wheel	Make sure you return your hands to the steering wheel and provide steering input.
Lane Centering Assist Not Available	Lane centering assist conditions exist preventing the system from being available.
Resume Control	The system is going to cancel and you must take control.
Press Accelerator Pedal to Resume	Press the accelerator and follow the prompts.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Adaptive Cruise Control – Information Messages - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go

Note: *Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all messages display or are available.*

Note: *The system could abbreviate or shorten certain messages depending upon which cluster type you have.*

Message	Action
Adaptive Cruise Malfunction	A malfunction is preventing the adaptive cruise from engaging.
Front Sensor Not Aligned	Contact an authorized dealer to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.
Adaptive Cruise Not Available	Conditions exist preventing the system from being available.
Adaptive Cruise Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	You have a blocked radar because of poor radar visibility due to inclement weather or ice, mud, or water in front of the radar. You can typically clean the sensor to resolve this. Due to the nature of radar technology, it is possible to get a blockage warning with no actual block. This happens, for example, when driving in sparse rural or desert environments. A false blocked condition either self clears, or clears after you restart your vehicle.
Normal Cruise Active Adaptive Braking Off	You have selected normal cruise control. The system does not brake or react to traffic.
Adaptive Cruise - Driver Resume Control	Displays when the adaptive cruise control is going to cancel and you must take control.
Adaptive Cruise Speed Too Low to Activate	Displays when the vehicle speed is too slow to activate the adaptive cruise control and there is no lead vehicle in range.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

SPEED LIMITER

Principle of Operation

WARNING: When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed may increase above the set speed. The system will not apply the brakes but a warning displays. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

The system allows you to set a speed, to which your vehicle then becomes limited. The set speed will become the effective maximum speed of your vehicle, but with the option to temporarily exceed this limit if required.

Using the System

Note: *You can intentionally exceed the set speed limit for a short period of time if required, for example, when passing another vehicle.*

The system is operated by adjustment controls mounted on the steering wheel.


E262918

Switching the System On and Off

LIM Press the button to set the limiter in standby mode. The information display prompts you to set a speed. Press the button again with the limiter in standby mode to switch the system off.

Setting the Speed Limit

SET- Press with the limiter in standby mode to set the limiter to the current vehicle speed. Speed limitation activates and the symbol in the information display appears green.

RES+ Press and release to increase the set speed in small increments.

SET- Press and release to decrease the set speed in small increments.

CNCL Press to cancel the limiter and place it in standby mode. The symbol in the information display appears grey.

RES+ Press to resume the limiter. The symbol in the information display appears green.

Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit

Firmly depress the accelerator to temporarily turn the system off. The system reactivates once your vehicle speed drops below the set speed.

System Warnings

If you accidently exceed the set speed, the set speed indicator in the information display flashes and an audible warning tone sounds.

If you intentionally exceed the set speed, only the set speed indicator in the information display flashes.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Using the Intelligent Speed Limiter

(If Equipped)

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Note: *When driving between countries that use different units of measure (miles per hour or kilometers per hour), there may be a delay before the system changes between speed limit units. During this time, the display screen for the speed limiter may differ from the actual posted speed limit. For best performance, make sure that the navigation SD card is in the navigation media port.*

You can change the speed limiter mode between manual and intelligent in the information display. See **General Information** (page 102).

You can select a permanent set speed tolerance that is in addition to the detected speed limit through the tolerance menu in the information display. See **General Information** (page 102).

If your vehicle has a traffic sign recognition system, you can automatically limit your vehicle speed to the speed detected by the system.

Switching the System On and Off



Press the button to set the limiter in standby mode. The information display prompts you to set a speed. If your vehicle has a traffic sign recognition system, you can choose to show the speed the system detects. The intelligent speed limit does not limit vehicle speed in standby mode. The symbol and set speed indication appears grey in standby mode. Press the button again to switch the system off.

Setting the Speed Limit



Press with the limiter in standby mode to set the limiter to the detected speed limit. Speed limitation activates and the symbol appears green.



Press with the limiter in standby mode to set the limiter to the current vehicle speed. Speed limitation activates and the symbol appears green.



Press and release to increase the set speed in small increments.



Press and release to decrease the set speed in small increments.



Press to cancel the limiter and place it in standby mode. The symbol in the information display appears grey.



Press to resume the limiter. The symbol in the information display appears green.

The speed limit automatically changes to the speed the traffic sign recognition system detects. The limiter does not react to speed limits shown with a supplementary sign. If there is no speed limit information available, the limit switches to standby mode.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit

Firmly depress the accelerator pedal to temporarily turn the system off. The system reactivates once your vehicle speed drops below the set speed.

System Warnings

If the set speed is at a lower value than your current vehicle speed, the set speed indicator in the information display flashes and an audible warning tone sounds if you are continuously exceeding the set speed.

If you accidently exceed the set speed, the set speed indicator in the information display flashes and an audible warning tone sounds.

If you intentionally exceed the set speed, only the set speed indicator in the information display flashes.

If the traffic sign recognition system detects a speed limit outside the operational speed range, a single warning tone sounds and the system switches to standby mode.

DRIVER ALERT

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.

WARNING: Take regular rest breaks if you feel tired. Do not wait for the system to warn you.

WARNING: Certain driving styles may result in the system warning you even if you are not feeling tired.

WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

WARNING: The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.

WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

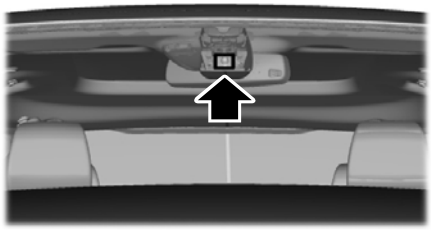
WARNING: The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

Note: *If enabled in the menu, the system activates at speeds above 64 km/h. When below the activation speed, the information display informs the driver that the system is unavailable.*

Note: *Keep the windshield free from obstructions. For example, bird droppings, insects and snow or ice.*

Note: *If the camera is blocked or if the windshield is damaged, the system may not function.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing



E249505

The system automatically monitors your driving behavior using various inputs, including the front camera sensor.

If the system detects that your driving alertness reduces below a certain threshold, the system alerts you using a tone and a message in the information display.

Using Driver Alert

Switching the system on and off

You can switch the system on or off through the information display. See **General Information** (page 102). When active, the system monitors your alertness level based upon your driving behavior in relation to the lane markings and other factors.

System Warnings

Note: *The system does not issue warnings below approximately 64 km/h.*

The warning system has two stages. First, the system issues a temporary warning stating that you need to take a rest. This message only appears for a short time. If the system detects your driving alertness reduces further, it may issue another warning which remains in the information display for a longer time. Press ***OK*** on the steering wheel control to clear the warning.

System Display

When active, the system runs automatically in the background and only issues a warning when required. See **General Information** (page 102).

Note: *If you receive a warning you should consider resting, even if the current assessment is within the typical range.*

Note: *If the camera sensor cannot track the road lane markings or if your vehicle speed drops below approximately 64 km/h, the alertness level changes to grey for a short time and the information display informs you that the system is unavailable.*

Resetting the System

You can reset the system by either:

- Switching the ignition off and on.
- Stopping the vehicle and then opening and closing the driver's door.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Always drive with due care and attention when using and operating the controls and features on your vehicle.

WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

WARNING: Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

WARNING: The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.

WARNING: The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

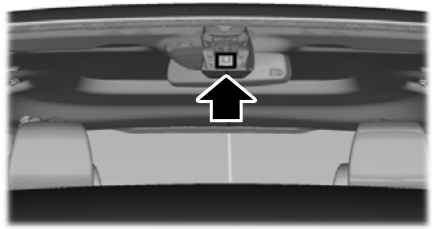
WARNING: The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

Note: *The system works above 64 km/h.*

Note: *The system works as long as the camera can detect one lane marking.*

Note: *When you select aid or alert and aid mode and the system detects no steering activity for a short period, the system alerts you to put your hands on the steering wheel.* ***The system may detect a light grip or touch on the steering wheel as hands off driving.***

Note: *The system may not function if the camera is blocked, or if the windshield is damaged or dirty.*



E249505

When you switch the system on and it detects an unintentional drift out of your lane is likely to occur, the system notifies or assists you to stay in your lane through the steering system and information display. In Alert mode, the system provides a warning by vibrating the steering wheel. In Aid mode, the system provides steering assistance by gently counter steering your vehicle back into the lane.

When the system is functioning in the combined Alert and Aid mode, the system first provides steering assistance by gently counter steering your vehicle back into the lane, followed by a warning that vibrates the steering wheel if the vehicle is still out of the lane markings.

Switching the System On and Off

Note: *The on or off setting is stored until it is manually changed, unless a MyKey is detected. If the system detects a MyKey, it defaults to on and the mode sets to alert.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing



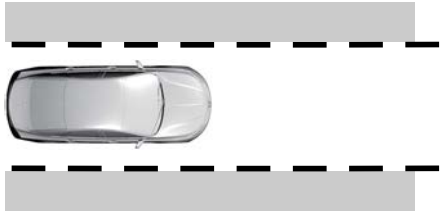
E288067

Press the button on the direction indicator stalk to switch the system on or off.

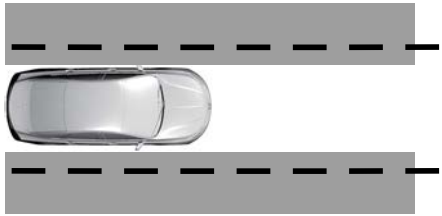
System Settings

The system has optional setting menus available. The system stores the last known selection for each of these settings. You do not need to readjust your settings each time you switch the system on.

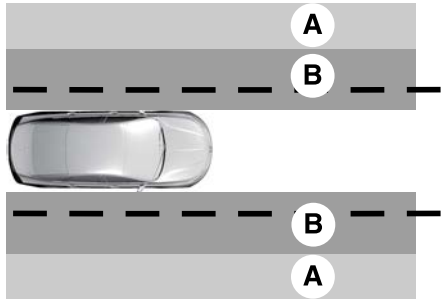
Mode: This setting allows you to select which of the system features you can enable.



Alert only – Provides a steering wheel vibration when the system detects an unintended lane departure.



Aid only – Provides steering assistance toward the lane center when the system detects an unintended lane departure.



A Alert

B Aid

Alert + Aid – Provides steering assistance toward the lane center.

If your vehicle continues drifting out of the lane after the lane keeping aid corrects the vehicle, the system provides a steering wheel vibration.

If your vehicle stays to one side of the lane after the lane keeping aid corrects your vehicle and then subsequently drifts out of the lane again, the system only provides an alert at the steering wheel.

Note: *The alert and aid diagrams illustrate general zone coverage. They do not provide exact zone parameters.*

Intensity: This setting affects the intensity of the steering wheel vibration used for the alert and alert + aid modes. **This setting does not affect the aid mode.**

- Low.
- Normal.
- High.

System Display





When you switch the system on, a graphic of lane markings appears in the information display.

When you switch the system off, the lane marking graphics do not display.

While the system is on, the color of the lane markings change to indicate the system status. These colors represent the following:

Gray: Indicates that the system is temporarily unable to provide a warning or intervention on the indicated side. This may be because:

- Your vehicle is under the activation speed.
- The direction indicator is active.
- Your vehicle is in a dynamic maneuver.
- The road has no or poor lane markings in the camera field-of-view.
- The camera is obscured or unable to detect the lane markings due to environmental, traffic or vehicle conditions. For example, significant sun angles, shadows, snow, heavy rain or fog, following a large vehicle that is blocking or shadowing the lane or poor headlamp illumination.

See **Troubleshooting** for additional information.

White: Indicates that the system is available or ready to provide a warning or intervention on the indicated side.

Note: *If your vehicle has lane centering assist and the system is active, the walls appear green instead of white.*

Yellow: Indicates that the system is providing or has just provided a lane keeping aid intervention.

Red: Indicates that the system is providing or has just provided a lane keeping alert warning.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

The system can be temporarily suppressed at any time by the following:

- Quick braking.
- Fast acceleration.
- Using the direction indicator.
- Evasive steering maneuver.
- Driving too close to the lane markings.

Troubleshooting

Why is the feature not available (line markings are gray) when I can see the lane markings on the road?
Your vehicle speed is outside the operational range of the feature.
The sun is shining directly into the camera lens.
A quick intentional lane change has occurred.
Your vehicle stays too close to the lane markings.
Driving at high speeds in curves.
The last alert warning or aid intervention occurred a short time ago.
Ambiguous lane markings, for example in construction zones.
Rapid transition from light to dark, or from dark to light.
Sudden offset in lane markings.
ABS or AdvanceTrac™ is active.
There is a camera blockage due to dirt, grime, fog, frost or water on the windshield.
You are driving too close to the vehicle in front of you.
Transitioning between no lane markings to lane markings or vice versa.
There is standing water on the road.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Why is the feature not available (line markings are gray) when I can see the lane markings on the road?
Faint lane markings, for example partial yellow lane markings on concrete roads.
Lane width is too narrow or too wide.
The camera has not been calibrated after a windshield replacement.
Driving on tight roads or on uneven roads.

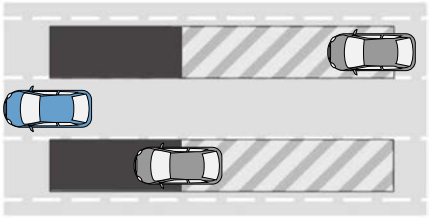
Why does the vehicle not come back toward the middle of the lane, as expected, in the Aid or Aid + Alert mode?
High cross winds are present.
There is a large road crown.
Rough roads, grooves or shoulder drop-offs.
Heavy uneven loading of the vehicle or improper tire inflation pressure.
The tires have been changed, or the suspension has been modified.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM

WARNING: Do not use the blind spot information system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The blind spot information system is not a replacement for careful driving.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



The system is designed to detect vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone. The detection area is on both sides of your vehicle, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to approximately 4 m beyond the rear bumper. The detection area extends to approximately 18 m beyond the rear bumper when the vehicle speed is greater than 48 km/h to alert you of faster approaching vehicles.

Note: *The system does not prevent contact with other vehicles. It is not designed to detect parked vehicles, pedestrians, animals or other infrastructures.*

Using the Blind Spot Information System

Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

The system turns on when all of the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- You shift into drive (D).
- The vehicle speed is greater than 10 km/h.

Note: *The system does not operate in park (P) or reverse (R).*

Vehicles with Manual Transmission

The system turns on when all of the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than 10 km/h.

Note: *The system does not operate in reverse (R).*

System Lights and Messages

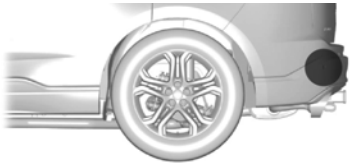


When the system detects a vehicle, an alert indicator illuminates in the exterior mirror on the side the approaching vehicle is coming from. If you turn the direction indicator on for that side of your vehicle, the alert indicator flashes.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Note: *The system may not alert you if a vehicle quickly passes through the detection zone.*

Blocked Sensors



The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

Note: *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.*

Note: *Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.*

Note: *Blocked sensors could affect system performance.*

If the sensors become blocked, a message may appear in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 115). The alert indicators remain illuminated but the system does not alert you.

System Errors

If the system detects a fault, a warning lamp illuminates and a message displays. See **Information Messages** (page 115).

Switching the System On and Off

You can switch the system off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 102). When you switch the system off, a warning lamp illuminates and a message displays. When you switch the system on or off, the alert indicators flash twice.

Note: *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*

Note: *The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by us, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.*

To permanently switch the system off, contact an authorized dealer.

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT

WARNING: Do not use the cross traffic alert system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before reversing out of a parking space. The cross traffic alert system is not a replacement for careful driving.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

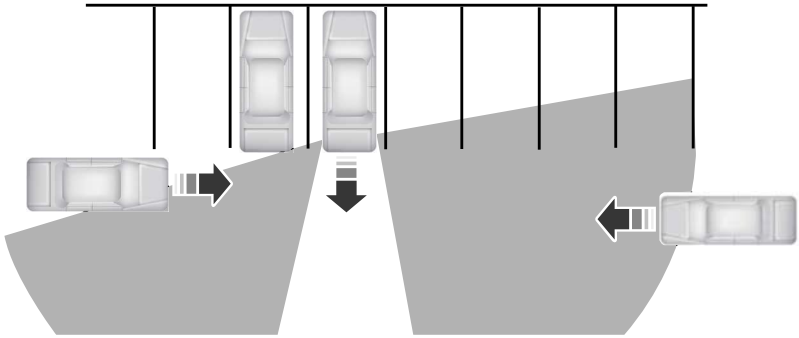
The system alerts you of vehicles approaching from the sides behind your vehicle when you shift into reverse (R).

Using Cross Traffic Alert

The system detects vehicles that approach at a speed between 6 km/h and 60 km/h. Coverage decreases when the sensors are partially, mostly or fully obstructed. Slowly reversing helps increase the coverage area and effectiveness.

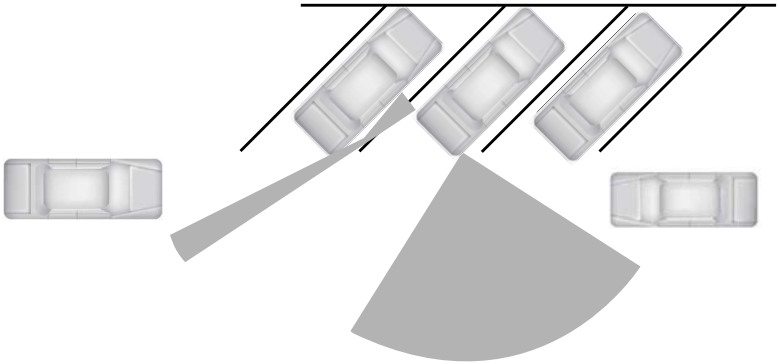
Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

The system turns on when you start the engine and you shift into reverse (R). The system turns off when you shift out of reverse (R).



The sensor on the left-hand side is only partially obstructed and zone coverage on the right-hand side is maximized.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing



Zone coverage also decreases when parking at narrow angles. The sensor on the left-hand side is mostly obstructed and zone coverage on that side is severely reduced.

Cross Traffic Alert System Sensors



The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

Note: *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.*

Note: *Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.*

Note: *Blocked sensors could affect system performance.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

If the sensors are blocked, a message may appear in the information display when you shift into reverse (R).

Cross Traffic Alert System Limitations

The system may not correctly operate when any of the following occur:

- The sensors are blocked.
- Adjacently parked vehicles or objects are obstructing the sensors.
- Vehicles approach at speeds less than 6 km/h or greater than 60 km/h.
- The vehicle speed is greater than 12 km/h.
- You reverse out of an angled parking space.

Cross Traffic Alert Behavior When Trailer is Attached

Note: *The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with an approved trailer tow module and tow bar, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.*

Cross traffic alert remains on when you attach a trailer in vehicles that come with blind spot information system with trailer tow under the following conditions:

- You connect a trailer.
- The trailer is a bike rack or cargo rack with a maximum length of 1 m.
- You set the trailer length to 1 m in the information display.

See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 255).

Switching the System On and Off

To switch the system on or off, adjust the setting. Depending on your vehicle options, the setting could be in the following:

- Information display. See **General Information** (page 102).
- Touchscreen. See **Settings** (page 413).

Note: *The system turns on every time you switch the ignition on. To permanently switch the system off, contact an authorized dealer.*

Cross Traffic Alert Indicator



When the system detects an approaching vehicle, a tone sounds, a warning lamp illuminates in the relevant exterior mirror and arrows appear in the information display to show which side the approaching vehicle is coming from.

Note: *If arrows do not display, a message appears in the information display.*

If the system malfunctions, a warning lamp illuminates in the instrument cluster and a message appears in the information display. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: *In exceptional conditions, the system could alert you, even when there is nothing in the detection zone, for example a vehicle passing further away from your vehicle.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Cross Traffic Alert Information Messages

Message	Action
Cross Traffic Alert	Displays instead of indication arrows when the system detects a vehicle. Check for approaching traffic.
Cross Traffic Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	Indicates blocked cross traffic alert system sensors. Clean the sensors. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Cross Traffic System Fault	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Cross Traffic Alert Deactivated Trailer Attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION

Principle of Operation

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.

Note: *In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all prevent the sensor from functioning correctly.*

Note: *Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.*

Note: *If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by us, the system may not correctly function.*

Note: *Always replace headlamp bulbs with those specifically designed for your vehicle. Other bulbs may reduce system performance.*

Note: *The system may not detect all traffic signs and may incorrectly read signs.*

Note: *Keep the windshield free from obstructions for example bird droppings, insects and snow or ice.*

Note: *The system is designed to detect traffic signs meeting the Vienna convention.*

Note: *Traffic sign data provided by the navigation system contains information integrated to the data carrier release.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

The sensor is behind the interior rear view mirror. It continuously monitors road signs to inform you of the current maximum speed limit and overtaking regulations.

The system detects recognizable traffic signs, for example:

- Speed limit signs.
- No overtaking signs.
- Speed limit cancellation signs.
- No overtaking cancellation signs.

Using Traffic Sign Recognition

Setting the System Speed Warning

The system has a number of speed warning levels that you can set using the information display. See **General Information** (page 102).

System Display



The system can display two traffic signs in parallel.

You can view the status at any time using the information display.

The system displays recognizable traffic signs in four stages as follows:

1. All new traffic signs appear brighter than the others in the display.
2. After a predetermined time they display normally.
3. After a predetermined distance they are greyed out.
4. After another predetermined distance they are deleted.

If the system detects a supplementary traffic sign, it displays below the respective traffic sign. For example, when passing a reduced speed limit in wet road conditions sign.

If your vehicle has a navigation system, stored traffic sign data may influence the indicated speed limit value.

Switching Speed Warning On and Off

You can switch the speed warning on and off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 102).

Note: *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*

ECO - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

Eco Mode

How Does Eco Mode Work

The system is designed to monitor certain driving characteristics to help you drive more efficiently. See **Driving Economically** (page 287).

Note: *The efficiency levels do not result in a defined fuel consumption figure. See **Fuel Consumption** (page 183).*

Note: *The system only indicates the efficiency level for the current trip. The system resets each time you switch the ignition on.*

Instantaneous Efficiency Level

The display ring increases as the instantaneous efficiency level increases and illuminates when it reaches maximum efficiency. The level continuously updates to indicate the efficiency level for the current trip.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Viewing the Instantaneous Efficiency Level

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select ***MyView***.
2. Select ***Eco Coach***.

Trip Summary

The calculated trip summary is shown as four colored bars. The bars travel from left to right as the calculated efficiency levels increase. The bars indicate the average efficiency level for acceleration, deceleration, speed and gear shifting during the total distance traveled by your vehicle for the current trip.

Note: *Vehicles with an automatic transmission do not have a bar for gear shifting.*

Viewing the Trip Summary

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select ***MyView***.
2. Select ***Eco Coach***.

ECO - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

Principle of Operation

The system is designed to monitor certain driving characteristics to help you drive more efficiently. See **Driving Economically** (page 287).

Note: *The efficiency levels do not result in a defined fuel consumption figure. See **Fuel Consumption** (page 183).*

Note: *The system only indicates the efficiency level for the current trip. The system resets each time you switch the ignition on.*

Eco Mode System Display

You can view the instantaneous efficiency level or the trip summary in the information display.

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select ***Display Setup***.
3. Select ***Eco Coach***.
4. Select a setting and press the ***OK*** button.

Instantaneous Efficiency Level

The display circle illuminates as the instantaneous efficiency level increases. The level continuously updates to indicate the efficiency level for the current trip.

Trip Summary

You can check the trip summary status for acceleration, deceleration and speed during the total distance traveled by your vehicle for the current trip in the information display.

Checking Trip Summary Status

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select ***Select Screens***.
3. Select ***Eco Behavior***.
4. Select the screen on your main screen. See **General Information** (page 102).

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

STEERING

Electric Power Steering

WARNING: The electric power steering system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system. If a fault is detected, a message displays in the information display. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Switch the ignition off. After at least 10 seconds, switch the ignition on and watch the information display for a steering system warning message. If a steering system warning message returns, have the system checked as soon as possible.

WARNING: If the system detects an error, you may not feel a difference in the steering, however a serious condition may exist. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Failure to do so may result in loss of steering control.

Your vehicle is equipped with an electric power-assisted steering system. There is no fluid reservoir to check or fill.

If your vehicle loses electrical power while you are driving (or if the ignition is turned off), you can steer the vehicle manually, but it takes more effort. You must adapt your speed and driving behavior to reduced steering assist. Extreme continuous steering may increase the effort it takes for you to steer. This occurs to prevent internal overheating and permanent damage to your steering system. If this should occur, you will neither lose the ability to steer the vehicle manually nor will it cause permanent damage. Typical steering and driving maneuvers will allow the system to cool down and steering assist will return to normal.

Steering Tips

If the steering wanders or pulls, check for:

- An improperly inflated tire.
- Uneven tire wear.
- Loose or worn suspension components.
- Loose or worn steering components.
- Improper vehicle alignment.

A high crown in the road or high crosswinds may also make the steering seem to wander or pull.

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system does not detect vehicles that are driving in a different direction, cyclists or animals. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

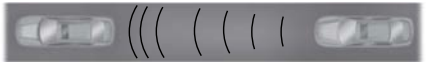
WARNING: The system may fail or operate with reduced function during cold and severe weather conditions. Snow, ice, rain, spray and fog can adversely affect the system. Keep the front camera and radar free of snow and ice. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: In situations where the vehicle camera has limited detection capability, this may reduce system performance. These situations include but are not limited to direct or low sunlight, vehicles at night without tail lights, unconventional vehicle types, pedestrians with complex backgrounds, running pedestrians, partly obscured pedestrians, or pedestrians that the system cannot distinguish from a group. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system cannot help prevent all crashes. Do not rely on this system to replace driver judgment and the need to maintain a safe distance and speed.

Using the Pre-Collision Assist System

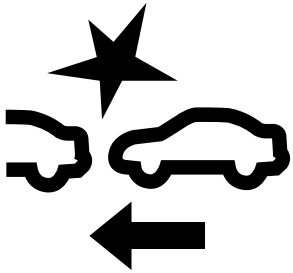
The system is active at speeds above approximately 5 km/h and pedestrian detection is active at speeds up to 80 km/h.



E156130

If your vehicle is rapidly approaching another stationary vehicle, a vehicle traveling in the same direction as yours, or a pedestrian within your driving path, the system is designed to provide three levels of functionality:

1. Alert
2. Brake Support
3. Active Braking



Alert: When active, a flashing visual warning appears and an audible warning tone sounds.

Brake support: The system is designed to help reduce the impact speed by preparing the brakes for rapid braking. Brake support does not automatically apply the brakes. If you press the brake pedal, the system could apply additional braking up to maximum braking force, even if you lightly press the brake pedal.

Active braking: Active braking may activate if the system determines that a collision is imminent. The system may help the driver reduce impact damage or avoid the crash completely.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

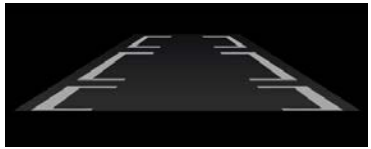
Note: *Brake support and active braking are active at speeds up to 120 km/h. If the vehicle is equipped with a radar sensor, included with adaptive cruise control, then brake support and active braking are active up to the maximum speed of the vehicle.*

Note: *If you perceive pre-collision assist alerts as being too frequent or disturbing, then you can reduce the alert sensitivity, though the manufacturer recommends using the highest sensitivity setting where possible. Setting lower sensitivity would lead to fewer and later system warnings.*

Note: *The system turns off when you select the deep snow/sand drive mode.*

Distance Indication and Alert (If Equipped)

This feature provides the driver with a graphical indication of the time gap to other preceding vehicles traveling in the same direction. The information display screen shows one of the graphics that follow.







Note: *Distance indication and alert deactivates and the graphics do not display when adaptive cruise control is active.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Speed	Sensitivity	Graphics	Distance Gap	Time Gap
100 km/h	Normal	Grey	>25 m	>0.9sec
100 km/h	Normal	Yellow	17–25 m	0.6sec — 0.9sec
100 km/h	Normal	Red	<17 m	<0.6sec

Evasive Steering Assist (If Equipped)

If your vehicle is rapidly approaching a stationary vehicle or a vehicle traveling in the same direction as your vehicle, the system is designed to help you steer around the vehicle.

The system only activates when all of the following occur:

- The pre-collision assist system detects a vehicle ahead and starts to apply active braking.
- You turn the steering wheel in an attempt to steer around the vehicle.

After you turn the steering wheel, the system applies additional steering torque to help you steer around the vehicle. After you pass the vehicle, the system applies steering torque in the opposite direction to encourage you to steer back into the lane. The system deactivates after you fully pass the vehicle.

Note: *The system does not automatically steer around a vehicle. If you do not turn the steering wheel, the system does not activate.*

Note: *The system does not activate if the distance to the vehicle ahead is too small and a crash cannot be avoided.*

Adjusting the Pre-Collision Assist Settings

Depending on your vehicle options, the pre-collision assist settings may be in the following:

- Information display. See **General Information** (page 102).
- Touchscreen. See **Settings** (page 413).

The following settings can be adjusted:

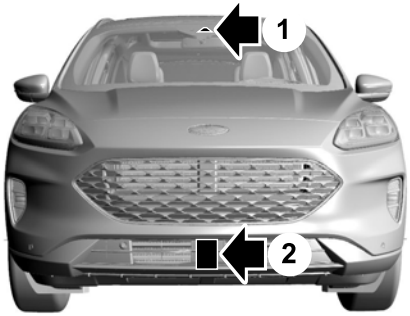
- You can change alert and distance alert sensitivity to one of three possible settings.
- You can switch distance indication and alert on or off.
- If required, you can switch active braking on or off.
- If required, you can switch evasive steering assist on or off.

Note: *Active braking and evasive steering assist automatically turn on every time you switch the ignition on.*

Note: *If you switch active braking off, evasive steering assist turns off.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Blocked Sensors



1 Camera.
2 Radar sensor (if equipped).

If a message regarding a blocked sensor or camera appears in the information display, the radar signals or camera images are obstructed. If your vehicle comes with a radar sensor, it is located behind the fascia cover in the center of the lower grille. With a blocked sensor or camera, the pre-collision assist system may not function or performance may reduce. The following table lists possible causes and actions for when this message displays.

Camera Troubleshooting

Cause	Action
The windshield in front of the camera is dirty or obstructed in some way.	Clean the outside of the windshield in front of the camera.
The windshield in front of the camera is clean but the message remains in the display screen.	Wait a short time. It may take several minutes for the camera to detect that there is no obstruction.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Radar Troubleshooting (If Equipped)

Cause	Action
The surface of the radar in the grille is dirty or obstructed in some way.	Clean the grille surface in front of the radar or remove the object causing the obstruction.
The surface of the radar in the grille is clean but the message remains in the display screen.	Wait a short time. It may take several minutes for the radar to detect that there is no obstruction.
Heavy rain, spray, snow or fog is interfering with the radar signals.	The pre-collision assist system is temporarily disabled. Pre-collision assist automatically reactivates a short time after the weather conditions improve.
Swirling water or snow or ice on the surface of the road may interfere with the radar signals.	The Pre-collision assist system is temporarily disabled. Pre-collision assist automatically reactivates a short time after the weather conditions improve.
Radar is out of alignment due to a front-end impact.	Contact an authorized dealer to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.

Note: *Proper system operation requires a clear view of the road by the camera. Have any windshield damage in the area of the camera's field of view repaired.*

Note: *If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs and your vehicle comes with a radar sensor, the radar sensing zone may change. This could cause missed or false detections. Contact an authorized dealer to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

WHAT IS DRIVE MODE CONTROL

The system delivers a driving experience through a suite of sophisticated electronic vehicle systems. These systems optimize steering, handling and powertrain response. This provides a single location to control multiple systems performance settings.

Changing the drive mode changes the functionality of the following systems:

- Electric power-assisted steering system adjusts steering effort and feel based on the mode you select. See **Steering** (page 263).
- Electronic stability control and traction control maintain your vehicle control in adverse conditions or high performance driving. See **Stability Control** (page 217).
- Electronic throttle control enhances the powertrain response to your driving inputs.
- Transmission controls become optimized with shift schedules tuned to each mode.
- Four-wheel drive settings are optimized and tuned to each mode.
- Electric vehicle mode selections may be limited. See **Plug-In Hybrid Vehicle Operation** (page 171).

The system tailors your vehicle configuration for each mode you select.

Note: *Not all settings may be available.*

Note: *The system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system for proper operation. If a mode is unavailable due to a system fault or change in gear shifter position, the mode defaults to Normal.*

SELECTING A DRIVE MODE

Note: *Drive mode changes may not be available when the ignition is off.*

Note: *Button icon shown may vary from your vehicle.*

Note: *Selected drive mode displays in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 115).*



To select drive modes, use the console mounted control.

DRIVE MODES

Deep Snow/Sand



For snow or soft dry sand. When stuck in deep snow, use this mode to help get unstuck.

Note: *Using deep snow/sand mode on dry, hard surfaces could produce some vibration, driveline bind up, and potential excessive tire wear. This mode is for slippery and loose surfaces.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Eco



For efficient driving. This mode helps deliver maximum fuel efficiency and helps to increase driving range.

Normal



For everyday driving. This mode is a perfect balance of excitement, comfort and convenience. This is the default mode after each ignition cycle.

Slippery



For less than ideal road conditions, such as snow or ice covered roads. Use this mode for crossing terrain with a firm surface covered with loose, wet or slippery material. Slippery mode lowers throttle response and, if provided with an automatic transmission, optimizes shifting for slippery surfaces.

Note: *Using slippery mode on dry, hard surfaces could produce some vibration, driveline bind up, and potential excessive tire wear. This mode is for slippery surfaces.*

Sport



For sporty driving with improved performance handling, and response. This mode increases throttle response and provides a sportier steering feel. If equipped with automatic transmission, the powertrain system provides improved gear holding, helping your vehicle accelerate faster.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNING: Make sure that you properly secure objects in the luggage compartment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

WARNING: Do not place objects on the luggage cover. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

WARNING: The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

WARNING: Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. If you are unable to fully close the liftgate, open the air vents or the windows to allow fresh air to enter your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle.

Note: *When loading long objects into your vehicle, for example pipes, timber or furniture be careful not to damage the interior trim.*

A dog guard compliant to ISO 27955 is available as an aftermarket accessory from our authorized dealers.

LUGGAGE ANCHOR POINTS

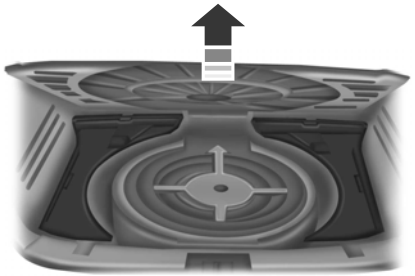


E132901

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

REAR UNDER FLOOR STORAGE

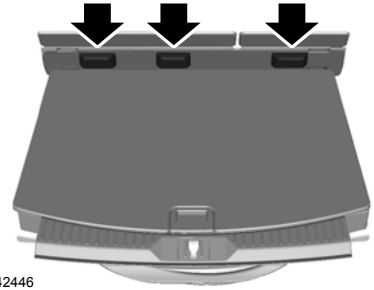
Cargo Management System (If Equipped)



E142445

The system is located in the floor of the cargo area. Lift the handle to open.

Adjustable Load Floor (If Equipped)

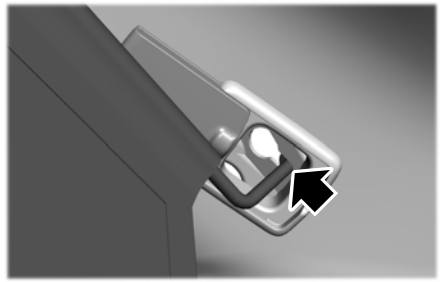


E142446

Vehicles with the standard size spare tire can adjust the load floor to two positions. The front of the load floor can be placed either on (for high position) or below (for low position) the ledges behind the rear seats. The rear of the load floor always sits on the two small shelves located on the liftgate trim.

CARGO NETS

Installing the Net



1. Push the ends of the upper bar toward each other and insert them into the retainers on the headliner. Push the bar forward into the narrow section of the retainers.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing



2. Attach the net to the luggage anchor points.



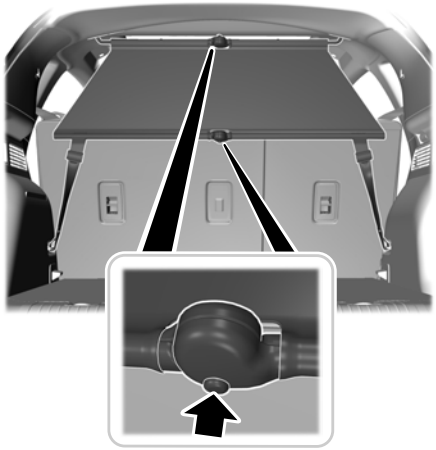
3. Tighten the belts.

Removing the Net



1. Release the belts.
2. Remove the net from the luggage anchor points.
3. Remove the upper bars.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing



4. Push the release buttons to fold the cargo net.

LUGGAGE COVERS

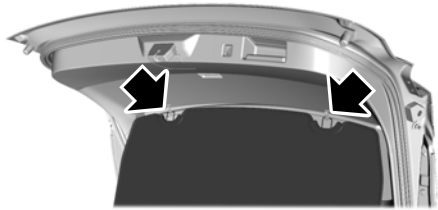
WARNING: Make sure that you properly secure the luggage cover. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

WARNING: Do not place objects on the luggage cover. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

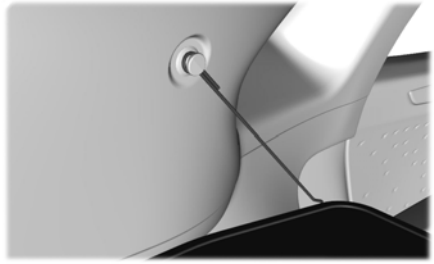
Use the luggage cover to cover items in the cargo area of your vehicle.

Removing the Luggage Cover

1. Open the liftgate.



2. Detach the retaining clips on the liftgate trim panel.



3. Detach the retaining cord on the luggage compartment trim panel.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Note: *Support the luggage cover when detaching the retaining clips.*

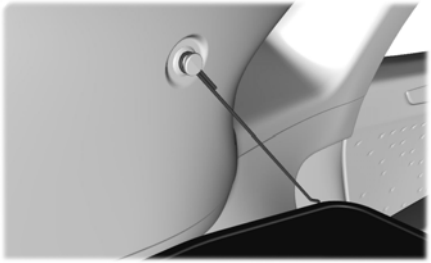
4. Lift the luggage cover out of the liftgate.

Stowing the Luggage Cover

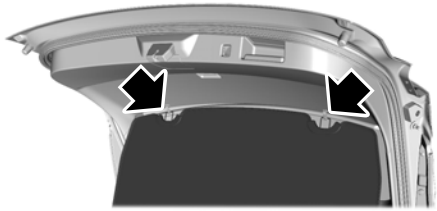
The luggage cover can be stowed in the luggage compartment.

Installing the Luggage Cover

1. Insert the luggage cover.



2. Attach the retaining cord to the luggage compartment trim panel.



3. Insert the retaining clips into the litfgate trim panel.

Note: *Make sure to support the luggage cover when inserting the retaining clips.*

ROOF RACKS AND LOAD CARRIERS

WARNING: When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

For correct roof rack system function, you must place loads directly on crossbars affixed to the roof rack side rails. When using the roof rack system, we recommend you use Ford Genuine Accessory crossbars designed specifically for your vehicle.

Make sure that you securely fasten the load. Check the tightness of the load before driving and at each fuel stop.

Note: *Never place loads directly on the roof panel. The roof panel is not designed to directly carry a load.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Maximum Roof Load Amounts

Note: *The maximum roof load is based on the load being evenly distributed on the crossbars.*

Weight on Crossbar (Total)	Maximum Roof Load
Vehicles equipped with Panoramic Roof	60 kg
Vehicles without Panoramic Roof	75 kg

Adjusting the Crossbars (If Equipped)



1. Loosen the crossbar bolt by using the supplied tool or similar tool.
2. Move the crossbar to the new position.
3. Tighten the bolt by using the supplied tool or similar tool.

Note: *For less wind noise and better aerodynamics, only install the crossbars when you need them for carrying cargo.*

DOG GUARD

A dog guard compliant to ISO 27955 is available as an aftermarket accessory from our authorized dealers.

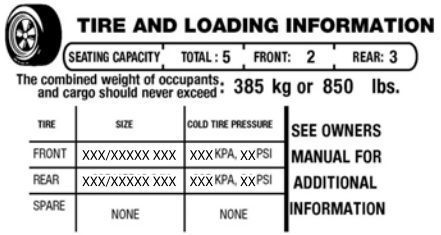
LOAD LIMIT

Vehicle Loading - with and without a Trailer

This section guides you in the proper loading of your vehicle, trailer, or both. Keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer. Properly loading your vehicle provides maximum return of vehicle design performance. Before you load your vehicle, become familiar with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight rating, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's Tire and Loading Information label or Safety Compliance Certification label.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Tire and Loading Label Information Example:

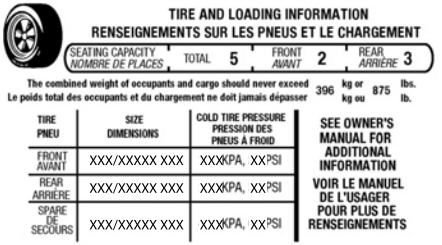


TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION

SEATING CAPACITY TOTAL : 5 FRONT: 2 REAR: 3

The combined weight of occupants, and cargo should never exceed 385 kg or 850 lbs.

TIRE	SIZE	COLD TIRE PRESSURE	SEE OWNERS MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION
FRONT	XXX/XXXXX XXX	XXX KPA, XX PSI	
REAR	XXX/XXXXX XXX	XXX KPA, XX PSI	
SPARE	NONE	NONE	



TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION

RENSEIGNEMENTS SUR LES PNEUS ET LE CHARGEMENT

SEATING CAPACITY / NOMBRE DE PLACES TOTAL 5 FRONT / AVANT 2 REAR / ARRIÈRE 3

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed / Le poids total des occupants et du chargement ne doit jamais dépasser 396 kg or / kg ou 875 lbs. / lb.

TIRE / PNEU	SIZE / DIMENSIONS	COLD TIRE PRESSURE / PRESSION DES PNEUS À FROID	SEE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION / VOIR LE MANUEL DE L'USAGER POUR PLUS DE RENSEIGNEMENTS
FRONT / AVANT	XXX/XXXXX XXX	XXX KPA, XX PSI	
REAR / ARRIÈRE	XXX/XXXXX XXX	XXX KPA, XX PSI	
SPARE / DE SECOURS	XXX/XXXXX XXX	XXX KPA, XX PSI	

Payload

Payload is the combined weight of cargo and passengers that your vehicle is carrying. The maximum payload for your vehicle appears on the Tire and Loading label. The label is either on the B-pillar or the edge of the driver door. Vehicles exported outside the US and Canada may not have a tire and loading label. Look for "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg OR XXX lb" for maximum payload. The payload listed on the Tire and Loading Information label is the maximum payload for your vehicle as built by the assembly plant. If you install any additional equipment on your vehicle, you must determine the new payload. Subtract the weight of the equipment from the payload listed on the Tire and Loading label. When towing, trailer tongue weight or king pin weight is also part of payload.

WARNING: The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating)

GAWR is the maximum allowable weight that a single axle (front or rear) can carry. These numbers are on the Safety Compliance Certification label. The label is located on the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver seating position.

The total load on each axle must never exceed its Gross Axle Weight Rating.

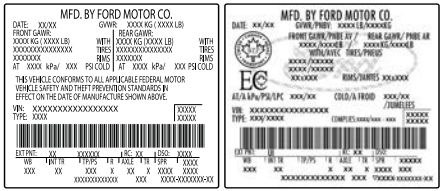
Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating)

GVWR is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle. This includes all options, equipment, passengers and cargo. It appears on the Safety Compliance Certification label. The label is located on the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver seating position.

The gross vehicle weight must never exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.

Safety Compliance Certification Label Example:



WARNING: Exceeding the Safety Compliance Certification label vehicle weight limits can adversely affect the performance and handling of your vehicle, cause vehicle damage and can result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

Maximum Loaded Trailer Weight

Maximum loaded trailer weight is the highest possible weight of a fully loaded trailer the vehicle can tow. Consult an authorized dealer (or the RV and Trailer Towing Guide available at an authorized dealer) for more detailed information.

GCWR (Gross Combined Weight Rating)

GCWR is the maximum allowable weight of the vehicle and the loaded trailer, including all cargo and passengers, that the vehicle can handle without risking damage. (Important: The towing vehicle's braking system is rated for operation at Gross Vehicle Weight Rating, not at Gross Combined Weight Rating.) Separate functional brakes should be used for safe control of towed vehicles and for trailers where the Gross Combined Weight of the towing vehicle plus the trailer exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating of the towing vehicle.

The gross combined weight must never exceed the Gross Combined Weight Rating.

Note: *For trailer towing information refer to the RV and Trailer Towing Guide available at an authorized dealer.*

WARNING: Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the certification label.

WARNING: Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the original tires because they may lower your vehicle's GVWR and GAWR limitations. Replacement tires with a higher limit than the original tires do not increase the GVWR and GAWR limitations.

WARNING: Exceeding any vehicle weight rating can adversely affect the performance and handling of your vehicle, cause vehicle damage and can result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

Steps for determining the correct load limit:

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lb." on your vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lb.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1,400 lb. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lb. (1400-750 (5 x 150) = 650 lb.)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

Helpful examples for calculating the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity

Suppose your vehicle has a 1400-pound (635-kilogram) cargo and luggage capacity. You decide to go golfing. Is there enough load capacity to carry you, four of your friends and all the golf bags? You and four friends average 220 pounds (99 kilograms) each and the golf bags weigh approximately 30 pounds (13.5 kilograms) each. The calculation would be: 1400 - (5 x 220) - (5 x 30) = 1400 - 1100 - 150 = 150 pounds. Yes, you have enough load capacity in your vehicle to transport four friends and your golf bags. In metric units, the calculation would be: 635 kilograms - (5 x 99 kilograms) - (5 x 13.5 kilograms) = 635 - 495 - 67.5 = 72.5 kilograms.

Suppose your vehicle has a 1400-pound (635-kilogram) cargo and luggage capacity. You and one of your friends decide to pick up cement from the local home improvement store to finish that patio you have been planning for the past two years. Measuring the inside of the vehicle with the rear seat folded down, you have room for twelve 100-pound (45-kilogram) bags of cement. Do you have enough load capacity to transport the cement to your home? If you and your friend each weigh 220 pounds (99 kilograms), the calculation would be: 1400 - (2 x 220) - (12 x 100) = 1400 - 440 - 1200 = - 240 pounds. No, you do not have enough cargo capacity to carry that much weight. In metric units, the calculation would be: 635 kilograms - (2 x 99 kilograms) - (12 x 45 kilograms) = 635 - 198 - 540 = -103 kilograms. You will need to reduce the load weight by at least 240 pounds (104 kilograms). If you remove three 100-pound (45-kilogram) cement bags, then the load calculation would be:1400 - (2 x 220) - (9 x 100) = 1400 - 440 - 900 = 60 pounds. Now you have the load capacity to transport the cement and your friend home. In metric units, the calculation would be: 635 kilograms - (2 x 99 kilograms) - (9 x 45 kilograms) = 635 - 198 - 405 = 32 kilograms.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

The above calculations also assume that the loads are positioned in your vehicle in a manner that does not overload the front or the rear gross axle weight rating specified for your vehicle on the Safety Compliance Certification label.

Special Loading Instructions for Owners of Pick-up Trucks and Utility-type Vehicles

WARNING: When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

TOWING A TRAILER

WARNING: Do not exceed 100 km/h. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum gross combination mass stated on the vehicle identification plate. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum vertical load on the tow ball. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not tow a trailer fitted with electric trailer brakes unless your vehicle is fitted with a compatible aftermarket electronic trailer brake controller. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

WARNING: The anti-lock brake system does not control the trailer brakes.

When towing a trailer:

- Obey country specific regulations for towing a trailer.
- Do not exceed 100 km/h even if a country allows higher speeds under certain conditions.
- Place loads as low as possible and central to the axle of your trailer. If you are towing with an unladen vehicle, place the load in your trailer toward the nose, within the maximum nose load, as this gives the best stability.
- The vertical weight on the tow ball is essential for the driving stability of your vehicle and trailer.
- The vertical weight on the tow ball should be at least 10% of the trailer weight and not exceed the maximum permissible weight.
- Reduce speed immediately if the trailer shows any sign of swaying. See **Trailer Sway Control** (page 282).
- Use a low gear when descending a steep downhill slope.

Note: *The maximum permissible trailer nose weight on the trailer identification plate is the trailer manufacturer's testing value. The vehicle maximum permissible trailer nose weight may be lower.*

The stability of your vehicle to trailer combination is dependent on the quality of the trailer.

Towing a trailer changes the vehicle handling characteristics and increases stopping distances. Adapt your speed and driving behavior to the load of the trailer.

The gross combination mass stated on the vehicle identification plate applies for road gradients up to 12% and altitudes up to 1,000 m when towing a trailer.

Note: *Not all vehicles are suitable or approved to have tow bars fitted. See an authorized dealer for further information.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

TRAILER SWAY CONTROL

WARNING: Turning off trailer sway control increases the risk of loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death. Ford does not recommend disabling this feature except in situations where speed reduction may be detrimental (such as hill climbing), the driver has significant trailer towing experience, and can control trailer sway and maintain safe operation.

Note: *This feature does not prevent trailer sway, but reduces it when it begins.*

Note: *This feature cannot stop all trailers from swaying.*

Note: *In some cases, if your vehicle speed is too high, the system may turn on multiple times, gradually reducing your vehicle speed.*

The system applies the brakes to the individual wheels and reduces engine torque to aid vehicle stability. If the trailer begins to sway, the stability control warning lamp flashes and a message appears in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 115). Slow your vehicle down, pull safely to the side of the road and check for correct load distribution. See **Load Carrying** (page 271).

You can switch this feature off in the information display. When you switch the ignition on, the system automatically turns on.

RECOMMENDED TOWING WEIGHTS

WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum gross combination mass stated on the vehicle identification plate. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Note: *Do not exceed the trailer weight for your vehicle configuration listed in the chart below.*

Note: *Do not exceed the trailer frontal area for your vehicle configuration listed in the following chart.*

Note: *For high altitude operation, reduce the gross combination mass by 2% per 300 m starting at the 300 m elevation point.*

Note: *Certain states require electric trailer brakes for trailers over a specified weight. Be sure to check state regulations for this specified weight. The maximum trailer weights listed may be limited to this specified weight, as the vehicle's electrical system may not include the wiring connector needed to activate electric trailer brakes.*

Your vehicle may tow a trailer provided the maximum trailer weight is less than or equal to the maximum trailer weight listed for your vehicle configuration on the following chart.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Powertrain	Gross Combination Mass	Maximum Trailer Weight	Maximum Permissible Trailer Vertical Weight
2.0L GTDI FWD	3,615 kg	1,500 kg	180 kg
2.0L GTDI AWD	3,700 kg	1,500 kg	180 kg
2.5L PHEV FWD	3,820 kg	1,500 kg	180 kg

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

ESSENTIAL TOWING CHECKS

Follow these guidelines for safe towing:

- Do not tow a trailer until you drive your vehicle at least 1,600 km.
- Consult your local motor vehicle laws for towing a trailer.
- See the instructions included with towing accessories for the proper installation and adjustment specifications.
- Service your vehicle more frequently if you tow a trailer. See your scheduled maintenance information.
- If you use a rental trailer, follow the instructions the rental agency gives you.

Remember to account for the trailer tongue weight as part of your vehicle load when calculating the total vehicle weight.

Hitches

Do not use a hitch that either clamps onto the bumper or attaches to the axle.

It is recommended that you load your trailer so 10% of the trailer weight is on the tow ball. You must not exceed the maximum permissible trailer nose weight. See **Recommended Towing Weights** (page 282).

Safety Chains

Note: *Never attach safety chains to the bumper.*

Always connect the safety chains to the hook retainers of your vehicle hitch.

To connect the safety chains, cross them under the trailer tongue and allow enough slack for turning tight corners. Do not allow the chains to drag on the ground.

Trailer Brakes

WARNING: Do not connect a trailer's hydraulic brake system directly to your vehicle's brake system. Your vehicle may not have enough braking power and your chances of having a collision greatly increase.

WARNING: Do not tow a trailer fitted with electric trailer brakes unless your vehicle is fitted with a compatible aftermarket electronic trailer brake controller. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

Electric brakes and manual, automatic or surge-type trailer brakes are safe if you install them properly and adjust them to the manufacturer's specifications. The trailer brakes must meet local and federal regulations.

The rating for the tow vehicle's braking system operation is at the gross vehicle weight rating, not the gross combined weight rating.

Separate functioning brake systems are required for safe control of towed vehicles and trailers weighing more than 750 kg **when loaded.**

Trailer Lamps

WARNING: Never connect any trailer lamp wiring to the vehicle's tail lamp wiring; this may damage the electrical system resulting in fire. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible for assistance in proper trailer tow wiring installation. Additional electrical equipment may be required.

Trailer lamps are required on most towed vehicles. Make sure all running lights, brake lights, turn signals and hazard lights are working.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Before Towing a Trailer

Practice turning, stopping and backing up to get the feel of your vehicle-trailer combination before starting on a trip. When turning, make wider turns so the trailer wheels clear curbs and other obstacles.

When Towing a Trailer

- Do not make full-throttle starts.
- Check your hitch, electrical connections and trailer wheel lug nuts thoroughly after you have travelled 80 km.
- When stopped in congested or heavy traffic during hot weather, place the transmission in park (P) to aid engine and transmission cooling and to help A/C performance.
- Turn off the cruise control with heavy loads or in hilly terrain. The cruise control may turn off automatically when you are towing on long, steep grades.
- Shift to a lower gear when driving down a long or steep hill. Do not apply the brakes continuously, as they may overheat and become less effective.
- If your transmission is equipped with a Grade Assist or Tow/Haul feature, use this feature when towing. This provides engine braking and helps eliminate excessive transmission shifting for optimum fuel economy and transmission cooling.
- Allow more distance for stopping with a trailer attached. Anticipate stops and brake gradually.
- Avoid parking on a grade. However, if you must park on a grade:
  - Turn the steering wheel to point your vehicle tires away from traffic flow.
  - Set your vehicle parking brake.
  - Place the automatic transmission in park (P).
  - Place wheel chocks in front and back of the trailer wheels. (Chocks not included with vehicle.)

Launching or Retrieving a Boat or Personal Watercraft (PWC)

Note: *Disconnect the wiring to the trailer **before** backing the trailer into the water.*

Note: *Reconnect the wiring to the trailer **after** the trailer is removed from the water.*

When backing down a ramp during boat launching or retrieval:

- Do not allow the static water level to rise above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.
- Do not allow waves to break higher than 15 cm above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.

Exceeding these limits may allow water to enter vehicle components:

- Causing internal damage to the components.
- Affecting driveability, emissions, and reliability.

Replace the rear axle lubricant anytime the rear axle has been submerged in water. Water may have contaminated the rear axle lubricant, which is not normally checked or changed unless a leak is suspected or other axle repair is required.

TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS

If you need to tow your vehicle, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

REDUCED ENGINE PERFORMANCE

WARNING: If you continue to drive your vehicle when the engine is overheating, the engine could stop without warning. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle.

If the engine coolant temperature gauge needle moves to the upper limit position, the engine is overheating. See **Gauges** (page 90).

You must only drive your vehicle for a short distance if the engine overheats. The distance you can travel depends on ambient temperature, vehicle load and terrain. The engine continues to operate with limited power for a short period of time.

If the engine temperature continues to rise, the fuel supply to the engine reduces. The air conditioning switches off and the engine cooling fan operates continually.

1. Gradually reduce your speed and stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Immediately switch the engine off to prevent severe engine damage.
3. Wait for the engine to cool down.
4. Check the coolant level. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 318).
5. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

COLD WEATHER PRECAUTIONS

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below approximately -25ºC.

PRECONDITIONING YOUR VEHICLE FOR COLD WEATHER DRIVING - 2.5L DURATEC – HYBRID (121KW/164PS) (BG), PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

- Fully charge your vehicle before heading out into cold weather. This helps maximize your driving range.
- Plug in your vehicle to maintain the best battery operating temperature before driving.
- When your vehicle is plugged in it uses energy from your charging source to heat the cabin and ensure maximum battery charge level.
- To maximize battery charge level, use heated seats and a lower climate control temperature setting.

Note: *You can precondition your vehicle prior to your departure using the FordPass app.*

BREAKING-IN

Tires

New tires need to be run-in for approximately 500 km. During this time, you may experience different driving characteristics.

Brakes and Clutch

Avoid heavy use of the brakes and clutch if possible for the first 150 km in town and for the first 1,500 km on freeways.

Engine

Avoid driving too fast during the first 1,500 km. Vary your speed frequently and change up through the gears early. Do not labor the engine.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Vehicles With a Diesel Engine

During the first 3,000 km, you may notice a ticking sound when your vehicle slows down. This is due to adjustments of your new diesel engine and is normal.

DRIVING THROUGH WATER

WARNING: Do not drive through flowing or deep water as you may lose control of your vehicle.

Note: *Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.*

Note: *Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.*

Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the front rocker area of your vehicle.



When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle. Your brake performance and traction may be limited. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Lightly press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work.
- Check that the horn works.
- Check that the exterior lights work.
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.

DRIVING ECONOMICALLY

The following helps to improve fuel consumption:

- Drive smoothly, accelerate gently and anticipate the road ahead to avoid heavy braking.
- Regularly check your tire pressures and make sure that they are inflated to the correct pressure.
- Follow the recommended maintenance schedule and carry out the recommended checks.
- Plan your journey and check the traffic before you set off. It is more efficient to combine errands into a single trip whenever possible.
- Avoid idling the engine in cold weather or for extended periods. Start the engine only when you are ready to set off.
- Do not carry unnecessary weight in your vehicle as extra weight wastes fuel.
- Do not add unnecessary accessories to the exterior of your vehicle, for example running boards. If you use a roof rack, remember to fold it down or remove it when not in use.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

- Do not shift into neutral when you are braking or when your vehicle is slowing down.
- Shut all windows when driving at high speeds.
- Switch off all electric systems when not in use, for example air conditioning. Make sure that you unplug any accessories from the auxiliary power points when not in use.

FLOOR MATS

WARNING: Use a floor mat designed to fit the footwell of your vehicle that does not obstruct the pedal area. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

WARNING: Secure the floor mat to both retention devices so that it cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not place additional floor mats or any other covering on top of the original floor mats. This could result in the floor mat interfering with the operation of the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while your vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.



To install the floor mats, position the floor mat eyelet over the retention post and press down to lock in position.

To remove the floor mat, reverse the installation procedure.

Note: *Regularly check the floor mats to make sure they are secure.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

HAZARD FLASHERS

Note: *The hazard flashers operate when the ignition is in any position, or if the key is not in the ignition. If used when the vehicle is not running, the battery loses charge. As a result, there may be insufficient power to restart your vehicle.*



The flasher control is on the instrument panel. Use your hazard flashers when your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

- Press the flasher control and all front and rear direction indicators flash.
- Press the button again to switch them off.

FUEL SHUTOFF

WARNING: If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the fuel system checked. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

Note: *When you try to restart your vehicle after a fuel shutoff, the vehicle makes sure that various systems are safe to restart. Once the vehicle determines the systems are safe, then the vehicle allows you to restart.*

Note: *In the event that your vehicle does not restart after your third attempt, contact a qualified technician.*

The fuel pump shutoff stops the flow of fuel to the engine in the event of a moderate to severe crash. Not every impact causes a shutoff.

Should your vehicle shut off after a crash, you may restart your vehicle.

If your vehicle has a key system:

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Switch to start position.
3. Switch off the ignition.
4. Switch on the ignition to re-enable the fuel pump.
5. If the vehicle does not start, repeat steps 1 through 4.

If your vehicle has a push button start system:

1. Press ***START/STOP*** to switch off your vehicle.
2. Press the brake pedal and ***START/STOP*** to switch on your vehicle.
3. Remove your foot from the brake pedal and press ***START/STOP*** to switch off your vehicle.
4. You can attempt to start the vehicle by pressing the brake pedal and ***START/STOP***, or press ***START/STOP*** without pressing the brake pedal.
5. If the vehicle does not start, repeat steps 1 through 4.

JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE - EXCLUDING: HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

WARNING: Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

WARNING: Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

WARNING: Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.

WARNING: Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.

Note: *Do not attempt to push-start your automatic transmission vehicle. Attempting to push-start a vehicle with an automatic transmission may cause transmission damage.*

Note: *Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicle electrical system.*

Preparing Your Vehicle

Note: *Use only a 12 volt supply to start your vehicle.*

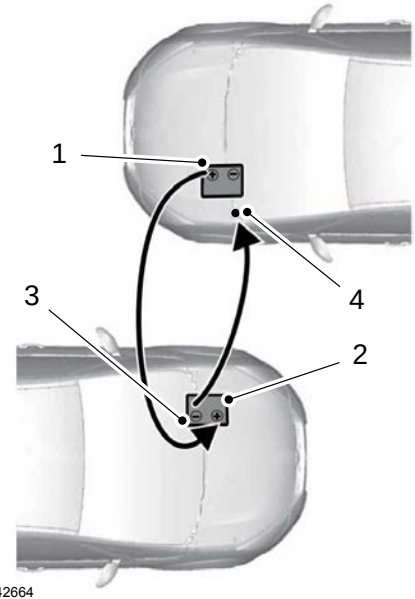
Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle, making sure the two vehicles do not touch.

Connecting the Jumper Cables

WARNING: Do not connect the negative jumper cable to any other part of your vehicle. Use the ground point.

Note: *If you are using a jump pack or booster box, follow that manufacturer's instructions.*

Note: *In the illustration that follows, the bottom vehicle represents the booster vehicle.*

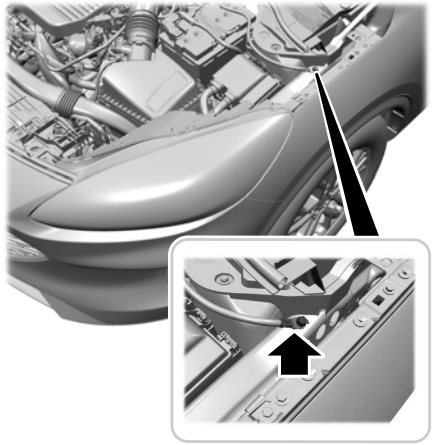


E142664

1. Pull the red rubber boot backward. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) jumper cable to the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) jumper cable to an exposed metal part of the stalled vehicle's engine, as shown in the following illustration, away from the battery and the fuel injection system, or connect the negative (-) jumper cable to a ground connection point if available.



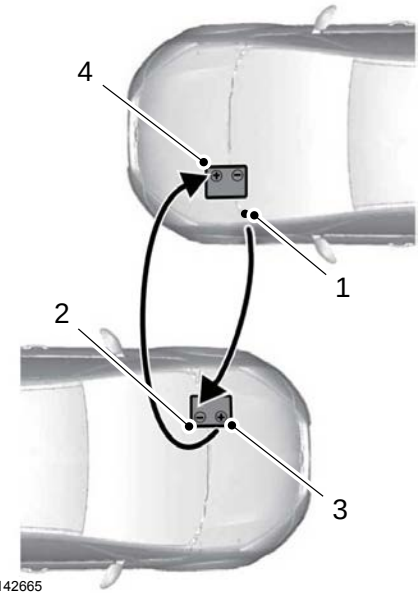
Starting the Engine

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and moderately rev the engine, or gently press the accelerator to keep your engine speed between 2000 and 3000 RPM, as shown in your tachometer.
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.
3. Once you start the disabled vehicle, run both vehicle engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

Removing the Jumper Cables

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing



1. Remove the negative (-) jumper cable from the disabled vehicle.
2. Remove the jumper cable on the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
3. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
4. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the disabled vehicle battery.
5. Allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.

JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

WARNING: Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.

WARNING: Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

WARNING: Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.

Note: *Do not attempt to push-start your automatic transmission vehicle. Attempting to push-start a vehicle with an automatic transmission may cause transmission damage.*

Note: *Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicle electrical system.*

Preparing Your Vehicle

Note: *Use only a 12-volt supply to start your vehicle.*

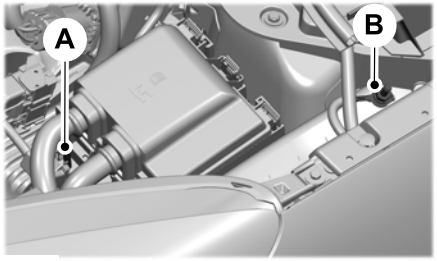
Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle, making sure the two vehicles do not touch.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Connecting the Jumper Cables

WARNING: Do not connect the negative jumper cable to any other part of your vehicle. Use the ground point.

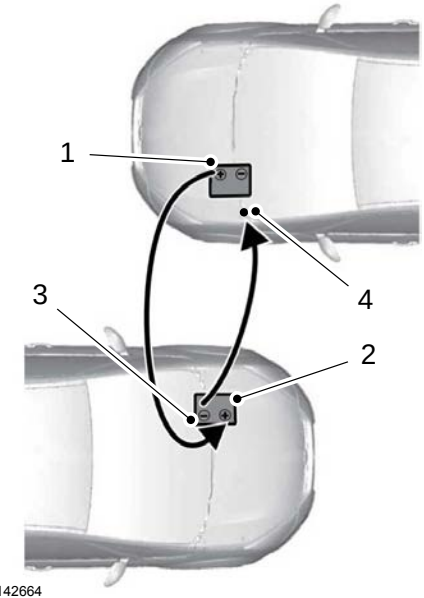
Your vehicle has a 12-volt battery that has two prongs accessible from under the hood. Your vehicle can be jumped the same way conventional vehicles can by using these prongs. The illustration below shows the two connector prongs used for jump starting your vehicle.



A. Positive prong (+).
B. Negative prong (-).

Note: *If you are using a jump pack or booster box, follow that manufacturer's instructions.*

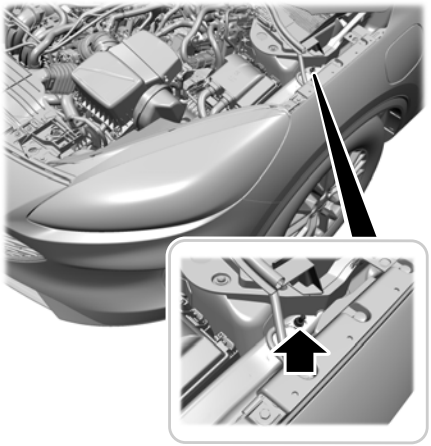
Note: *In the illustration that follows, the bottom vehicle represents the booster vehicle.*



E142664

1. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery. Pull the red rubber boot backward.
2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) jumper cable to the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) jumper cable to an exposed metal part of the stalled vehicle's engine, as shown in the following illustration, away from the battery and the fuel injection system, or connect the negative (-) jumper cable to a ground connection point if available.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

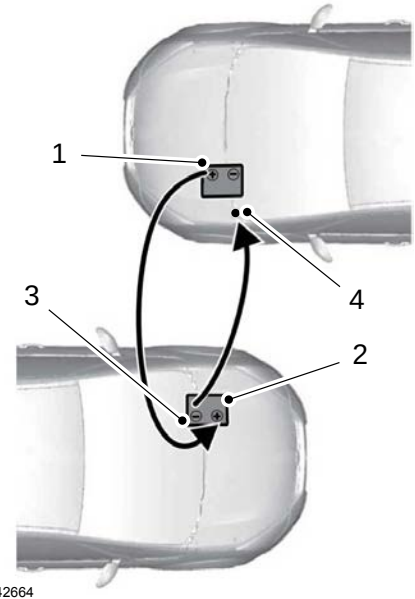


Starting the Engine

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and moderately rev the engine, or gently press the accelerator to keep your engine speed between 2000 and 3000 RPM, as shown in your tachometer.
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.
3. Once you start the disabled vehicle, run both vehicle engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

Removing the Jumper Cables

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.



E142664

1. Remove the negative (-) jumper cable from the disabled vehicle.
2. Remove the jumper cable on the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

3. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
4. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the disabled vehicle battery.
5. Allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.

After disconnecting the jumper cables, let the disabled vehicle sit in Ready to Drive mode for several minutes to charge the 12-volt battery. The disabled vehicle can charge the 12-volt battery even if the gasoline engine is off. The 12-volt battery receives power from the high-voltage battery.

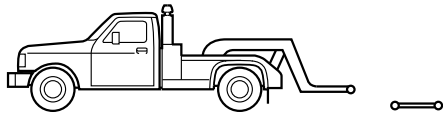
POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

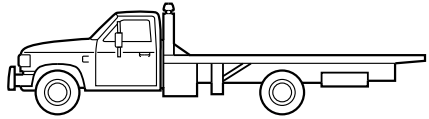
The system flashes the direction indicators and sounds the horn (intermittently) in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag (front, side, side curtain or Safety Canopy) or the seatbelt pretensioners.

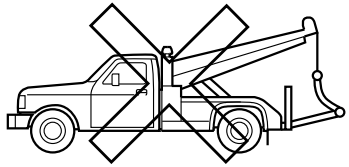
The horn and indicators turn off when:

- You press the hazard control button.
- You press the panic button on the remote entry transmitter (if equipped).
- Your vehicle runs out of power.
- Sounding of the horn is only enabled in specific markets.

TRANSPORTING THE VEHICLE







Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

If you need to have your vehicle towed, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider.

We recommend the use of a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment to tow your vehicle. Do not tow with a slingbelt. Ford Motor Company has not approved a slingbelt towing procedure. Vehicle damage may occur if towed incorrectly, or by any other means.

Ford Motor Company produces a towing manual for all authorized tow truck operators. Have your tow truck operator refer to this manual for proper hook-up and towing procedures for your vehicle.

It is acceptable to have your front-wheel drive vehicle towed from the front if using proper wheel lift equipment to raise the front wheels off the ground. When towing in this manner, the rear wheels can remain on the ground.

Front-wheel drive vehicles must have the front wheels placed on a tow dolly when towing your vehicle from the rear using wheel lift equipment. This prevents damage to the transmission.

Towing an all-wheel or four-wheel drive vehicle requires that all wheels be off the ground, such as using a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment. This prevents damage to the transmission, all-wheel or four-wheel drive system and vehicle.

TOWING POINTS

Due to local market requirements in some countries, some vehicles may have a recovery hook.

Recovery Hook Location

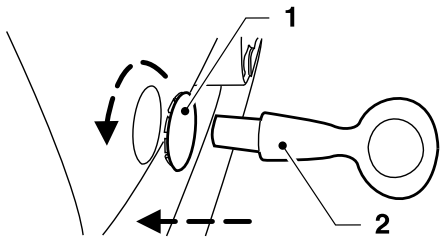
If your vehicle has a screw-in recovery hook, it is in the luggage compartment under the floor cover.

If your vehicle does not have a recovery hook, you can purchase one from your dealer.

Installing the Recovery Hook

There is an installation point for the recovery hook behind the fascia.

Note: *The screw-in recovery hook has a left-hand thread. Turn it counterclockwise to install it. Make sure that the recovery hook is fully tightened.*



E146284

Using a suitable tool, such as a screwdriver, pry open the cover (1). Use the recessed portion of the cover with the notch. Screw in the recovery hook (2).

Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels

See **Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels** (page 285).

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

FUSE SPECIFICATION CHART

Engine Compartment Fuse Box

WARNING: Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.

WARNING: To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the power distribution box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

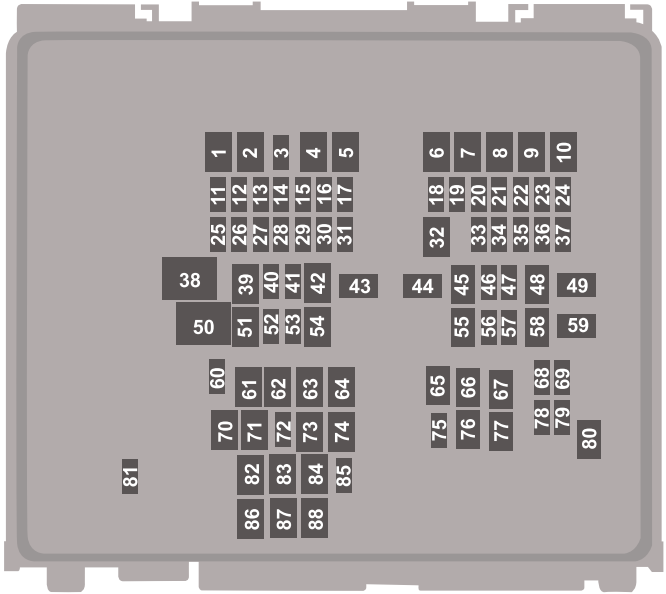
The engine compartment fuse box is in the engine compartment. It has high-current fuses that protect your vehicle's main electrical systems from overloads.

When you disconnect and reconnect the battery, you need to reset some features. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 323).

Lift the release lever at the rear of the cover to remove it.

Note: *Replace fuses with the same type and rating. See **Changing a Fuse** (page 307).*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing



Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
1	30 A	Fuel filter heater (diesel).
2	40 A	Left-hand heated windshield.
3	10 A	Not used (spare).
4	60 A	Supplemental heater (gas, diesel).
5	40 A	Supplemental heater (gas, diesel).
6	40 A	Supplemental heater (gas, diesel).
7	40 A	Right-hand heated windshield.
8	—	Not used.
9	60 A	Glow plug module (diesel).
10	30 A	Starter motor.
11	15 A	Powertrain control module.
12	15 A	Powertrain control module.
13	15 A	Powertrain control module.
14	15 A	Powertrain control module.
15	15 A	Powertrain control module (diesel).
16	—	Not used.
17	20 A	Steering column lock.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
18	10 A	Powertrain control module.
19	10 A	Anti-lock brake system module.
20	5 A	Dosing control module (diesel).
21	5 A	Fuel operated heater.
22	5 A	Battery electronic control module (hybrid).
23	5 A	Charge port light ring (hybrid).
24	20 A	Amplifier.
25	20 A	Pressure line heater (diesel).
26	10 A	Reluctant dosing control module (diesel).
27	20 A	Tank heater (diesel).
28	10 A	Brake on-off switch. Headlamp switch pack.
29	5 A	Powertrain control module (hybrid).
30	10 A	Transmission oil pump (hybrid).
31	5 A	Electronic power assist steering.
32	30 A	Body control module.
33	10 A	Front parking aid camera. Rear view camera.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
		Blind spot information system. Adaptive cruise control.
34	10 A	Headlamp leveling.
35	15 A	Heated steering wheel.
36	10 A	Powertrain control module (hybrid). Transmission control module (diesel).
37	20 A	Horn.
38	40 A	Blower motor.
39	—	Not used.
40	15 A	Not used (spare).
41	20 A	Amplifier.
42	30 A	Driver power seat.
43	50 A	Electric water pump (hybrid).
44	40 A	Trailer tow module.
45	30 A	Passenger power seat.
46	20 A	Not used (spare).
47	20 A	Heated seats.
48	40 A	Anti-lock brake control valves.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
49	60 A	Anti-lock brake control pump.
50	60 A	Cooling fan.
51	30 A	Moonroof.
52	5 A	Rear console USB charger.
53	10 A	Battery charge control module (hybrid).
54	—	Not used.
55	20 A	Transmission control module (diesel).
56	5 A	DC/DC converter (hybrid).
57	10 A	Data link connector.
58	40 A	Auxiliary power distribution box (hybrid).
59	40 A	Body control module.
60	—	Not used.
61	20 A	Rear cargo power point.
62	20 A	Not used (spare).
63	30 A	Not used (spare).
64	30 A	Power liftgate.
65	—	Not used.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
66	20 A	Rear heated seat module.
67	20 A	Fuel operated heater.
68	5 A	Mass air flow and intake air temperature sensor (gas).
69	15 A	Port fuel injectors (gas, hybrid).
70	20 A	Front console power point.
71	20 A	Media bin power point.
72	20 A	Rear window wiper.
73	—	Not used.
74	30 A	Windshield wiper motor.
75	10 A	Not used (spare).
76	30 A	Heated backlight.
77	—	Not used.
78	10 A	Air conditioning clutch.
79	10 A	Headlamp washer.
80	20 A	Fuel pump.
81	10 A	Rear window washer pump.
82	40 A	Not used (spare).

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

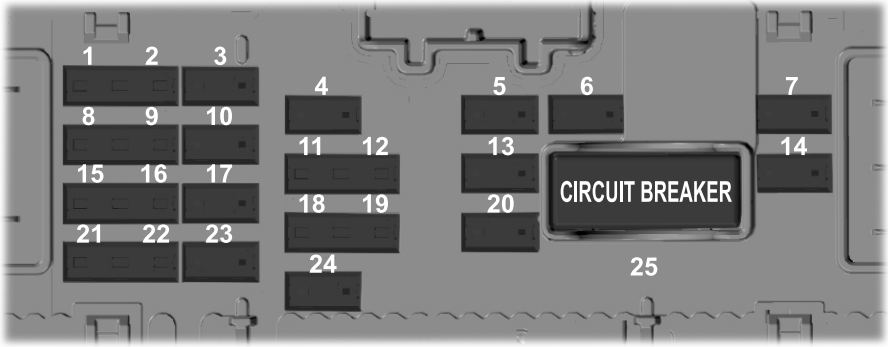
Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
83	—	Not used.
84	40 A	Driveline control module.
85	5 A	Rain sensor.
86	—	Not used.
87	—	Not used.
88	—	Not used.

Note: *Spare fuse amperage may vary.*

Passenger Compartment Fuse Box

The fuse box is below the glove compartment.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing



Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
1	5 A	Restraints control module.
2	5 A	Rear heated seats.
3	10 A	Parking assist control module.
4	10 A	Ignition switch.
5	20 A	Lock. Unlock.
6	10 A	Moonroof. DC inverter.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
7	30 A	Passenger door module.
8	5 A	Not used.
9	5 A	Electrochromatic mirror. Image processing module A. Passenger airbag deactivation indicator.
10	10 A	Telematics control unit module.
11	5 A	Power liftgate. Hands-free liftgate actuation module.
12	5 A	Central security module.
13	15 A	Driver door lock. Child safety locks.
14	30 A	Driver door module.
15	15 A	Not used (spare).
16	15 A	Not used (spare).
17	15 A	SYNC. Receiver transceiver module. Integrated control panel.
18	7.5 A	Head up display module. Wireless accessory charging module.
19	7.5 A	Battery backed sounder.

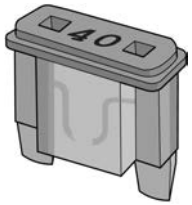
Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
20	10 A	Not used (spare).
21	7.5 A	Climate control. E-shifter module.
22	7.5 A	Instrument cluster. Gateway module. Steering column control module.
23	20 A	Audio unit.
24	20 A	Not used (spare).
25	30 A	Not used (spare).

Note: *Spare fuse amperage may vary.*

CHANGING A FUSE

General Information



E217331

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working, a fuse may have blown. Blown fuses are identified by a broken wire within the fuse.

Engine Compartment Fuse Box

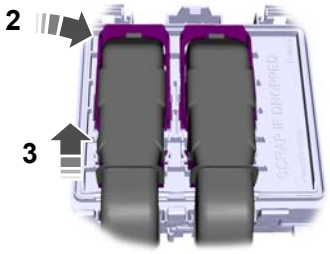
WARNING: Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.



E253688

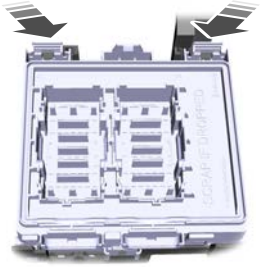
Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

1. Pull the latch toward you and remove the top cover.



E253689

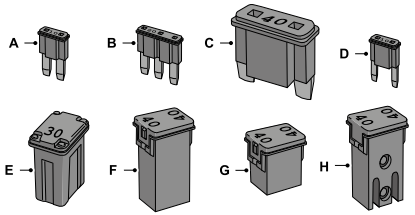
2. Pull the connector lever upward.
3. Pull the connector upward to remove it.



E253693

4. Pull both latches toward you and remove the fuse box.
5. Turn the fuse box over and open the lid.

Fuse Types



A Micro 2.
B Micro 3.
C Maxi.
D Mini.
E M Case.
F J Case.
G J Case Low Profile.
H Slotted M Case.

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNING: Do not work on a hot engine.

WARNING: Switch the ignition off and apply the parking brake.

WARNING: Do not touch the electronic ignition system parts after you have switched the ignition on or when the engine is running. The system operates at high voltage. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan.

Under certain conditions, the engine cooling fan may continue to run for several minutes after you switch your vehicle off.

Make sure that you fit filler caps securely after carrying out maintenance checks.

We recommend that you carry out the following checks.

Check Daily

- Exterior lamps.
- Interior lamps.
- Warning lamps and indicators.

Check When Refueling

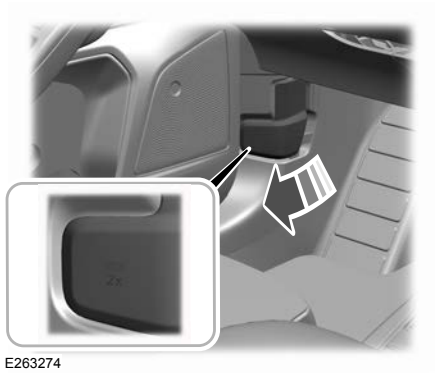
- Washer fluid level. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 325).
- Tire pressures. See **Technical Specifications** (page 347).
- Tire condition. See **Wheels and Tires** (page 334).

Check Monthly

- Engine oil level. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 314).
- Engine coolant level. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 318).
- Brake fluid level. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 322).
- Pipes, hoses and reservoirs for leaks.
- Air conditioning operation.
- Parking brake operation.
- Horn operation.
- Tightness of lug nuts. See **Technical Specifications** (page 347).

OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

Opening the Hood


E263274

1. Open the left-hand front door.
2. Fully pull the hood release lever and let it completely retract.

Note: *This action releases the hood latch.*

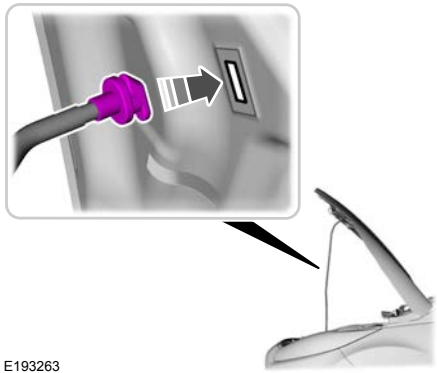
3. Fully pull the hood release lever for a second time.

Note: *This action fully releases the hood.*

4. Open the hood.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Note: *There is no secondary latch under the hood.*



5. Support the hood with the strut.

Closing the Hood

1. Remove the strut from the catch and secure it correctly in the clip.
2. Lower the hood and allow it to drop under its own weight for the last 25–35 cm.

Note: *Make sure that the hood is correctly closed.*

Warning Lamps and Indicators



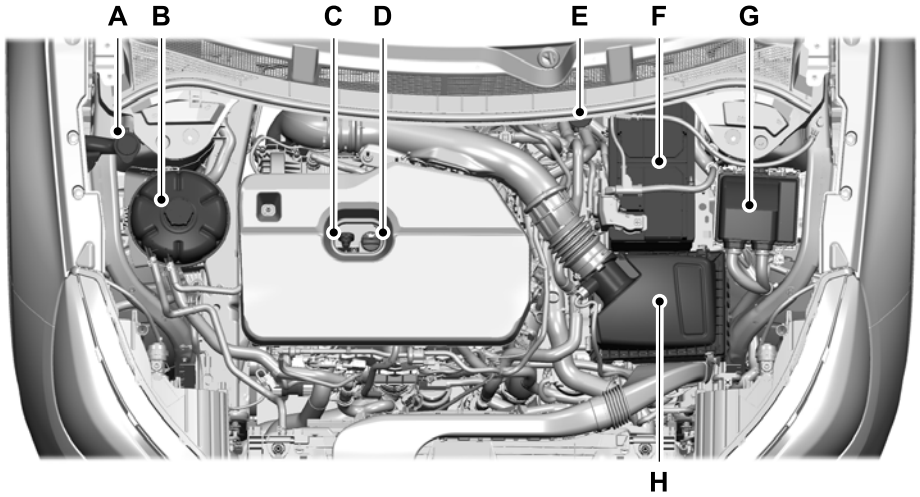
It illuminates when you switch the ignition on and remains on if any door or the hood is open.

Information Messages

Message	Action
Hood Ajar	Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and close the hood.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.0L ECOBOOST™

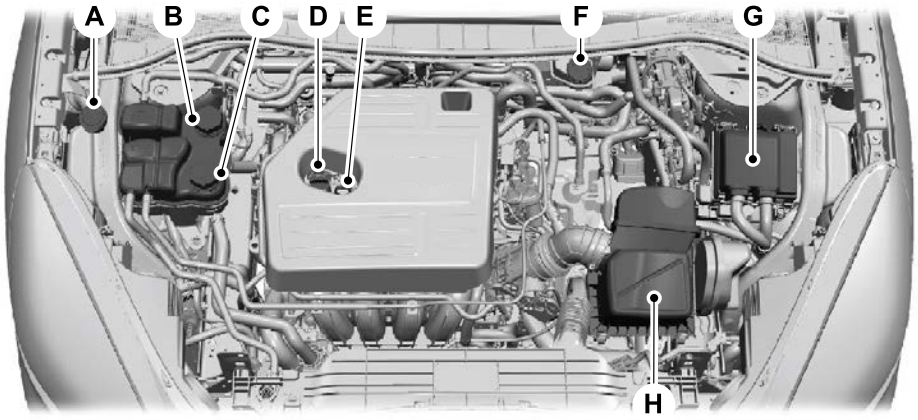


A Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 325).
B Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 318).
C Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 314).
D Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 314).

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

E Brake fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 322).
F Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 323).
G Power distribution box. See **Fuse Specification Chart** (page 297).
H Air filter assembly. See **Changing the Engine Air Filter** (page 316).

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.5L/2.5L DURATEC, HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)/PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

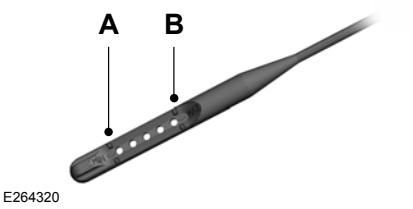


Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

A Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 325).
B Low temperature coolant cap. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 318).
C High temperature coolant cap. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 318).
D Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 314).
E Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 314).
F Brake fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 322).
G Power distribution box. See **Fuses** (page 297).
H Air filter assembly. See **Changing the Engine Air Filter** (page 316).

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 2.0L ECOBOOST™/2.5L DURATEC, HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)



E264320

A Minimum.
B Maximum.

ENGINE OIL CHECK

1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.
2. Switch off the engine and wait 10 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.
3. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint free cloth. Reinstall the dipstick and remove it again to check the oil level.

If the oil level is at the minimum mark, add oil immediately. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 354).

Note: *Check the oil level before starting the engine.*

Note: *Make sure that the oil level is between the minimum and the maximum marks.*

Note: *Do not use oil additives or other engine treatments. Under certain conditions, they may damage the engine.*

Note: *The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 5,000 km.*

Adding Oil

WARNING: Do not add engine oil when the engine is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.

1. Remove the filler cap.
2. Add oil that meets Ford specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 354).
3. Replace the filler cap. Turn it until you feel a strong resistance.

Note: *Do not add oil further than the maximum mark. Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.*

Note: *Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately.*

OIL CHANGE INDICATOR RESET - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

Only reset the system after changing the engine oil and oil filter.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

To reset the oil change indicator, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu item	Action
Settings	Press the menu button.
Information	Press the ***OK*** button.
Oil Life	Press the ***OK*** button.
Reset Oil Life	Press and hold the ***OK*** button until the system reset confirmation appears.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

OIL CHANGE INDICATOR RESET - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select ***Settings***.
3. Select ***Vehicle***.
4. Select ***Oil Life***.
5. Press and hold the ***OK*** button until the system reset confirmation appears.

CHANGING THE ENGINE AIR FILTER - 2.0L ECOBOOST™

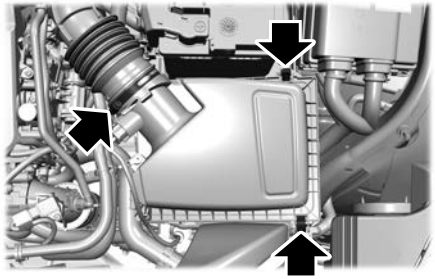
WARNING: To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

When changing the air filter element, use only parts that meet or exceed our specifications.

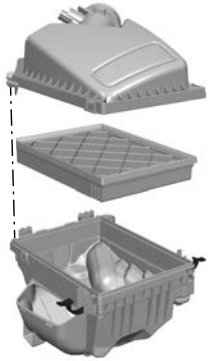
For EcoBoost equipped vehicles: When servicing the air cleaner, it is important that no foreign material enter the air induction system. The engine and turbocharger are susceptible to damage from even small particles.

Change the air filter element at the proper interval.

Note: *Failure to use the correct air filter element may result in severe engine damage. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the engine if the correct air filter element is not used.*



1. Using a screwdriver, loosen the clamp on the air filter housing cover.
2. Gently pull the boot back away from the air filter housing cover.
3. Release the two clips from the air filter housing cover.
4. Remove the air filter housing cover.
5. Remove the air filter element from the air filter housing.
6. Wipe any dirt or debris from the air filter housing assembly to make sure no dirt gets in the engine and to make sure you have a good seal.



Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

7. Install a new air filter element. Be careful not to crimp the filter element edges between the air filter housing and cover. This could cause filter damage and allow unfiltered air to enter the engine if it is not properly seated.
8. Install the air filter housing cover.
9. Engage the clips to secure the air filter housing cover to the air filter housing.
10. Reconnect the boot to the air filter housing cover and tighten securely.

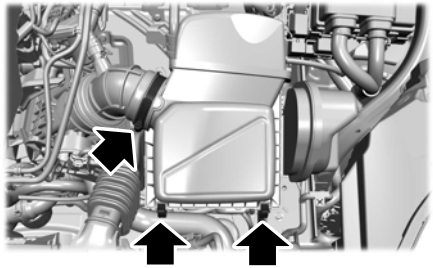
CHANGING THE ENGINE AIR FILTER - 2.5L DURATEC, HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)/ PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

WARNING: To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

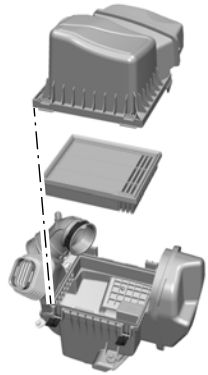
When changing the air filter element, use only parts that meet or exceed our specifications.

Change the air filter element at the proper interval.

Note: *If you do not use the correct air filter element, your vehicle warranty may be void.*



1. Using a screwdriver, loosen the clamp on air filter housing cover.
2. Gently pull the boot back away from the air filter housing cover.
3. Release the two clips from the air filter housing cover.
4. Remove air filter housing cover.
5. Remove the air filter element from the air filter housing.
6. Wipe any dirt or debris from the air filter housing assembly to make sure no dirt gets in the engine and to make sure you have a good seal.



7. Install a new air filter element. Be careful not to crimp the filter element edges between the air filter housing and cover. This could cause filter damage and allow unfiltered air to enter the engine if it is not properly seated.
8. Install the air filter housing cover.
9. Engage the clips to secure the air filter housing cover to the air filter housing.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

10. Reconnect the boot to the air filter housing cover and tighten securely.

ENGINE COOLANT CHECK

WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.

WARNING: To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure. Steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when you loosen the cap slightly.

WARNING: Do not add coolant further than the ***MAX*** mark.

When the engine is cold, check the concentration and level of the coolant at the intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information.

Note: *Make sure that the coolant level is between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks on the coolant reservoir.*

Note: *Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the **MAX** mark.*

Maintain coolant concentration within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -34ºC and -37ºC. Coolant concentration should be checked using a refractometer. We do not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentration.

Adding Coolant

WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not add engine coolant when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Note: *Automotive fluids are not interchangeable. Take care not to put engine coolant in the windshield washer fluid reservoir or windshield washer fluid in the engine coolant reservoir.*

Note: *Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants, or non-specified additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling or heating systems. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

It is very important to use prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification in order to avoid plugging the small passageways in the engine cooling system. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 354). Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Mixing of engine coolants or using an incorrect coolant may harm the engine or cooling system components and may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: *If prediluted coolant is not available, use the approved concentrated coolant diluting it to 50/50 with distilled water. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 354). Using water that has not been deionised may contribute to deposit formation, corrosion and plugging of the small cooling system passageways.*

Note: *Coolants marketed for all makes and models may not be approved to our specifications and may cause damage to the cooling system. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.

To top up the coolant level do the following:

1. Unscrew the cap slowly. Any pressure escapes as you unscrew the cap.
2. Add prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 354).
3. Add enough prediluted coolant to reach the correct level.
4. Replace the coolant reservoir cap. Turn the cap clockwise until it contacts the hard stop.
5. Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir the next few times you drive your vehicle. If necessary, add enough prediluted engine coolant to bring the coolant level to the correct level.

If you have to add more than 1 L of engine coolant per month, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Operating an engine with a low level of coolant can result in engine overheating and possible engine damage.

In case of emergency, you can add a large amount of water without engine coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location. In this instance, qualified personnel:

1. Must drain the cooling system.
2. Chemically clean the coolant system.
3. Refill with engine coolant as soon as possible.

Water alone, without engine coolant, can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.

Do not use the following as a coolant substitute:

- Alcohol.
- Methanol.
- Brine.
- Any coolant mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze.

Alcohol and other liquids can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing.

Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant. These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the coolant.

Recycled Coolant

We do not recommend the use of recycled coolant as an approved recycling process is not yet available.

Dispose of used engine coolant in an appropriate manner. Follow your community's regulations and standards for recycling and disposing of automotive fluids.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Severe Climates

If you drive in extremely cold climates:

- It may be necessary to increase the coolant concentration above 50%.
- A coolant concentration of 60% provides improved freeze point protection. Coolant concentrations above 60% decrease the overheat protection characteristics of the coolant and may cause engine damage.

If you drive in extremely hot climates:

- You can decrease the coolant concentration to 40%.
- A coolant concentration of 40% provides improved overheat protection.
- Coolant concentrations below 40% decrease the overheat and corrosion protection characteristics of the coolant and may cause engine damage.

Vehicles driven year-round in non-extreme climates should use prediluted coolant for optimum cooling system and engine protection.

Coolant Change

At specific mileage intervals, as listed in the scheduled maintenance information, the coolant should be changed. Add prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 354).

Fail-Safe Cooling

Fail-safe cooling allows you to temporarily drive your vehicle before any incremental component damage occurs. The fail-safe distance depends on ambient temperature, vehicle load and terrain.

How Fail-Safe Cooling Works



If the engine begins to overheat, the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone:



A warning lamp illuminates and a message may appear in the information display.

If the engine reaches a preset over-temperature condition, the engine automatically switches to alternating cylinder operation. Each disabled cylinder acts as an air pump and cools the engine.

When this occurs, your vehicle still operates, however:

- Engine power is limited.
- The air conditioning system turns off.

Continued operation increases the engine temperature, causing the engine to completely shut down. Your steering and braking effort increases in this situation.

When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

When Fail-Safe Mode Is Activated

WARNING: Fail-safe mode is for use during emergencies only. Operate your vehicle in fail-safe mode only as long as necessary to bring your vehicle to rest in a safe location and seek immediate repairs. When in fail-safe mode, your vehicle will have limited power, will not be able to maintain high-speed operation, and may completely shut down without warning, potentially losing engine power, power steering assist, and power brake assist, which may increase the possibility of a crash resulting in serious injury.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Your vehicle has limited engine power when in the fail-safe mode, drive your vehicle with caution. Your vehicle does not maintain high-speed operation and the engine may operate poorly.

Remember that the engine is capable of automatically shutting down to prevent engine damage. In this situation:

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and switch the engine off.
2. If you are a member of a roadside assistance program, we recommend that you contact your roadside assistance service provider.
3. If this is not possible, wait a short period for the engine to cool.
4. Check the coolant level. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

Note: *Driving your vehicle without repair increases the chance of engine damage.*

Engine Coolant Temperature Management (If Equipped)

WARNING: To reduce the risk of crash and injury, be prepared that the vehicle speed may reduce and the vehicle may not be able to accelerate with full power until the coolant temperature reduces.

If you tow a trailer with your vehicle, the engine may temporarily reach a higher temperature during severe operating conditions, for example ascending a long or steep grade in high ambient temperatures.

At this time, you may notice the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone and a message may appear in the information display.

You may notice a reduction in vehicle speed caused by reduced engine power in order to manage the engine coolant temperature. Your vehicle may enter this mode if certain high-temperature and high-load conditions take place. The amount of speed reduction depends on vehicle loading, grade and ambient temperature. If this occurs, there is no need to stop your vehicle. You can continue to drive.

The air conditioning may automatically turn on and off during severe operating conditions to protect the engine from overheating. When the coolant temperature decreases to the normal operating temperature, the air conditioning turns on.

If the coolant temperature gauge moves fully into the red zone, or if the coolant temperature warning or service engine soon messages appear in your information display, do the following:

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Fully apply the parking brake, shift into park (P) or neutral (N).
2. Leave the engine running until the coolant temperature gauge needle returns to the normal position. If the temperature does not drop after several minutes, follow the remaining steps.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

3. Switch the engine off and wait for it to cool. Check the coolant level.
4. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. If the coolant level is normal, restart the engine and continue.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID CHECK

The automatic transmission does not have a transmission fluid dipstick.

The automatic transmission does not consume fluid. If the transmission is not working correctly, for example, the transmission slips, shifts slowly or there are signs of fluid leakage, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

Have the automatic transmission fluid changed at the correct service interval. See an authorized dealer.

Do not use supplemental transmission fluid additives, treatments or cleaning agents. The use of these materials may affect transmission operation and result in damage to the internal transmission components not covered by your vehicle Warranty.

BRAKE FLUID CHECK

WARNING: Do not use any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid as this will reduce brake efficiency. Use of incorrect fluid could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Only use brake fluid from a sealed container. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage or failure. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.

WARNING: The brake system could be affected if the brake fluid level is below the ***MIN*** mark or above the ***MAX*** mark on the brake fluid reservoir.



1. Park your vehicle on a level surface.
2. Look at the brake fluid reservoir to see where the brake fluid level is relative to the ***MIN*** and the ***MAX*** marks on the reservoir.

Note: *If the brake fluid level is between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks on the reservoir, it is acceptable.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Note: *If the brake fluid level is below the **MIN** mark or above the **MAX** mark, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

Note: *To avoid fluid contamination, the reservoir cap must remain in place and fully tight, unless you are adding fluid.*

Only use fluid that meets our specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 354).

Brake Fluid Service Interval

Brake fluid absorbs water over time which degrades the effectiveness of the brake fluid. Change the brake fluid at the specified intervals to prevent degraded braking performance.

For detailed interval information, see Scheduled Maintenance in your Owner's Manual or your local maintenance guide.

CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY

WARNING: Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.

WARNING: When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.

WARNING: Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

WARNING: Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. **Wash your hands after handling**.

WARNING: For vehicles with Auto-Start-Stop the battery requirement is different. You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

The battery is in the engine compartment. See **Under Hood Overview** (page 311).

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free battery. It does not require additional water during service.

If the vehicle battery has a cover, make sure you correctly install it after cleaning or replacing the battery.

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry and the battery cables tightly fastened to the battery terminals. If any corrosion is present on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

We recommend that you disconnect the negative battery cable terminal from the battery if you plan to store your vehicle for an extended period.

Note: *If you only disconnect the negative battery cable terminal, make sure it is isolated or placed away from the battery terminal to avoid unintended connection or arcing.*

To maintain correct operation of the battery management system, if you add any electrical devices to your vehicle, do not connect the ground connection directly to the negative battery terminal. A connection at the negative battery terminal can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.

Note: *If you add electrical accessories or components to your vehicle this may adversely affect battery performance, durability and the performance of other electrical systems on your vehicle.*

If you replace the battery make sure it matches the electrical requirements of your vehicle.

If you disconnect or replace the battery and your vehicle has an automatic transmission, it must relearn its adaptive strategy. Because of this, the transmission may shift firmly when first driven. This is normal operation while the transmission fully updates its operation to optimum shift feel.

Remove and Reinstall the Battery

To disconnect or remove the battery, do the following:

1. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
2. Switch all electrical equipment off, for example lights and radio.
3. Wait a minimum of two minutes before disconnecting the battery.

Note: *The engine management system has a power hold function and remains powered for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. This is to allow diagnostic and adaptive tables to be stored. Disconnecting the battery without waiting can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

4. Disconnect the negative battery cable terminal.
5. Disconnect the positive battery cable terminal.
6. Remove the battery securing clamp.
7. Remove the battery.
8. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: *Before reconnecting the battery, make sure the ignition remains switched off.*

Note: *Make sure the battery cable terminals are fully tightened.*

If you disconnect or replace the vehicle battery, you must reset the following features:

- Window bounce-back. See **Windows and Mirrors** (page 81).
- Clock Settings.
- Pre-set radio stations.
- Steering Angle Sensor.

Note: *To calibrate the steering angle sensor, drive the vehicle above 50 km/h for a minimum of 2 km. Make sure to drive straight ahead for a minimum of 30 seconds. Several vehicle functions are disabled and a warning light could appear until the sensor is calibrated.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Note: *For flexible fuel vehicles, if you are operating on E85, you could experience poor starts or an inability to start the engine, and driveability problems until the fuel trim and ethanol content have been relearned. Drive the vehicle at least 16 km to completely relearn the idle trim and fuel trim strategy.*

Battery Disposal



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

ADJUSTING THE HEADLAMPS

Vertical and Horizontal Aim Adjustment

Vertical and horizontal aim is adjustable. We recommend that you see an authorized dealer.

WASHER FLUID CHECK

When adding fluid, use a mixture of washer fluid and water to help prevent freezing and improve the cleaning capability. For information on fluid dilution follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Note: *The reservoir supplies the front and rear washer systems.*

FUEL FILTER

The fuel filter on your vehicle must be replaced at the specified service interval. Refer to your scheduled maintenance information.

CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES



Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

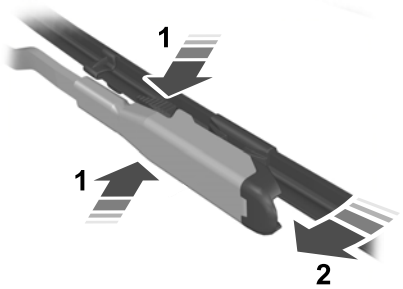
CHANGING THE WIPER BLADES

Clean the wiper blades and the windshield to improve wiper performance.

Note: *Do not move the wiper arm when the ignition is on as it may cause damage to the wiper motor.*

Replace the wiper blades at least annually for optimum performance.

Front Wiper Blades



Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

1. Lift the wiper arm and then press the wiper blade locking buttons together.

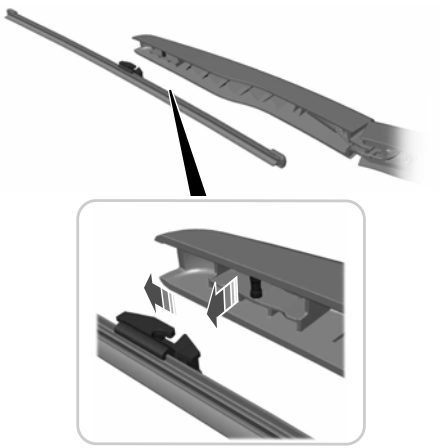
Note: *Do not hold the wiper blade when lifting the wiper arm.*

Note: *Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.*

2. Slightly rotate the wiper blade.
3. Remove the wiper blade.
4. Install in the reverse order.

Note: *Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.*

Rear Window Wiper Blade



1. Lift the wiper arm.

Note: *Do not hold the wiper blade when lifting the wiper arm.*

Note: *Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.*

2. Remove the wiper blade.

Note: *Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.*

CHANGING A BULB

Replacing Headlamp Bulbs

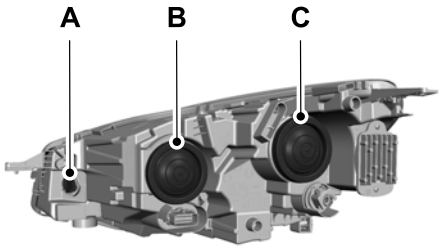
WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Note: *Handle a halogen headlamp bulb carefully and keep out of children's reach. Grasp the bulb by only its plastic base and do not touch the glass. The oil from your hand could cause the bulb to break the next time you operate the headlamps.*

Note: *If you accidentally touch the bulb, clean it with rubbing alcohol before using it.*

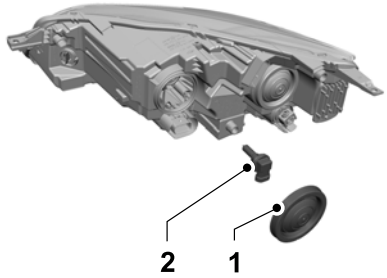
Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Headlamp



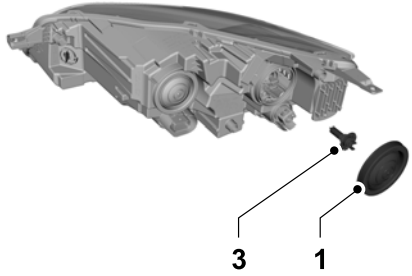
A Direction indicator lamp.
B High beam headlamp.
C Low beam headlamp.

High Beam Headlamp



1. Remove the service cap.
2. Remove the bulb from the headlamp assembly by turning it counterclockwise, then pull it straight out.
3. Disconnect the electrical connector.
4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

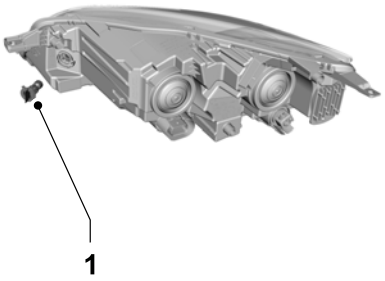
Low Beam Headlamp



1. Remove the service cap.
2. Disconnect the electrical connector.
3. Remove the bulb from the headlamp assembly by turning it counterclockwise, then pull it straight out.
4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Direction Indicator Lamp



1. Remove the bulb from the headlamp assembly by turning it counterclockwise, then pull it straight out.
2. Disconnect the electrical connector.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

LED Bulbs (If Equipped)

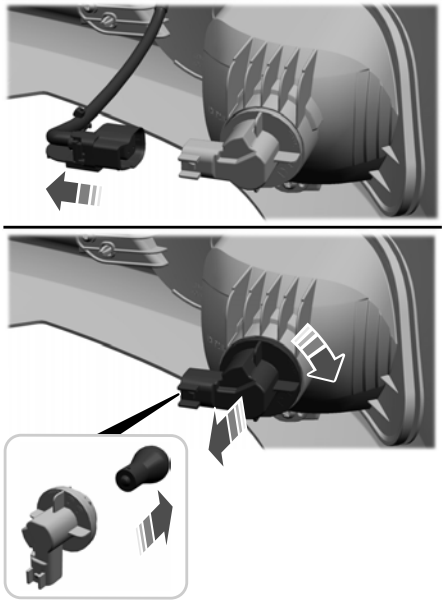
LED lamps are not serviceable items. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

Replacing Front Fog Lamp Bulbs

Front fog lamp bulbs are LED and are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

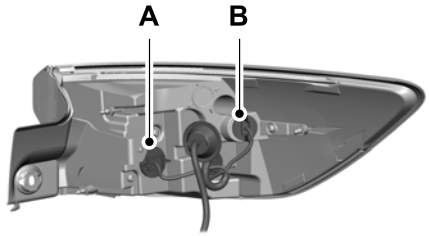
Replacing Rear Fog Lamp Bulbs

Note: *To remove the rear fog lamp bulb, access the underside of your vehicle.*



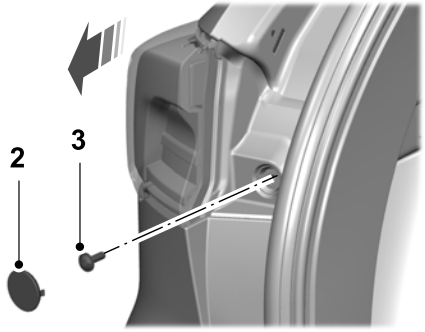
1. Disconnect the electrical connector.
2. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
3. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.

Replacing Direction Indicator Bulbs



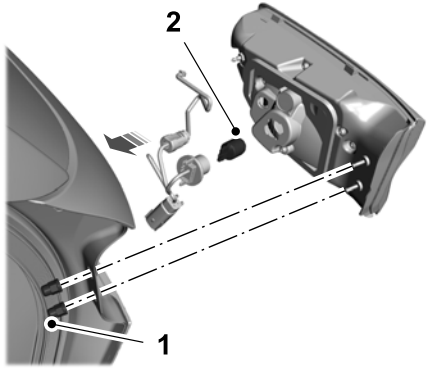
A Direction indicator lamp.
B Position lamp/Stop lamp.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing



1. Make sure the headlamp control is in the off position and open the liftgate.
2. Remove the bolt cover using a standard flat tip screwdriver.
3. Remove the bolt from the lamp assembly.
4. Gently pull the lamp assembly away from the vehicle in an outboard direction.
5. Disconnect the electrical connector.
6. Remove the direction indicator bulb by turning the lower bulb socket counterclockwise. Gently pull the bulb straight out of the socket.
7. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Replacing Reverse Lamp Assembly Bulbs



1. Remove the screws with a flathead screwdriver and pull the lamp assembly away from the vehicle.
2. Remove the bulb by turning the lower bulb socket counterclockwise. Gently pull the bulb straight out of the socket.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Replacing Rear Position/Stop Lamp Bulbs

Rear position and stop lamp bulbs are LED and are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

Replacing License Plate Lamp Bulbs

License plate lamps are LED and are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

Replacing High-Mount Brake Lamp Bulbs

High-mount stop lamps are LED and are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

We recommend that you wash your vehicle regularly with a sponge and lukewarm water containing a neutral pH car shampoo.

- Never use strong household detergents or soap, for example dish washing or laundry liquid. These products can discolor and spot painted surfaces.
- Never wash your vehicle when it is hot to the touch, or during strong or direct sunlight.
- Dry your vehicle with a chamois or soft terry cloth towel to eliminate water spotting.
- Immediately remove fuel spillages, bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout to avoid paint surface damage.
- Remove any exterior accessories, for example antennas, before entering a car wash.
- When filling with AdBlue®, remove any residue on painted surfaces immediately.

Suntan lotion and insect repellent can damage painted surfaces. If these substances come into contact with your vehicle, wash them off as soon as possible.

Using a Car Wash

Note: *If you use a car wash with a waxing cycle, make sure that you remove the wax from the windshield and the wiper blades.*

Note: *Switch the blower motor off to prevent contamination of the cabin air filter.*

Prior to using a car wash facility check the suitability of it for your vehicle.

Some car wash installations use water at high pressure. This could damage certain parts of your vehicle.

Remove any exterior accessories, including the antenna, before using an automatic car wash.

Cleaning the Exterior Lamps

Note: *Do not scrape the exterior lamps lenses or use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean them.*

Note: *Do not wipe the exterior lamps when they are dry.*

Cleaning the Chrome Trim

Do not use abrasives or chemical solvents. Use soapy water.

Do not apply cleaning product to hot surfaces.

Do not leave cleaning product on chrome surfaces longer than recommended.

Industrial-strength (heavy-duty) cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, may cause damage over a period of time.

Underbody

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep body and door drain holes free from packed dirt.

Cleaning Plastic Exterior Parts

Use only approved products to clean plastic parts.

CLEANING THE WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES

Car wash chemicals and environmental fallout can result in windshield and wiper blade contamination. Dirty windshield and wipers will result in poor windshield wiper operation. Keep the windshield and wiper blades clean to maintain windshield wiper performance.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

To clean the windshield and wiper blades:

- Clean the windshield with a non-abrasive glass cleaner. When cleaning the interior of the windshield, avoid getting any glass cleaner on the instrument panel or door panels. Wipe any glass cleaner off these surfaces immediately.
- For windshields contaminated with tree sap, chemicals, wax or bugs, clean the entire windshield using steel wool (no greater than 0000 grade) in a circular motion and rinse with water.
- Clean the wiper blades with isopropyl rubbing alcohol or windshield washer concentrate.

Note: *Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. The vehicle warranty does not cover damage caused to the heated rear window grid lines.*

CLEANING THE INTERIOR

Note: *Do not allow air fresheners and hand sanitizers to spill on interior surfaces. If a spill occurs, wipe off immediately. Damage may not be covered by your warranty.*

Note: *Do not use household cleaning products or glass cleaners, which can stain and discolor the fabric and affect the flame retardant abilities of the seat materials.*

Note: *We recommend distilled water when cleaning.*

Fabric, Carpets, Cloth Seats, Headliners and Floor Mats

Note: *Avoid soaking any surface.*

Note: *To avoid spots or discoloration, clean the entire surface.*

To clean:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner or brush.
- Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
- If a ring forms on the fabric after spot cleaning, clean the entire area immediately, but do not soak or the ring will set.

Seatbelts

WARNING: Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's seatbelts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.

WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

Note: *Do not use abrasives, or chemical solvents to clean them.*

Note: *Do not allow moisture to penetrate the seatbelt retractor mechanism.*

Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. Let them dry naturally, away from artificial heat.

Leather Interior (If Equipped)

Follow the same procedure as cleaning leather seats for cleaning leather instrument panels and leather interior trim surfaces.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Suede Micro Fiber Fabric (If Equipped)

Note: *Do not steam clean.*

Note: *To avoid spots or discoloration, clean the entire surface.*

Do not use the following products:

- Leather care products.
- Household cleaners.
- Alcoholic solutions.
- Spot removers.
- Shoe polish.

To clean:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
- If a ring forms on the fabric after spot cleaning, clean the entire area immediately, but do not soak or the ring will set.

Instrument Cluster Screens, LCD Screens and Radio Screens

Note: *Do not use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean the instrument cluster screens, LCD screens or radio screens. These cleaning products can damage the screens.*

Clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a clean, damp and soft cloth, then use a clean, dry and soft cloth to dry these areas.

Rear Windows

Note: *Do not use any abrasive materials to clean the interior of the rear windows.*

Note: *Do not install stickers or labels to the interior of the rear windows.*

Storage Compartments and Cup Holders

To clean:

- Take out any removable inserts.
- Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

CLEANING LEATHER SEATS

Note: *Follow the same procedure as cleaning leather seats for cleaning leather instrument panels and leather interior trim surfaces.*

For routine cleaning, wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

Note: *Test any cleaner or stain remover on an inconspicuous area.*

You should:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Clean and treat spills and stains as soon as possible.

Do not use the following products as these may damage the leather:

- Oil and petroleum or silicone-based leather conditioners.
- Household cleaners.
- Alcohol solutions.
- Solvents or cleaners intended specifically for rubber, vinyl and plastics.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

You should repair paintwork damage caused by stones from the road or minor scratches as soon as possible. A choice of products are available from an authorized dealer.

Remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout before repairing paint chips.

Always read and follow the manufacturer's instructions before using the products.

CLEANING THE WHEELS

Note: *Do not apply a cleaning chemical to warm or hot wheel rims and covers.*

Note: *Industrial-strength (heavy-duty) cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, in combination with brush agitation to remove brake dust and dirt, could wear away the clear coat finish over a period of time.*

Note: *Do not use hydrofluoric acid-based or high caustic-based wheel cleaners, steel wool, fuels or strong household detergent.*

Note: *If you intend to park your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so. This reduces the risk of increased corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.*

Note: *Some automatic car washes could cause damage to the finish on your wheel rims and covers.*

Alloy wheels and wheel covers are coated with a clear coat paint finish. To maintain their condition we recommend that you:

- Clean them weekly with the recommended wheel and tire cleaner.
- Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust accumulation.
- Rinse them thoroughly with a pressurized stream of water when you complete the cleaning process.

We recommend that you use our surface wheel cleaner. Make sure that you read and follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Using other non-recommended cleaning products can result in severe and permanent damage.

BODY STYLING KITS

The distance between the underside of your vehicle and the ground is less than that of other models. Drive with extreme care to avoid damage to your vehicle.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check and set the tire pressure at the ambient temperature in which you are intending to drive your vehicle and when the tires are cold. See **Technical Specifications** (page 347).

Note: *Check your tire pressures regularly to optimize fuel economy.*

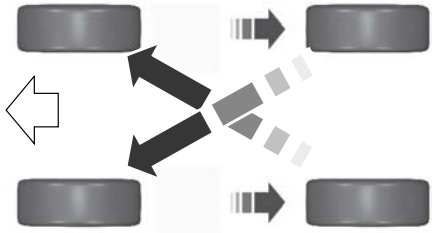
Only use approved wheel and tire sizes. Using other sizes could damage your vehicle and could make the National Type Approval invalid.

Installation of any tires that are not the original equipment tire size can cause the speedometer to display incorrect vehicle speed.

TIRE CARE

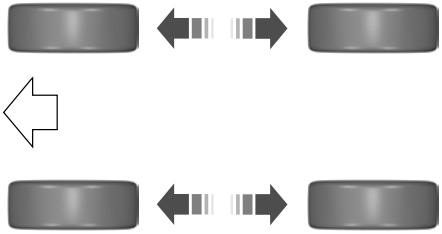
Note: *Front tires shown on the left side of the diagram.*

Non-directional tires



E142547

Directional tires



E70415

To make sure the front and rear tires of your vehicle wear evenly and last longer, we recommend that you swap the tires from front to rear and vice versa at regular intervals between 5,000 km and 10,000 km.

WARNING: Do not scrub the sidewalls of the tires when you are parking.

If you have to mount a curb, do so slowly and approach it with the wheels at right-angles to the curb.

Examine the tires regularly for cuts, foreign objects and uneven wear of the tread. Uneven wear could mean that the wheel alignment is outside specification.

Check the tire pressures (including the spare) when cold, every two weeks.

USING SUMMER TIRES

Summer tires provide superior performance on wet and dry roads. Summer tires do not have the Mud and Snow (M+S or M/S) tire traction rating on the tire side wall. Since summer tires do not have the same traction performance as All-season or Snow tires, we do not recommend using summer tires when temperatures drop to about 7ºC or below

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

(depending on tire wear and environmental conditions) or in snow and ice conditions. Like any tire, summer tire performance is affected by tire wear and environmental conditions. If you must drive in those conditions, we recommend using Mud and Snow (M+S, M/S), All-season or Snow tires.

Always store your summer tires indoors at temperatures above -7ºC. The rubber compounds used in these tires lose flexibility and may develop surface cracks in the tread area at temperatures below -7ºC. If the tires have been subjected to -7ºC or less, warm them in a heated space to at least 5ºC for at least 24 hours before installing them on a vehicle, or moving the vehicle with the tires installed, or checking tire inflation. Do not place tires near heaters or heating devices used to warm the room where the tires are stored. Do not apply heat or blow heated air directly on the tires. Always inspect the tires after storage periods and before use.

USING WINTER TIRES



E278852

We recommend that you use winter or all-season tires carrying this symbol when the temperature is 7ºC or lower, or in snow and ice conditions.

Inflate the winter tires to the same tire pressures as those listed in the tire pressures table. See **Technical Specifications** (page 347).

WARNING: Snow tires must be the same size, load index and speed rating as those originally provided by Ford. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally, the use of non-recommended tires and wheels can cause steering, suspension, axle, transfer case or power transfer unit failure. Follow the Ford recommended tire inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (on the door hinge pillar, door latch post or the door edge that meets the door latch post, next to the driver seat), or Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door. Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

USING SNOW CHAINS

WARNING: Snow tires must be the same size, load index and speed rating as those originally provided by Ford. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally, the use of non-recommended tires and wheels can cause steering, suspension, axle, transfer case or power transfer unit failure. Follow the Ford recommended tire inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (on the door hinge pillar, door latch post or the door edge that meets the door latch post, next to the driver seat), or Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door. Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

The tires on your vehicle have all-weather treads to provide traction in rain and snow. However, in some climates, you may need to use snow tires and cables. If you need to use cables, it is recommended that steel wheels (of the same size and specifications) be used, as cables may chip aluminum wheels.

Follow these guidelines when using snow tires and traction devices

- If possible, avoid fully loading your vehicle
- Purchase chains or cables from a manufacturer that clearly labels body to tire dimension restrictions.
- Use 10 mm snow chains or cables on front axle with tires 225/65R17 or 225/60R18 only.
- Not all S-class snow chains or cables meet these restrictions. Chains of this size restriction will include a tensioning device.
- The snow chains or cables must be mounted in pairs on the front axle.
- Do not use snow chains or cables on 225/55R19 or 245/45R20 tires.
- Install cables securely, verifying that the cables do not touch any wiring, brake lines or fuel lines.
- When driving with tire cables do not exceed 30 mph (48 km/h) or the maximum speed recommended by the chain manufacturer, whichever is less.
- Drive cautiously. If you hear the cables rub or bang against the vehicle, stop and retighten them. If this does not work, remove the cables to prevent vehicle damage.
- Remove the cables when they are no longer needed. Do not use cables on dry roads.

If you have any questions regarding snow chains or cables, please contact your authorized dealer.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

WARNING: The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Note: *You should only use tire sealants in roadside emergencies as they may cause damage to the tire pressure monitoring system sensor.*

Note: *If the tire pressure monitoring system sensor becomes damaged, it may not function.*

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires).

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System



Note: *Each road tire is equipped with a tire pressure sensor located inside the wheel and tire assembly cavity. The pressure sensor is attached to the valve stem. The pressure sensor is covered by the tire and is not visible unless the tire is removed. Take care when changing the tire to avoid damaging the sensor.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

You should always have your tires serviced by an authorized dealer.

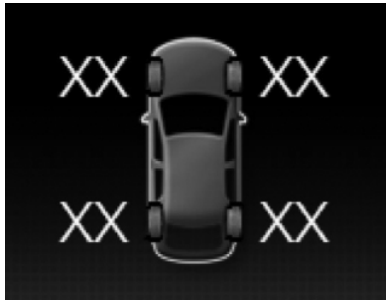
Check the tire pressure periodically (at least monthly) using an accurate tire gauge. See **When Inflating Your Tires** in this chapter.

Changing Wheels With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System

When changing the wheels of your vehicle, the tire pressure monitoring system needs to relearn the tire pressure sensors. To achieve this perform the following:

1. Make sure all tires are inflated to the proper pressure. If not, inflate the tires to the correct pressure.
2. Park your vehicle for at least 20 minutes.
3. Carry out the tire pressure monitoring system reset procedure. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure** later in this section.
4. The tire pressure monitoring system automatically re-learns the tire pressure sensors the next time your drive your vehicle for approximately 15 minutes above 40 km/h.

Understanding Your Tire Pressure Monitoring System



The tire pressure monitoring system measures pressure in your road tires and sends the tire pressure readings to your vehicle. You can view the tire pressure readings through the information display. The low tire pressure warning light will turn on if the tire pressure is significantly low. Once the light is illuminated, your tires are under-inflated and need to be inflated to the manufacturer's recommended tire pressure. Even if the light turns on and a short time later turns off, your tire pressure still needs to be checked.

When Your Temporary Spare Tire is Installed

When one of your road tires needs to be replaced with the temporary spare, the system will continue to identify an issue to remind you that the damaged road wheel and tire assembly needs to be repaired and put back on your vehicle.

To restore the full function of the tire pressure monitoring system, have the damaged road wheel and tire assembly repaired and remounted on your vehicle.

When You Believe Your System is Not Operating Properly

The main function of the tire pressure monitoring system is to warn you when your tires need air. It can also warn you in the event the system is no longer capable of functioning as intended. See the following chart for information concerning your tire pressure monitoring system:

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Low tire pressure warning light	Possible cause	Customer action required
Solid warning light	Tire(s) under-inflated	Make sure tires are at the proper pressure. See Inflating your tires in this chapter. After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the Tire Label (located on the edge of driver's door or the B-Pillar), the vehicle must be driven for at least two minutes over 32 km/h before the light turns off.
	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire assembly and reinstall it on the vehicle to restore system function. For a description on how the system functions, see **When Your Temporary Spare Tire is Installed** in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If the tires are properly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Flashing warning light	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire assembly and reinstall it on the vehicle to restore system function. For a description on how the system functions, see **When Your Temporary Spare Tire is Installed** in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If the tires are properly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

When Inflating Your Tires

WARNING: Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

When putting air into your tires (such as at a gas station or in your garage), the tire pressure monitoring system may not respond immediately to the air added to your tires.

It may take up to two minutes of driving over 32 km/h for the light to turn off after you have filled your tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

How Temperature Affects Your Tire Pressure

The tire pressure monitoring system monitors tire pressure in each pneumatic tire. While driving in a normal manner, a typical passenger tire inflation pressure may increase about 14–28 kPa from a cold start situation. If the vehicle is stationary overnight with the outside temperature significantly lower than the daytime temperature, the tire pressure may decrease about 21 kPa for a drop of -1.1°C in ambient temperature. This lower pressure value may be detected by the tire pressure monitoring system as being significantly lower than the recommended inflation pressure and activate the system warning light for low tire pressure. If the low tire pressure warning light is on, visually check each tire to verify that no tire is flat. If one or more tires are flat, repair as necessary. Check the air pressure in the road tires. If any tire is under-inflated, carefully drive the vehicle to the nearest location where air can be added to the tires. Inflate all the tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure

Overview

You must carry out the system reset procedure after each tire replacement or adjustment of the tire pressures.

To maintain your vehicle load carrying capability, your vehicle may require different tire pressures in the front compared to the rear. In these cases, the system illuminates the warning lamp at different pressures for the front and rear tires.

If the tires are rotated, you need to reset the system in order to relearn the positions of the tire pressure sensors. The system cannot tell which position a tire pressure sensor is in, and assumes you have set the tire pressures correctly.

Performing the Reset Procedure

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Navigate to the tire monitor menu in the information display.
3. Press and hold the OK button until a confirmation message appears. If your vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system reset button, press and hold the button until a confirmation message appears.

CHANGING A ROAD WHEEL

WARNING: The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

WARNING: If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged it may not function.

Note: *Only use tire sealants in roadside emergencies as they may cause damage to the tire pressure monitoring system sensor.*

Note: *The tire pressure monitoring system indicator light illuminates when the spare tire is in use. To restore the full function of the monitoring system, all road wheels equipped with tire pressure monitoring sensors must be mounted on the vehicle.*

If you get a flat tire when driving, do not apply the brake heavily. Instead, gradually decrease your speed. Hold the steering wheel firmly and slowly move to a safe place on the side of the road.

Have a flat serviced by an authorized dealer in order to prevent damage to the tire pressure monitoring system sensors. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 336). Replace the spare tire with a road tire as soon as possible. During repairing or replacing of the flat tire, have the authorized dealer inspect the tire pressure monitoring system sensor for damage.

Dissimilar Spare Wheel and Tire Assembly Information

WARNING: Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire, then it is intended for temporary use only. This means that if you need to use it, you should replace it as soon as possible with a road wheel and tire assembly that is the same size and type as the road tires and wheels that we provided with the vehicle. If the dissimilar spare tire or wheel is damaged, replace it instead of repairing it.

A dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly is defined as a spare wheel and tire assembly that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels and can be one of three types:

1. **T-type mini-spare:** This spare tire begins with the letter T for tire size and may have Temporary Use Only molded in the sidewall.

2. **Full-size dissimilar spare with label on wheel:** This spare tire has a label on the wheel that states: THIS WHEEL AND TIRE ASSEMBLY FOR TEMPORARY USE ONLY.

When driving with one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above, do not:

- Exceed 80 km/h.
- Load the vehicle beyond maximum vehicle load rating listed on the Safety Compliance Label.
- Tow a trailer.
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare tire.
- Use more than one dissimilar spare tire at a time.
- Use commercial car washing equipment.
- Try to repair the dissimilar spare tire.

Use of one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above at any one wheel location can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance.
- Comfort and noise.
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs.
- Winter weather driving capability.
- Wet weather driving capability.
- All-wheel driving capability

3. **Full-size dissimilar spare without label on wheel**

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, do not:

- Exceed 113 km/h.
- Use more than one dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly at a time.
- Use commercial car washing equipment.
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly.

The usage of a full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance.
- Comfort and noise.
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs.
- Winter weather driving capability.
- Wet weather driving capability.
- All-wheel driving capability

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly additional caution should be given to:

- Towing a trailer.
- Driving vehicles equipped with a camper body.
- Driving vehicles with a load on the cargo rack.

Drive cautiously when using a full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly and seek service as soon as possible.

Tire Change Procedure

WARNING: Never place anything between the vehicle jack and the ground.

WARNING: Never place anything between the vehicle jack and your vehicle.

WARNING: To help prevent your vehicle from moving when changing a wheel, shift the transmission into park (P), set the parking brake and use an appropriate block or wheel chock to secure the wheel diagonally opposite to the wheel being changed. For example, when changing the front left wheel, place an appropriate block or wheel chock on the right rear wheel.

WARNING: It is recommended that the wheels of the vehicle be chocked, and that no person should remain in a vehicle that is being jacked.

WARNING: The jack supplied with this vehicle is only intended for changing wheels. Do not use the vehicle jack other than when you are changing a wheel in an emergency.

Note: *Vehicles with a temporary mobility kit do not have a vehicle jack or a lug nut wrench.*

WARNING: Ensure screwthread is adequately lubricated before use.

WARNING: Check that the vehicle jack is not damaged or deformed and the thread is lubricated and clean.

WARNING: The jack should be used on level firm ground wherever possible.

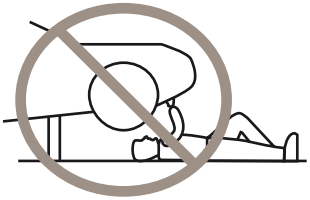
WARNING: Use only the specified jacking points. If you use other positions, you may damage the body, steering, suspension, engine, braking system or the fuel lines.

WARNING: Switch the ignition off and apply the park brake fully before lifting vehicle.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

WARNING: Park your vehicle so that you do not obstruct the flow of traffic or place yourself in any danger and set up a warning triangle.

WARNING: Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

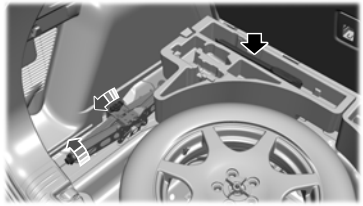


WARNING: No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

Note: *The jack does not require maintenance or additional lubrication over the service life of your vehicle.*

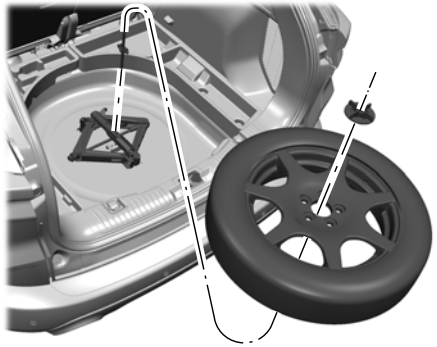
1. Park on a level surface, set the parking brake and activate the hazard flashers.
2. Place the transmission in park (P) and turn the engine off.
3. Lift and remove the carpeted cargo area floor to access the spare tire and jack.
4. Remove the wing nut that secures the spare tire by turning it counterclockwise.
5. Remove the spare tire and jack kit from the spare tire compartment.

Note: *On Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicles "PHEV" you can find the jack and wrench to the left of the spare tire.*



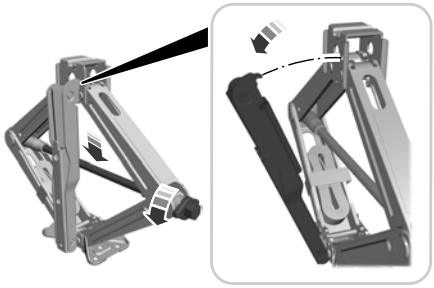
Note: *On Non Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicles ("Non-PHEV") you can find the jack and wrench under the spare tire.*

6. Remove the jack and the flat tire retainer strap from the jack base.



7. Turn the jack hex nut drive screw counterclockwise to detach the lug wrench from the jack. This lowers the jack and releases the mechanical lock.

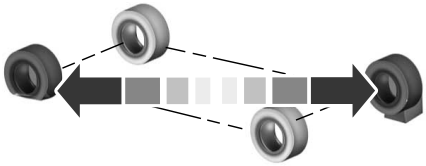
Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing



8. Unfold the lug wrench for use.



9. Block the diagonally opposite wheel.



10. Loosen each wheel lug nut one-half turn counterclockwise, but do not remove them until the wheel is raised off the ground.

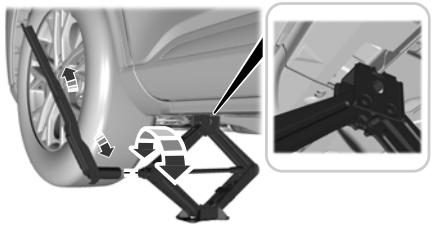
Note: *Jack at the specified locations to avoid damage to the vehicle.*

11. The vehicle jacking points shown here are also depicted on the warning label on the jack. Small arrow-shaped marks on the vehicle sills show the location of the jacking points.



E145908

12. Turn the wrench clockwise to raise the vehicle until the flat tire is completely off the ground.

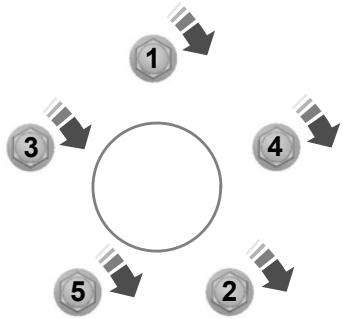


13. Remove the lug nuts with the lug wrench.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Note: *For vehicles with full wheel covers with exposed wheel nuts, remove the wheel nuts prior to removing the wheel cover or damage to the wheel cover may occur.*

14. Replace the flat tire with the spare tire, making sure the valve stem is facing outward. Reinstall the lug nuts until the wheel is snug against the hub. Do not fully tighten the lug nuts until the wheel has been lowered.
15. Lower the wheel by turning the jack handle counterclockwise.
16. Remove the jack and fully tighten the lug nuts in the order shown. See **Technical Specifications** (page 347).

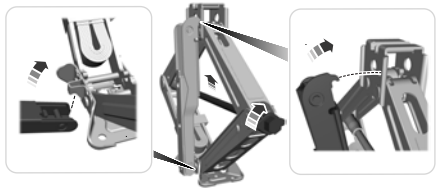


Stowing the flat tire

1. To store the jack kit on Non Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicles "Non-PHEV", fold the jack and wrench handle and engage it to the bracket of the jack base using the lug wrench pin.

Note: *To store the jack and wrench on Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicles "PHEV", fold the jack and wrench into the closed position, and place the wrench into the storage compartment. Position the jack assembly into the closed position and make sure the jack is fastened securely before you drive.*

2. When attaching the folded wrench on the jack, swing the wrench upward and adjust the jack height until the wrench hook engages the hole on the jack. Tighten the hex nut clockwise until secure.

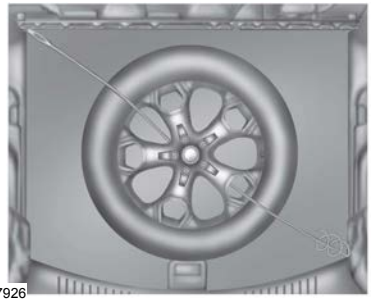


3. Re-position the jack kit assembly into the original vehicle position and secure with the plastic wing nut. Make sure the jack is fastened securely before you drive.
4. Unblock the wheels.
5. Stow the flat tire on the floor in the cargo area. Secure with the flat tire retainer strap by following the next steps:

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing



6. Locate the cargo tie-down near the seatback. Push the loop of the retainer strap through the tie-down. Thread the non-loop end through the loop.


E157926

7. Weave the retainer strap through the wheel openings.
8. Locate the front cargo tie-down at the opposite corner of the cargo area to the tie-down used in Step 4. Thread the retainer strap through the tie-down and pull tight.
9. Secure by tying a 2-half hitch knot.

1 **2** **3**



Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

Wheel Lug Nut Torque Specifications

WARNING: When you install a wheel, always remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure to secure any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without correct metal-to-metal contact at the wheel mounting surfaces can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

Bolt Size	lb-ft (Nm)*
M12 x 1.5	135 Nm

*Torque specifications are for nut and bolt threads free of dirt and rust. Use only Ford recommended replacement fasteners.

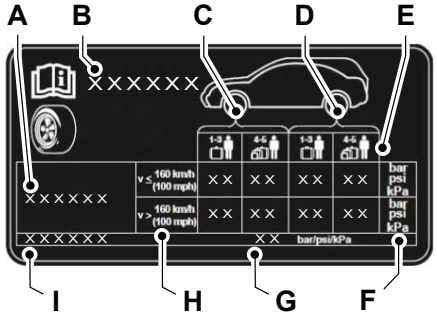
Retighten the lug nuts to the specified torque within 100 miles (160 kilometers) after any wheel disturbance (such as tire rotation, changing a flat tire, wheel removal).

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing



A Wheel pilot bore.

Inspect the wheel pilot bore and mounting surface prior to installation. Remove any visible corrosion or loose particles.



E254054

A Tire size.
B Vehicle model.
C Front tire pressure.
D Rear tire pressure.
E Vehicle load.
F Measure unit.
G Spare wheel tire pressure.
H Intended constant vehicle speed.
I Spare wheel tire size.

Tire Pressures (Cold Tires)

Up to 50 mph (80 km/h)

Variant	Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
		Front	Rear	Front	Rear
Temporary spare wheel when it differs from the other fitted wheels	T165/70 R17	420 kPa	420 kPa	420 kPa	420 kPa

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Variant	Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load or Trailer Tow Up to 60 mph/ 100 km/h	
		Front	Rear	Front	Rear
All engines	225/65 R17 [1]	240 kPa	210 kPa	240 kPa	300 kPa
All engines	225/60 R18 [1]	240 kPa	210 kPa	240 kPa	300 kPa
All engines	225/55 R19	240 kPa	210 kPa	240 kPa	300 kPa
All engines	245/45 R20	240 kPa	210 kPa	240 kPa	300 kPa

[1] Only fit snow chains to specified tires.

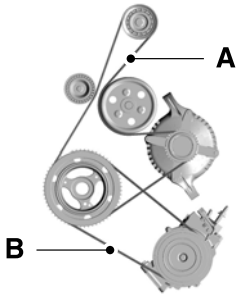
Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - 2.0L ECOBOOST™

Engine	Specification
Displacement.	1,999 cm^3
Fuel type	Minimum 87 octane
Compression ratio.	10:1
Firing order.	1-3-4-2
Spark plug gap.	0.7–0.8 mm

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Drivebelt Routing



A. The long drivebelt is on the first pulley groove closest to the engine.

B. The short drivebelt is on the second pulley groove farthest from engine.

ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - 2.5L, PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

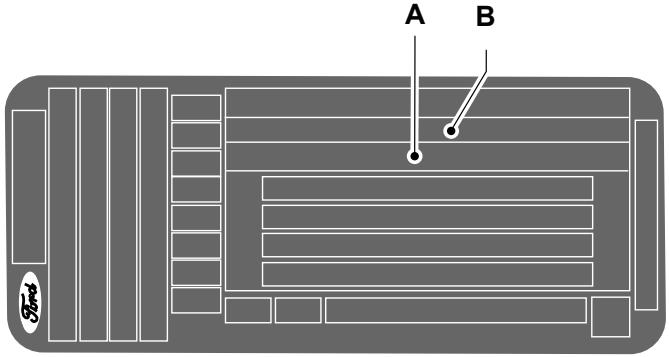
Measurement	Specification
Displacement.	2,490 cm^3
Fuel type.	Minimum 87 octane
Compression ratio.	13.0:1
Firing order.	1-3-4-2
Spark plug gap.	1.3 mm

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE - NEW ZEALAND

Note: *Your vehicle identification plate design may vary to that shown.*

Note: *The information shown on the vehicle identification plate is dependent upon market requirements.*



E219554

A Vehicle identification number
B Vehicle Built Date

Your vehicle identification number and maximum weights are shown on a plate, located at the bottom of the lock side of the right-hand door aperture.

Built Date

Built Date means the calendar month and the year in which the body shell and power train sub-assemblies are conjoined and the vehicle is driven or moved from the production line.

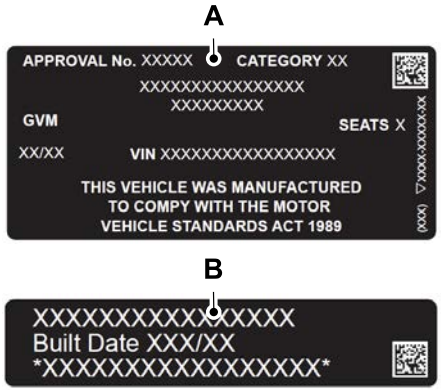
Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE - AUSTRALIA/NEW ZEALAND

Note: *The label with your vehicle built date is located on the bottom of the lock side of the driver's door aperture.*

Note: *Your vehicle identification plate design may vary to that shown.*

Note: *The information shown on the vehicle identification plate is dependent upon market requirements.*



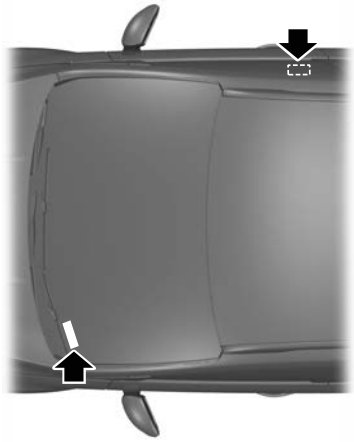
E266728

A Vehicle Identification Plate
B Built Date Label

Built Date

Built Date means the calendar month and the year in which the body shell and power train sub-assemblies are conjoined and the vehicle is driven or moved from the production line.

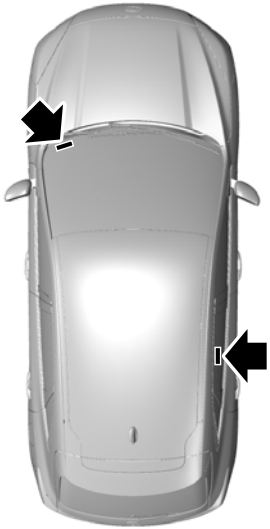
VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER - EXCLUDING: PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)



E87496

The vehicle identification number is stamped into the floor panel on the right-hand side, beside the front seat. It is also shown on the left-hand side of the instrument panel.

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)



The vehicle identification number is stamped into the floor panel on the right-hand side, beside the rear seat. It is also shown on the left-hand side of the instrument panel.

CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 2.0L ECOBOOST™

Use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Reduced brake performance.

Air Conditioning System

WARNING: The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Capacities

Variant	Refrigerant	Refrigerant Oil
All.	0.575 kg	100 ml

Materials

Name	Specification
Refrigerant - R-134A	WSH-M17B19-A
Refrigerant Oil	WSH-M1C231-B

Engine Coolant

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	8.2 L

Materials

Name	Specification
Antifreeze	WSS-M97B57-A2

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Engine Oil



An oil that displays this symbol conforms to current engine, emission system and fuel economy performance standards of ILSAC.

We recommend Motorcraft® motor oil for your vehicle. If Motorcraft® oil is not available, use motor oils of the recommended viscosity grade that meet API SP requirements and display the API Certification Mark for gasoline engines or ACEA C2.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage not covered by your vehicle warranty.

Capacities

Variant	Including the Oil Filter
All.	5.2 L

Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 5W-30 - Synthetic Blend	WSS-M2C961-A1

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Fuel Tank

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	54 L

Grease

Materials

Name	Specification
Multi-Purpose Grease	ESB-M1C93-B

Hydraulic Brake System

Materials

Name	Specification
Brake Fluid	WSS-M6C65-A2

Note: *We recommend using DOT 4 Low Viscosity (LV) High Performance Brake Fluid or equivalent meeting WSS-M6C65-A2. Use of any fluid other than the recommended fluid could cause reduced brake performance and not meet our performance standards. Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials could result in brake system damage and possible failure.*

Locks

Materials

Name	Specification
Penetrating Fluid	-

Power Transfer Unit

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All-wheel drive without cooler.	0.33–0.43 L
All-wheel drive with cooler.	0.41–0.51 L

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® SAE 75W-85 Premium Synthetic Hypoid Gear Lubricant XY-75W85-QL	WSS-M2C942-A

Rear Axle

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All-wheel drive.	0.75 L

Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® Disconnect Rear Drive Unit Fluid XY-75W-QL	-

Washer Reservoir

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	Fill as required.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Materials

Name	Specification
Windshield Washer Fluid	WSS-M14P19-A

CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 2.5L, PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

Use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Reduced brake performance.

Air Conditioning System

WARNING: The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

Capacities

Variant	Refrigerant	Refrigerant Oil
All.	0.6 kg	140 ml

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Materials

Name	Specification
Refrigerant - R-134A	WSH-M17B19-A
Refrigerant Oil - Electric Compressor	WSS-M2C31-B2

Automatic Transmission

Note: *Only use MERCON® ULV transmission fluid for automatic transmissions that require MERCON® ULV transmission fluid. The use of any other fluid could cause transmission damage.*

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	4.7 L [1]

[1] Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount could vary during fluid changes.

Materials

Name	Specification
Automatic Transmission Fluid	WSS-M2C949-A, MERCON® ULV

Engine Coolant

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
Low Temperature Cooling Circuit.	6.2 L
High Temperature Cooling Circuit.	9.6 L

Materials

Name	Specification
Antifreeze	WSS-M97B57-A2

Engine Oil



An oil that displays this symbol conforms to current engine, emission system and fuel economy performance standards of ILSAC.

We recommend Motorcraft® motor oil for your vehicle. If Motorcraft® oil is not available, use motor oils of the recommended viscosity grade that meet API SP requirements and display the API Certification Mark for gasoline engines or ACEA A5/B5.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage not covered by your vehicle warranty.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Capacities

Variant	Including the Oil Filter
All.	5.4 L

Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 0W-20 - Synthetic Blend	WSS-M2C962-A1

Fuel Tank

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	42 L

Grease

Materials

Name	Specification
Multi-Purpose Grease	ESB-M1C93-B

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Hydraulic Brake System

Materials

Name	Specification
Brake Fluid	WSS-M6C65-A2

Note: *We recommend using DOT 4 Low Viscosity (LV) High Performance Brake Fluid or equivalent meeting WSS-M6C65-A2. Use of any fluid other than the recommended fluid could cause reduced brake performance and not meet our performance standards. Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials could result in brake system damage and possible failure.*

Locks

Materials

Name	Specification
Penetrating Fluid	-

Washer Reservoir

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	Fill as required.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Materials

Name	Specification
Windshield Washer Fluid	WSS-M14P19-A

BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

The chart that follows specifies the replacement bulbs. The correct bulbs do not damage the lamp assembly or void the lamp assembly warranty, and provide quality bulb burn time.

Exterior Lamps

Function	Trade number
Base headlamp low beam.	H7
Base headlamp high beam.	H9
Base headlamp turn lamp.	PWY24 Amber
Base headlamp daytime running lamps, position.[1]	LED
Optional headlamp.[1]	LED
Base fog lamp.	H8

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Function	Trade number
Optional fog lamp.[1]	LED
Tail, brake lamp.[1]	LED
Rear turn lamp.	T20 Amber
Backup, reverse lamp.	T20
Rear fog lamp.	P21W
License plate lamp.[1]	LED
High-mount brake lamp.[1]	LED

[1] To replace these lamps, see your authorized dealer.

Interior Lamps

Function	Trade number
All interior lamps.[1]	LED

[1] To replace these lamps, see your authorized dealer.
Note: *To replace all instrument panel lights, see your authorized dealer.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

WHAT IS A CONNECTED VEHICLE

A connected vehicle has technology that allows your vehicle to connect to a mobile network and for you to access a range of features. When used in conjunction with the FordPass app, it could allow you to monitor and control your vehicle further, for example checking the tire pressures, the fuel level and the vehicle location. For additional information, refer to the local Ford website.

CONNECTED VEHICLE REQUIREMENTS

Connected service and related feature functionality requires a compatible vehicle network.

Some remote features require additional service activation. Log in to your Ford account for details. Some restrictions, third party terms and message or data rates may apply.

CONNECTED VEHICLE LIMITATIONS

Evolving technology, cellular networks, or regulations could affect functionality and availability, or continued provision of some features. These changes could even stop some features from functioning.

CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A MOBILE NETWORK

What Is the Modem



The modem allows access to a range of features built into your vehicle.

Enabling and Disabling the Modem

1. Press ***Settings***.
2. Press ***FordPass Connect***.
3. Press ***Connectivity Settings***.
4. Switch connectivity features on or off.

Connecting FordPass to the Modem

1. Make sure that the modem is enabled using the vehicle settings menu.
2. Open the FordPass app on your device and log in.
3. Add your vehicle or select your vehicle if already added.
4. Select the option for vehicle details.
5. Select the option to activate your vehicle.
6. Make sure that the name on the screen matches the name shown in your FordPass account.
7. Confirm that FordPass account is connected to the modem.

CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A WI-FI NETWORK

1. Press ***Settings***.
2. Press ***Wi-Fi***.
3. Switch ***Wi-Fi*** on.
4. Press ***View Available Networks***.
5. Select an available Wi-Fi network.

Note: *Enter the network password to connect to a secure network.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

CONNECTED VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING - VEHICLES WITH: MODEM

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot confirm the connection of my FordPass account to the modem.	– Modem is not enabled. • Switch connectivity features on. – Weak network signal. • Move your vehicle closer to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

CONNECTED VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3/SYNC 2.5

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot connect to a Wi-Fi network.	– Password error. • Enter the correct network password. – Weak network signal. • Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed. – Multiple access points in range with the same SSID. • Use a unique name for your SSID. Do not use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, for example as part of the MAC address.
The Wi-Fi connection disconnects after successful connection.	– Weak network signal. • Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
I am close to a Wi-Fi hotspot but the network signal strength is weak.	– Obstructed network signal. • If your vehicle has a heated windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is not facing the Wi-Fi hotspot. • If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows but not on the windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is facing the Wi-Fi hotspot or open the windows that are facing the hotspot. • If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows and the windshield, open the windows that are facing the hotspot. • If your vehicle is in a garage and you have the garage door closed, open the garage door.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot see a network in the list of available networks that I expect to see.	– Hidden network. • Make the network visible and try again.
I cannot see the Wi-Fi hotspot name when I search for Wi-Fi networks on my cell phone or other device.	– System limitation. • Make sure Wi-Fi hotspot visibility is on. • The system does not provide a Wi-Fi hotspot at this time.
Software downloads take too long.	– Weak network signal. • Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed. – Wi-Fi hotspot in high demand or has a slow Internet connection. • Use a more reliable Wi-Fi hotspot.
The system seems to connect to a Wi-Fi network and the signal strength is excellent but the software does not update.	– No software update available. – Wi-Fi network requires a subscription or acceptance of terms and conditions. • Test the connection using another device. If the network requires a subscription or acceptance of terms and conditions, contact the network service provider.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

CREATING A VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT

You can create a Wi-Fi hotspot in your vehicle and allow devices to connect to it for access to the Internet.



Press the button to enter the settings menu.

1. Select ***Connectivity Features***.
2. Select ***Vehicle Hotspot***.

Note: *The vehicle hotspot default setting is on.*

3. Select ***Settings***.
4. Make sure that you have Wi-Fi visibility switched on.

Note: *The Wi-Fi Visibility default setting is on.*

Finding the Wi-Fi Hotspot Name and Password



Press the button to enter the settings menu.

1. Select ***Connectivity Features***.
2. Select ***Vehicle Hotspot***.
3. Select ***Settings***.

Note: *The SSID is the hotspot name.*

4. Scroll to ***Hide password***.
5. Uncheck the box.

Connecting a Device to the Wi-Fi Hotspot

1. On your device, turn on Wi-Fi and select the hotspot from the list of available Wi-Fi networks.
2. When prompted, enter the password.

Purchasing a Data Plan

1. Connect a device to the hotspot.

Note: *The vehicle network carrier's portal opens on your device.*

2. If the portal does not open on your device, open a website and it redirects to the vehicle network carrier's portal.

Note: *Secure websites do not redirect.*

Note: *If you have an active plan, the system does not redirect to the vehicle network carrier's portal when you connect a device. Visit the vehicle network carrier's website to purchase more data.*

Note: *If data usage information is available in the vehicle hotspot menu, it is approximate.*

Note: *If you carry out a master reset, the system does not remove your vehicle from your vehicle network carrier's account. To remove your vehicle from the account, contact your vehicle network carrier.*

Note: *The vehicle network carrier provides Vehicle Hotspot services, subject to your vehicle network carrier agreement, coverage and availability.*

CHANGING THE VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT NAME OR PASSWORD



Press the button to enter the settings menu.

1. Select ***Connectivity Features***.
2. Select ***Vehicle Hotspot***.
3. Select ***Settings***.
4. Select ***SSID:___***.
5. Enter your required SSID.
6. Select ***Done***.
7. Select ***Password:___***.
8. Enter your required password.
9. Select ***Done***.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Radio Frequencies and Reception Factors

Note: *Listening to loud audio for long periods of time could damage your hearing.*

Radio Reception Factors	
Distance and strength	The further you travel from an AM or FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.
Terrain	Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception.
Station overload	When you pass a ground-based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and result in the audio system muting.

AUDIO UNIT

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



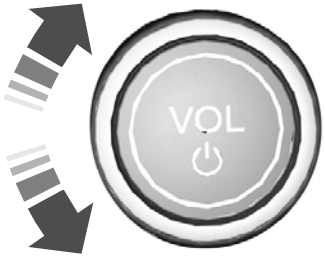
E289731

Note: *Depending on your vehicle option package, the controls may look different from what you see here.*

Note: *Some features, such as satellite radio, may not be available in your location. Check with an authorized dealer.*

Note: *The touchscreen system controls most of the audio features.*

Adjusting the Volume



Turn to adjust the volume.

Changing Radio Stations



E248947

In radio mode, turn to search through the radio frequency band.

In satellite radio mode, turn to find the previous or next available satellite radio station.

Muting the Audio

Press and release the button to mute the playing audio.

Pausing or Playing Media

In media mode, press and release the button to pause playback. Press the button again to resume playback.

In radio mode, press and release the button to mute the radio. Press the button again to unmute.

Switching the Audio Unit On and Off

Press and release the button.

Note: *The button may be on the volume control.*

Switching the Display On and Off

Press and release the button.

Using Seek, Fast Forward and Reverse

Press and release the button to skip to the next track.

Press and hold the button to fast forward through the track.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Press and release the button to return to the beginning of a track.

Repeatedly press the button to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold the button to fast rewind.

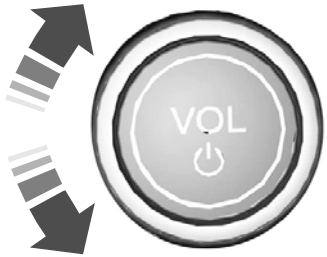
In radio mode, select a frequency band and press and release either button. The system stops at the first station it finds in that direction.

In satellite radio mode, press and release to select the next or previous satellite radio station. If you select a specific category, such as jazz, rock or news, press to find the next or previous station in the category you select.

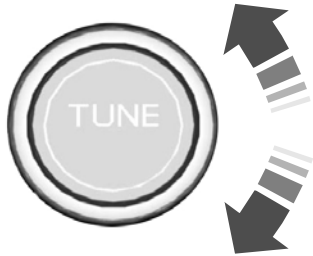
AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2.5

Switching the Audio Unit On and Off

Adjusting the Volume



Changing Radio Stations



Rotate the control to change radio stations.

Note: *You can change the radio frequency by using the seek buttons.*

Note: *You can recall radio stations using the preset buttons on the touchscreen.*

Next Track Button

Select to skip to the next track.

Press and hold the button to fast forward through the track.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Previous Track Button

Select to return to the beginning of a track.

Repeatedly press the button to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold the button to fast rewind.

Pausing or Playing Media

Select to play a track. Press the button again to pause the track.

In radio mode, press the button to mute the radio. Press the button again to unmute.

Switching the Screen On and Off

Sound Settings

Press the button to adjust the sound settings. You can optimize the sound for different seating positions.

You can also activate and set the sensitivity of the speed compensated volume.

AM/FM RADIO - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2.5

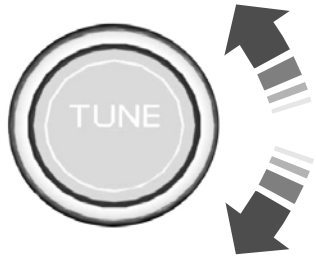
Using the Radio

Select the audio option on the feature bar.

Selecting a Radio Station From a List

1. Select ***Sources***.
2. Select ***FM***.
3. Select ***Browse***.
4. Select a radio station from the list.

Manually Changing Radio Stations



Rotate the control to change radio stations.

Note: *You can change the radio frequency by using the seek buttons.*

Automatically Changing Radio Stations

Press to seek the next station up the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek up the frequency band.

Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.

Storing a Radio Station

Press and hold one of the preset buttons on the touchscreen.

Note: *The radio briefly mutes to indicate the station has been stored.*

DIGITAL RADIO - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2.5

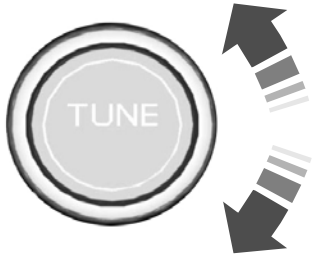
Using the Radio

Select the audio option on the feature bar.

Selecting a Radio Station From a List

1. Select ***Sources***.
2. Select ***DAB***.
3. Select ***Browse***.
4. Select a radio station from the list.

Manually Changing Radio Stations



Rotate the control to change radio stations.

Note: *You can change the radio frequency by using the seek buttons.*

Automatically Changing Radio Stations

Press to seek the next station up the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek up the frequency band.

Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.

Storing a Radio Station

Press and hold one of the preset buttons on the touchscreen.

Note: *The radio briefly mutes to indicate the station has been stored.*

AUDIO UNIT CLOCK AND DATE DISPLAYS - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2.5

Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Select ***Clock***.
2. Adjust the clock.

CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH® DEVICE - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2.5

Go to the settings menu on your device and switch ***Bluetooth®*** on.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing


Select the settings options on the feature bar.

1. Select ***Bluetooth***.
2. Switch ***Bluetooth®*** on.
3. Select ***Add a Bluetooth Device***.

Note: *A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle on your device.*

4. Select your vehicle on your device.

Note: *A number appears on your device and on the touchscreen.*

5. Confirm that the number on your device matches the number on the touchscreen.

Note: *The touchscreen indicates that you have successfully paired your device.*

STREAMING BLUETOOTH AUDIO - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2.5

Check the compatibility of your device on the local Ford website.

Pair your device. See **Connecting a Bluetooth® Device** (page 376).


Select the audio option on the feature bar.

Select ***Sources***.


Select the ***Bluetooth®*** option.


Press the button to play the track. Press the button again to pause the track.


Press the button to skip to the next track.

Press and hold the button to fast forward through the track.


Press the button once to return to the beginning of the track. Repeatedly press the button to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold the button to fast rewind.

PLAYING MEDIA FROM A USB DEVICE - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2.5

Supported File Formats

The system supports the following file formats:

- MP3, M4A, M4B, WMA, WAV, AAC, FLAC, APE and AIFF audio file formats.
- ext2, exFAT, FAT, FAT32, NTFS and HFS+ file systems.

Selecting the USB Device

Connect your device to the USB port.


Select the audio option on the feature bar.

Select ***Sources***.


Select the USB option.

Playing from the USB Device


Press the button to play a track. Press the button again to pause the track.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Press the button to skip to the next track.

Press and hold the button to fast forward through the track.

Press the button once to return to the beginning of a track.

Repeatedly press the button to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold the button to fast rewind through the track.

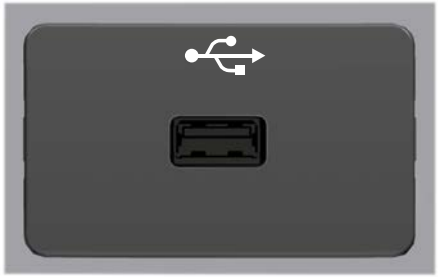
Sorting by Categories

You can also sort and play music by specific categories, for example artist or album.

USB PORT

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

USB A



USB C



The USB port allows you to plug in media playing devices, memory sticks and charge devices.

Note: *We recommend using only USB-IF certified cables and adapters. Non-certified cables and adapters may not work.*

Locating the USB Ports

The USB ports may be in the following locations:

- Inside the media bin.
- Inside the center console.
- On the lower instrument panel.

Note: *The number and type of USB ports may vary depending on your vehicle.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Note: *Not all USB ports in your vehicle have data transfer capabilities. See* ***Auxiliary Power Points*** *(page 159).*

APPS - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2.5

Note: *We recommend that you check your data plan before using your apps through the system. Using them could result in additional charges.*

Note: *We recommend that you check the app provider's terms and conditions and privacy policy before using their app.*

Note: *Make sure that you have an active account for apps that you want to use through the system.*

Note: *Some apps will work with no setup. Others require you to configure some personal settings before you can use them.*

Using Apple CarPlay

Switching Apple CarPlay On

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

Note: *Certain features of the system are not available when you are using Apple CarPlay.*

Switching Apple CarPlay Off



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Select ***Apple CarPlay Preferences***.
2. Disable Apple CarPlay.

Using Apps on an iOS Device

Note: *For more information about available apps, refer to the local Ford website.*

When you start an app through the system for the first time, you could be asked to grant certain permissions. You can review and change the permissions that you have granted at any time when your vehicle is not moving.



Select the apps option on the feature bar.

1. Switch Apple CarPlay off.
2. Connect your device to a USB port.
3. Start the apps on your device that you want to use through the system.

Note: *If you close the apps on your device, you will not be able to use them through the system.*

4. Select ***Find mobile apps***.

Note: *The system searches and connects to compatible apps that are running on your device.*

5. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

Using Android Auto

Switching Android Auto On

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

Note: *You might need to enable Android Auto from the settings menu.*

Note: *Certain features of the system are not available when you are using Android Auto.*

Switching Android Auto Off



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Select ***Android Auto Preferences***.
2. Disable Android Auto.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Using Apps on an Android Device

Note: *For more information about available apps, refer to the local Ford website.*

When you start an app through the system for the first time, you could be asked to grant certain permissions. You can review and change the permissions that you have granted at any time when your vehicle is not moving.



Select the apps option on the feature bar.

1. Switch Android Auto off.
2. Pair your device.
3. Start the apps on your device that you want to use through the system.

Note: *If you close the apps on your device, you will not be able to use them through the system.*

4. Select ***Find mobile apps***.

Note: *The system searches and connects to compatible apps that are running on your device.*

5. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Apps Troubleshooting

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
The system cannot find any apps.	– Incompatible device. • You will need an Android device with OS 2.3 or higher or an iOS 3GS device with iOS 5.0 or higher. Pair and connect your Android device to find AppLink compatible apps. Connect your iOS device to a USB port to find AppLink compatible apps.
I have a compatible device and it is correctly connected but the system still cannot find any apps.	– AppLink compatible apps not installed on your device. • Download and install the latest version of the app. – AppLink compatible apps not running on your device. • Start the apps to allow the system to find them and make sure you sign in to any apps if required. – Incorrect app settings. • Check and adjust the app settings on your device and allow the system to access the app if required.
I have a compatible device, it is correctly connected and my apps are running but the system still cannot find any apps.	– Apps failed to fully close. • Restart the apps and try again.
I have an Android device that is correctly connected, I have restarted my apps and they are running but the system still cannot find them.	– An issue on some older versions of the Android operating system could result in apps not being found. • Switch ***Bluetooth®*** off and on again to force the system to reconnect to your device.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I have an iOS device that is correctly connected, I have restarted my apps and they are running but the system still cannot find them.	– Cable connection issue. • Disconnect the cable from your device, wait for a moment and then connect it again to force the system to reconnect to your device.
I have an Android device running a media app which the system has found but I cannot hear the sound or the sound is very quiet.	– Device volume is low. • Turn the volume up on your device.
I have an Android device running a number of compatible apps but the system cannot find all of them.	– Device limitation. Some Android devices have a limited number of ***Bluetooth®*** ports that apps can use to connect. If you have more apps running on your device than the number of available ***Bluetooth®*** ports, the system cannot find all of them. • Close some of the apps to allow the system to find those that you want to use.

USING VOICE RECOGNITION - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2.5

Phone Voice Service

This system allows you to use the voice recognition features of your phone and focus on your driving.



Press the voice control button on the steering wheel.

Note: *This only works when connected via **Bluetooth®**. See **Connecting a Bluetooth® Device** (page 376).*

Note: *When using voice recognition use the language set on the device.*

Note: *We recommend that you check your data plan before using your phone voice service through the system. Using them could result in additional charges.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

AUDIO SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2.5

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
The system is not functioning.	• You can reset the system to restore functionality that has stopped working. • The system reset is designed to restore functionality and does not delete any personal data that you have stored.
I want to delete personal data from the system.	• A master reset is required to restore the system back to factory settings. • This deletes any personal data that you have stored.
The system is not up to date.	• The latest version has not been installed. • You can download the latest version or set the system to automatically update.

Resetting the System

1. Simultaneously press and hold the seek up and the audio unit power buttons until the screen goes black.
2. Wait three minutes to allow the system to complete the reset.

Updating the System

Note: *We may need to update operating system software on your vehicle, including security updates and bug fixes, to keep connected services current, like Vehicle Hotspot, without prior notice to you.*

Updating the System Using a USB Drive

Downloading an Update

1. Go to the system update page on the local Ford website.
2. Download the update.

Note: *The website notifies you if an update is available.*

3. Insert a USB drive into your computer.

Note: *The USB drive needs to be empty and meet the minimum requirements detailed on the website.*

4. Follow the instructions provided to download the update to the USB drive.

Installing an Update

Note: *You can use the system when an installation is in progress.*

1. Disconnect all other USB devices from the USB ports.
2. Connect the USB drive with the update to a USB port.

Note: *Installation starts automatically within 10 minutes.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Updating the System Using a Wi-Fi Network Connection

Connecting to a Wi-Fi Network



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Select ***Wi-Fi***.
2. Select ***View Available Networks***.
3. Select an available network.

Note: *Enter the network password to connect to a secure network.*

Switching Automatic System Updates On



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Select ***Automatic Updates***.
2. Switch automatic system updates on.

The system is now set to check for and receive system updates when it is connected to a Wi-Fi network.

Note: *You can use the system when a download is in progress.*

Note: *If the system is disconnected from the Wi-Fi network when a download is in progress, the download continues the next time the system is connected to a Wi-Fi network.*

Master Reset



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Select ***General***.
2. Select ***Master Reset***.
3. Select ***Continue***.

Note: *If you carry out a master reset, the system does not remove your vehicle from your vehicle network carrier's account. To remove your vehicle from the account, contact your vehicle network carrier.*

Note: *If you carry out a master reset, the system removes any authorized users and personal data.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

About SYNC

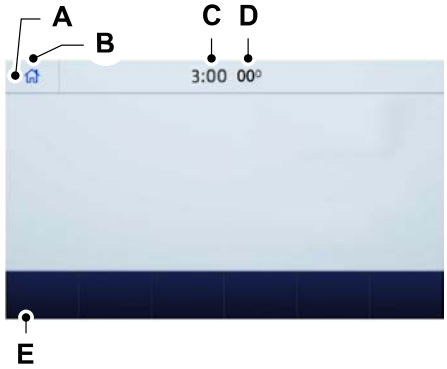
The system allows you to interact with the entertainment, information and communication systems on your vehicle using voice commands and a touchscreen. The system provides easy interaction with audio, phone, navigation, mobile apps and settings.

Note: *You can switch the system on and use it for up to an hour without switching the ignition on.*

Note: *You can use the system after you switch the ignition off for up to 10 minutes or until you open a door.*

Note: *For your safety, some features are speed-dependent. Their use is limited to when your vehicle speed is less than 5 km/h.*

Using the Touchscreen



A Status bar.
B Home screen.
C Clock. See **Settings** (page 413).
D Outside air temperature.
E Feature bar.

Status Bar


Cell phone microphone muted.


Audio system muted.


Software update installed.


Wi-Fi connected.


Cell phone roaming.


Text message received.


Emergency Assistance off.


Cell phone network signal strength.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing


Vehicle data sharing on.


Vehicle location sharing on.


Vehicle data and vehicle location sharing on.


Traffic data source: Live traffic.


Traffic data source: Traffic broadcast.


Wireless charger active.

Feature Bar


Select to use the radio, a USB, a media player or a Bluetooth device. See **Entertainment** (page 395).


Select to adjust climate settings. See **Climate** (page 397).


Select to make calls and access the phonebook on your cell phone. See **Phone** (page 400).


Select to use the navigation system. See **Navigation** (page 402).


Select to search for and use compatible apps on your iOS or Android device. See **Apps** (page 412).


Select to adjust system settings. See **Settings** (page 413).

Cleaning the Touchscreen

See **Cleaning the Interior** (page 331).

Updating the System

Updating the System Using a USB Drive

Downloading an Update

1. Go to the SYNC update page on the local Ford website.
2. Download the update.

Note: *The website notifies you if an update is available.*

3. Insert a USB drive into your computer.

Note: *The USB drive needs to be empty and meet the minimum requirements detailed on the website.*

4. Follow the instructions provided to download the update to the USB drive.

Installing an Update

Note: *You can use the system when installation is in progress.*

1. Disconnect all other USB devices from the USB ports.
2. Connect the USB drive with the update to a USB port.

Note: *Installation starts automatically within 10 minutes.*

Updating the System Using a Wi-Fi Network Connection

Switching Automatic System Updates On

1. Select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Automatic Updates***.
3. Switch ***Automatic System Updates*** on.

The system is now set to check for and receive system updates when it is connected to a Wi-Fi network.

Note: *You can use the system when download is in progress.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Note: *If the system is disconnected from the Wi-Fi network when download is in progress, the download continues the next time the system is connected to a Wi-Fi network.*

Connecting to a Wi-Fi Network

See **Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network** (page 367).

Additional Information and Assistance

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer or refer to the local Ford website.

USING VOICE RECOGNITION

The system allows you to interact with the entertainment, information and communication systems on your vehicle using voice commands. This allows you to keep your hands on the steering wheel and focus on what is in front of you.



Press the voice control button on the steering wheel and wait for the voice prompt.

Note: *Press the voice control button again to interrupt a voice prompt and begin speaking.*

Note: *Turn the volume control when a voice prompt plays to adjust the volume.*

Note: *Press and hold the voice control button on the steering wheel to use Siri on your iOS device.*

The following voice commands are designed to help you from any screen:

- ***List of Commands***
- ***Help***

The following tables list some of the more frequently used voice commands. For a complete list of voice commands, refer to the local Ford website.

General

Voice Command	Description
___ List of Commands	Get a list of voice commands for a specific feature.[1]
Cancel	Cancel an active voice session.
___ Help	Get a list of voice commands for a specific feature.[1]
Go back	Return to the previous screen.
Main Menu	Go to the main menu.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Voice Command	Description
Next Page	Go to the next page.
Previous Page	Go to the previous page.

[1] Add the name of the feature to the command.

Entertainment

Audio Source

Voice Command	Description
Radio	Use the radio.
CD Player	Use the CD player.
Bluetooth Stereo	Use a Bluetooth device.
USB	Use a USB or media player.

Radio

Voice Command	Description
AM	Listen to AM radio.
AM ___	Tune to a specific AM frequency.[1]
DAB	Listen to DAB radio.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Voice Command	Description
FM	Listen to FM radio.
FM ___	Tune to a specific FM frequency.[1]

[1] Add the radio frequency to two decimal places to the command.

USB and Media Player

Voice Command	Description
Play Album ___	Play your music by category.[1]
Play Artist ___	
Play Audiobook ___	
Play Genre ___	
Play Playlist ___	
Play Podcast ___	
Play Song ___	
Browse All Albums	Browse music on a USB device.
Browse All Artists	
Browse All Audiobooks	
Browse All Genres	

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Voice Command	Description
Browse All Playlists	
Browse All Podcasts	
Browse All Songs	
Browse Album ___	Browse your music by category on a USB device.[1]
Browse Artist ___	
Browse Audiobook ___	
Browse Genre ___	
Browse Playlist ___	
Browse Podcast ___	

[1] Add an album name, artist name, audiobook name, genre name, playlist name, podcast name or track name to the command. Say the name exactly as it appears on your device.

Phone

Voice Command	Description
Pair Phone	Pair a cell phone or Bluetooth enabled device.
Redial	Redial the last number that you dialed.
Dial ___	Dial a number.[1]

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Voice Command	Description
Call ___	Call a specific contact from your phonebook.[2]
Call ___ ___	Call a specific contact from your phonebook at a specific location.[3]
Listen to Message	Listen to a text message.
Listen to Message ___	Listen to a specific text message from a list of text messages.
Reply to Message	Reply to the last text message.

[1] Add the number you want to dial to the command.
[2] Add a contact name from your phonebook to the command. Say the first and last name of your contact exactly as it appears on your device.
[3] Add a contact name and location from your phonebook to the command. Say the first and last name of your contact exactly as it appears on your device.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Navigation (If Equipped)

Setting a Destination

Voice Command	Description
Find an Address	Enter a destination address. When prompted, provide the house number, the street and city.
Find a POI	Search for a point of interest by name or by category.
Destination Nearest ___	Search for a nearby point of interest by category.[1]
Find a POI Category	Search for a point of interest category.[1]
Drive Home	Set your saved home address as your destination.
Drive to Work	Set your saved place of work as your destination.
Show Previous Destinations	Display and select from a list of previous destinations.
Show Favorites	Display and select from a list of favorite destinations.

[1] Add a point of interest category or the name of a major brand or chain to the command.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Route Guidance

Voice Command	Description
Cancel Route	Cancel the current route.
Detour	Select an alternate route.
Repeat Instruction	Repeat the last guidance prompt.
Show Route	Display an overview of the route.
Show Map	Display the map on the touchscreen.
North Up	Display a two-dimensional map with north toward the top of the touchscreen.
Heading Up	Display a two-dimensional map with the direction you are traveling toward the top of the touchscreen.
Show 3D	Display a three-dimensional map with the direction you are traveling toward the front.

Apps

General

Voice Command	Description
Mobile Applications	Start an app. The system prompts your for the app name.
List Applications	Get a list of apps running on your device.
Find Applications	Search and connect to apps running on your device.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Active App

Voice Command	Description
___ Help	Get a list of voice commands for a specific app.[1]
Exit ___	Close an app.[1]

[1] Add an app name to the command.

Voice Settings

Voice Command	Description
Voice Settings	Go to the voice settings menu.
Interaction Mode Novice	Switch long voice prompts on.
Interaction Mode Advanced	Switch short voice prompts on.
Phone Confirmation On	Switch call confirmation on. The system prompts you to confirm before making a call.
Phone Confirmation Off	Switch call confirmation off. The system does not prompt you to confirm before making a call.
Voice Command Lists On	Switch the display of voice commands on.
Voice Command Lists Off	Switch the display of voice commands off.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Automatic Blower Motor Speed Reduction

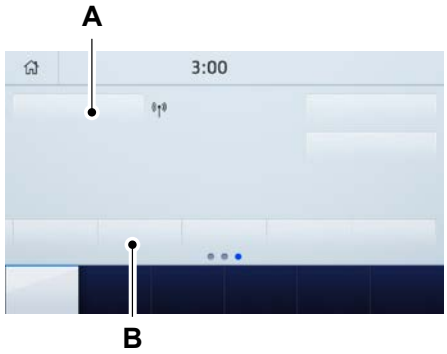
If necessary, the system decreases the blower motor speed when you are using voice commands to reduce the amount of background noise in your vehicle. It returns to normal when you are finished.

Switching Automatic Blower Motor Speed Reduction Off

Simultaneously press the ***A/C*** and recirculated air buttons.

ENTERTAINMENT

Select the audio option on the feature bar.



A Audio source. Select to choose a different audio source.

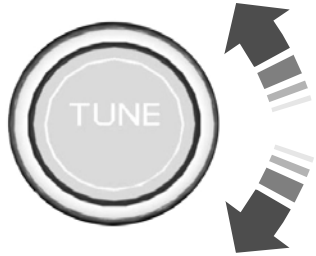
B Presets. Swipe left to view more presets.

You can access these options using the touchscreen or voice commands.

Using the Radio

Setting an AM/FM Radio Station

1. Select ***Sources***.
2. Select ***AM*** or ***FM***.



3. Rotate the control to change the frequency.

Selecting a FM Radio Station From a List

1. Select ***Sources***.
2. Select ***FM***.
3. Select ***Browse***.
4. Select a radio station from the list.

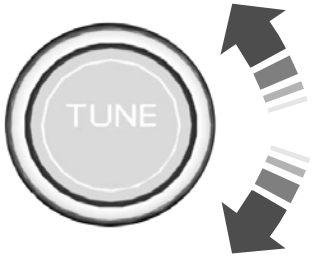
Selecting a Digital Radio Station From a List

1. Select ***Sources***.
2. Select ***DAB***.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

3. Select ***Browse***.
4. Select an ensemble.
5. Select a radio station from the list.

Manually Changing Digital Radio Stations



Rotate the control to change the station.

Automatically Changing Radio Stations

Press to seek the next station up the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek up the frequency band.

Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.

Storing a Radio Station

Press and hold one of the preset buttons.

Note: *The radio briefly mutes to indicate the station has been stored.*

Note: *You can add additional preset pages using the settings option on the feature bar.*

Switching Traffic Announcements On

Select ***Traffic (TA)***.

Note: *If you switch traffic announcements on, traffic announcements broadcast by radio stations interrupt the current audio source to help you plan your route.*

Streaming Music From a Bluetooth Device

Check the compatibility of your device on the local Ford website.

Pair your device. See **Phone** (page 400).

Select ***Sources***.

Select Bluetooth.

Searching for Tracks on a Bluetooth Device

Select ***Browse***.

Select a track.

Note: *Select the cover art to view information about the current track.*

Playing Tracks on a Bluetooth Device in a Random Order

Select to play tracks in a random order.

Repeating Tracks on a Bluetooth Device

Select the repeat icon to repeat tracks.

Note: *You can repeat one track or all tracks on an audio format Bluetooth device. You can repeat one track, all tracks or all tracks in one folder on a Bluetooth device.*

Note: *A small number one appears next to the repeat icon to indicate that a track is set to repeat. A small folder icon appears next to it to indicate that a folder is set to repeat.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Playing Music From a USB or Media Player

Connect your device to a USB port.

Select ***Sources***.



Select USB.

Note: *The system indexes your music before you can play it.*

Searching for Tracks on a USB or Media Player

Select ***Browse***.

Select a track.

Note: *Select the cover art to view information about the current track.*

Note: *You can also browse by album, artist, audiobook, genre, playlist, podcast or track name.*

Playing Tracks on a USB or Media Player in a Random Order



Select to play tracks in a random order.

Repeating Tracks on a USB or Media Player



Select the repeat icon to repeat tracks.

Note: *You can repeat one track or all tracks on an audio format USB or media player. You can repeat one track, all tracks or all tracks in one folder on a USB or media player.*

Note: *A small number one appears next to the repeat icon to indicate that a track is set to repeat. A small folder icon appears next to it to indicate that a folder is set to repeat.*

Supported Devices

The system supports most USB and media players, including iOS and Android devices.

Supported File Formats

The system supports the following file formats:

- MP3, MP4, WMA, WAV, AAC, AIFF, APE, DSD, and FLAC audio file formats.
- MP3, WMA, WAV, M4A, M4B, AAC, and FLAC file extensions.
- FAT, exFAT, and NTFS file systems.

Audio File Metadata

The system organizes files on your USB or media player by metadata tags. Metadata tags contain information about the file. If the metadata tags for the files on your USB or media player contain no information, the system classifies them as unknown. The system can index up to 50000 tracks on a USB device or media player, and up to 10 devices.

CLIMATE

Touch the climate button on the touchscreen to access your climate control features.

Note: *You can switch temperature units between Fahrenheit and Celsius. See* ***Settings*** *(page 413).*

Accessing the Climate Control Menu



Touch the button to access additional controls for the front climate system.

Directing the Airflow



Touch the button to direct airflow to the windshield air vents and de-mister.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing


Touch the button to direct airflow to the instrument panel air vents.


Touch the button to direct airflow to the footwell air vents.

You can direct air through any combination of these air vents.

Setting the Blower Motor Speed


Touch up or down to increase or decrease the volume of air that circulates in your vehicle.

Setting the Temperature

Touch up or down on the left-hand temperature control to set the left-hand temperature.

Note: *This control also adjusts the right-hand side temperature when you switch off dual zone mode.*

Touch up or down on the right-hand temperature control to set the right-hand temperature.

Switching Auto Mode On and Off



Touch the button to switch on automatic operation, then set the temperature.

The system adjusts the blower motor speed, air distribution, air conditioning operation, and outside or recirculated air to reach and maintain the temperature you have set.

Switching the Air Conditioning On and Off



A pop-up appears on the screen to display the air conditioning options.

MAX A/C: Touch the button to activate and maximize cooling. The driver and passenger temperatures are set to LO, recirculated air flows through the instrument panel vents, air conditioning automatically turns on and the fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed.

A/C: Touch to switch the air conditioning on or off. Use A/C with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency.

Note: *In certain conditions, such as maximum defrost, the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though you switch off the air conditioning.*

Switching the Climate Control On and Off


Touch the button.

Switching the Climate Controlled Seats On and Off



Touch the button to cycle through the various climate controlled seat settings.

Switching Dual Zone Mode On and Off



Touch the button to switch on temperature control for the right-hand side of the vehicle.

Switching the Heated Exterior Mirrors On and Off


Touch the button.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Switching the Heated Windshield On and Off



Touch the button to clear the windshield of thin ice and fog. The heated windshield turns off after a short period of time.

Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off



Touch the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog.

Switching the Heated Seats On and Off



Touch the button to cycle through the various heat settings.

Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off



Touch the button.

Switching Maximum Air Conditioning On and Off



Touch the button for maximum cooling.

Recirculated air flows through the instrument panel air vents, air conditioning turns on and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off



Touch the button for maximum defrosting.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

Note: *To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.*

Note: *The heated rear window also turns on when you select maximum defrost.*

Switching Recirculated Air On and Off



Touch the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air.

The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This may reduce the time needed to cool the interior, when used with ***A/C***, and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.

Note: *Recirculated air may turn off, or prevent you from switching on, in all air flow modes except **MAX A/C** to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off in various air distribution control combinations during hot weather to improve cooling efficiency.*

Switching the Ventilated Seats On and Off



Touch the button to cycle through the various ventilated seat settings.

Accessing Rear Climate Controls



Touch the button to access additional controls for the rear climate system.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Rear Climate Control Lock Indicator



Touch the button.

When on, you can only operate the rear passenger settings through the front controls.

Switching Rear Auto Mode On and Off



Touch the button to switch on rear automatic operation, then set the temperature.

Switching the Rear Climate Controlled Seats On and Off



Touch the button to cycle through the various climate controlled seat settings.

Switching the Rear Heated Seats On and Off



Touch the button to cycle through the various heat settings.

Switching the Rear Ventilated Seats On and Off



Touch the button to cycle through the various ventilated seat settings.

PHONE

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Check the compatibility of your device on the local Ford website.

Pairing Your Cell Phone for the First Time

Go to the settings menu on your cell phone and switch Bluetooth on. Make sure your cell phone is discoverable. See your cell phone's user manual.



Select the phone option on the feature bar.

1. Select ***Add Phone***.

Note: *A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle on your cell phone.*

2. Select your vehicle on your cell phone.

Note: *A number appears on your cell phone and on the touchscreen.*

3. Confirm that the number on your cell phone matches the number on the touchscreen.

Note: *The touchscreen indicates that you have successfully paired your cell phone.*

4. Download the phonebook from your cell phone when you are prompted.

Note: *If you pair more than one cell phone, use the phone settings to specify the primary phone. You can change this setting at any time.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Using Your Cell Phone

Recent Call List

Display and select an entry from a list of previous calls.

Contacts

Display a smart search form to look up your contacts. Use the List button to alphabetically sort your contacts.

Your phone

Change ring tones, alerts or pair another cell phone.

Change device

Display the list of paired or connected devices that you can select.

Do Not Disturb

Reject incoming calls and switch ring tones and alerts off.

Phone Keypad

Directly dial a number.

Text Messages

Display the cell phone messages.

Siri

Connect to Siri on your iOS device.

Phone Voice Assistant

Connect to the phone voice service on your Android device.

Text Messaging

Setting Text Message Notification

iOS

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select Bluetooth.
3. Select the information icon to the right of your vehicle.
4. Switch text message notification on.

Android

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select Bluetooth.
3. Select the profiles option.
4. Select the phone profile.
5. Switch text message notification on.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Using Text Messaging

Menu Item	Description
Hear It	Hear the text message.
View	View the text message.
Call	Call the sender.
Reply	Reply to the text message with a standard text message.

Apple CarPlay

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

Note: *Certain features of the system are not available when you are using Apple CarPlay.*

Switching Apple CarPlay Off

1. Select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Apple CarPlay Preferences***.
3. Switch ***Apple CarPlay*** off.

Android Auto

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

Note: *You might need to enable Android Auto from the settings menu.*

Note: *Certain features of the system are not available when you are using Android Auto.*

Switching Android Auto Off

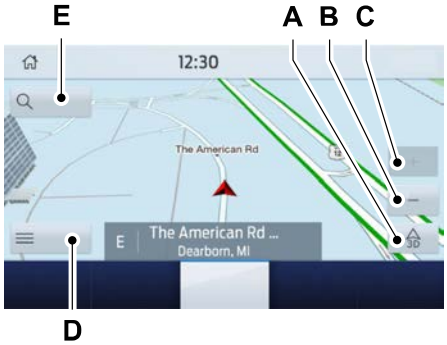
1. Select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Android Auto***.
3. Switch ***Android Auto*** off.

NAVIGATION (IF EQUIPPED)

Note: *For more information, refer to the local Ford website.*



Select the navigation option on the feature bar.



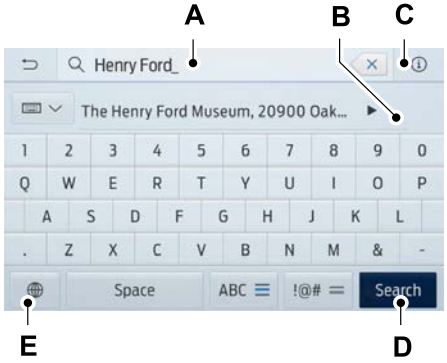
A Map view menu.
B Zoom out.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

C Zoom in.
D Route guidance menu.
E Destination entry menu.

Setting a Destination

Setting a Destination Using the Text Entry Screen



A Text entry field.
B Automatic suggestions based on the text you enter.
C Information icon.
D Search.
E Keyboard settings.

Note: *Select one of the suggestions to copy the detail to the text entry field.*

Note: *You can enter a destination in a number of formats, **city street number**, **city number street**, zip code or point of interest.*

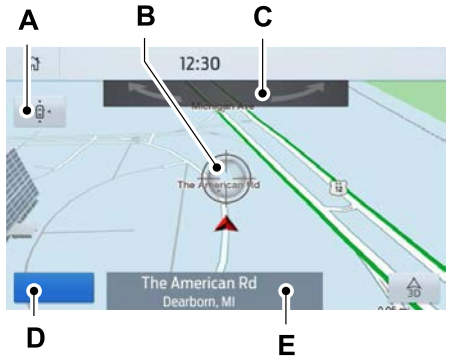
Note: *You do not have to enter the destination country.*

Note: *To enter mutated vowels or accented characters, for example **ä** or **é**, press and hold the corresponding character on the keyboard.*

Select ***Search***.

Select ***Start*** to begin route guidance.

Setting a Destination Using the Map Screen



A Re-center the map.
B Selected location.
C 3D map rotation. Swipe left or right.
D Start route guidance.
E Destination name.

Select the location on the map.

Select ***Start*** to begin route guidance.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Changing the Format of the Map

Display the map in one of the following formats:

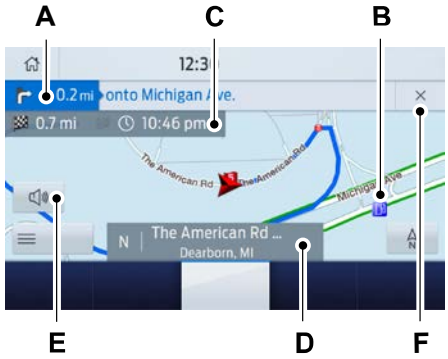
- A two-dimensional map with the direction you are traveling toward the top of the screen.
- A two-dimensional map with north toward the top of the screen.
- A three-dimensional map with the direction you are traveling toward the front.

Zoom

Display more or less detail on the map.

Note: *You can use pinch gestures to zoom in and out. Place two fingers on the screen and move them apart to zoom in. Place two fingers on the screen and bring them together to zoom out.*

Route Guidance



A Turn indicator. Select to hear the last guidance prompt.

B Point of interest.

C Estimated time of arrival, distance to destination or time to destination.

D Current road.

E Mute guidance prompts.

F Cancel route guidance.

Note: *To change guidance prompt volume, turn the volume control when a guidance prompt plays.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Route Guidance Menu

Menu Item	Description
Screen View	Adjust your map preferences for when route guidance is active.
Full Map	View a full screen map when route guidance is active.
Highway Exit Info	View exit information for your current route.
Turn List	View the turn list for your current route. Select a road to avoid it.
Traffic List	View traffic nearby or on your current route.[1]
Navigation Settings	Adjust navigation settings.
Where Am I?	View information about your current location.
Cancel Route	Cancel route guidance.
View Route	View the entire current route on the map.
Detour	View an alternative route compared to your current one.
Edit Waypoints	Change the order or remove waypoints.
Optimize Order	The system determines the order of waypoints for you.
Go	Go to the next screen and start the new route.
Search	Enter a destination address.
Home	Set your saved home address as your destination
Work	Set your saved place of work as your destination.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Menu Item	Description
Favorites	Display and select from a list of favorite destinations.
Previous Destinations	Display and select from a list of previous destinations.
POI	Display the point of interest categories.

[1] Reliant upon traffic message channel or live traffic.

Adjusting the Guidance Prompt Volume

Turn the volume control when a guidance prompt plays to adjust the volume.

Note: *If you have inadvertently adjusted the volume to zero, press the turn indicator button to play the last voice prompt and then adjust the volume to the desired level.*

Muting Guidance Prompts



Select the mute option on the screen to mute guidance prompts.

Note: *The system mutes the next and all future guidance prompts.*

Adding Waypoints

You can add a waypoint to a navigation route as a destination along your route. You can add up to five waypoints.

1. Select the search option on the map.
2. Set a destination.
3. Select the flag icon.
4. Select ***Go***.

Canceling Route Guidance

Canceling Route Guidance From the Route Guidance Menu



Select the route guidance menu option on the active guidance screen.

Select ***Cancel Route***.

Canceling Route Guidance From the Main Map

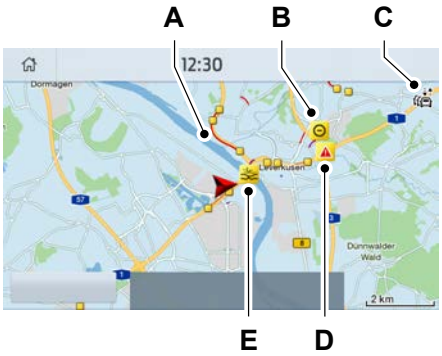


Select the icon in the upper right-hand corner of the main map to cancel route guidance.

Live Traffic (If Equipped)

Live traffic provides near real-time traffic information to help you plan the fastest route to your destination. You must have an active subscription for Live Traffic.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing



A Traffic congestion.
B Road closure.
C Live traffic active.
D Urgent warning.
E Traffic incident.

Switching Live Traffic On

Note: *Make sure that the modem is enabled. See* ***Connected Vehicle*** *(page 367).*

1. Select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***FordPass Connect***.
3. Select ***Connectivity Settings***.
4. Switch ***Vehicle Connectivity*** on.
5. Switch ***Location*** on.
6. Switch ***Vehicle data & Remote ctrl*** on.
7. Switch ***Live Traffic*** on.

Navigation Map Updates

Please check the local Ford website or contact your dealership for navigation map updates.

HERE is the digital map provider for the navigation application. If you find map data errors, you can report them directly to HERE by visiting www.here.com. HERE evaluates all reported map errors and responds with the result of their investigation by e-mail.

ELECTRIC VEHICLE INFORMATION

Power Flow

The Power Flow information for your plug-in hybrid vehicle is available through the Home screen or under Apps.

Vehicle Operational States

Power will flow to or from the front and rear wheels depending on operational state and drive conditions.

- Idling: The vehicle is running and in Park (P). The engine and, or the high voltage battery are on.
- Electric Driving: The vehicle is running and in Drive (D) or Neutral (N). The high voltage battery provides power to the wheels.
- Hybrid Driving: The vehicle is running and in Drive (D) or Neutral (N). The engine and the high voltage battery provide power to the wheels.
- Engine Driving: The vehicle is running and in Drive (D) or Neutral (N). The engine provides power to the wheels.
- Regenerative Braking: The vehicle is running in Drive gear and is slowing down. Power captured by the regenerative braking system is sent back to the high voltage battery.
- Charging: The vehicle is plugged in and the high voltage battery is being charged.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Engine On Due To

The following conditions help to explain why the engine is on, and what you can do to allow all electric operation.

- Drive Power: The engine is on due to accelerator pedal pressure or speed control activation. Reduce pressure on the accelerator pedal or switch off the speed control to return to full electric mode.
- High Speed: The engine is on because the vehicle speed exceeds the level for full electric operation. Reduce the speed to return to electric operation.
- Heater Setting: The engine is on because of the heater setting. Reduce or turn off the heater setting to return to electric operation.
- Neutral Gear: The engine is on because the vehicle is in Neutral (N). Shift out of neutral gear to return to electric operation.
- Engine Cold: The engine is on because it is cold. The vehicle returns to electric operation once the engine is sufficiently warm.
- Battery Charging: The engine is on to charge the high-voltage battery. The vehicle returns to electric operation once the battery is charged.
- Low Gear: The engine is on because the vehicle is in low gear. Shift out of low gear to return to electric operation.
- Normal Operation: The engine is on to optimize vehicle operation. The vehicle returns to electric operation when possible.
- Low Use: The engine is on to maintain engine oil quality. The vehicle returns to electric operation when low engine use mode is complete. See **Plug-In Hybrid Vehicle Operation** (page 171).
- Engine Braking Active: The engine is on to provide increased powertrain braking. This can occur when you turn on the grade assist feature, when speed control is on or when driving with your foot off the accelerator pedal. Turning off grade assist or speed control may allow the vehicle to return to electric operation.
- Battery Temperature: The engine is on due to high or low high-voltage battery temperature. This is a normal operating condition. The vehicle returns to electric operation when possible.
- Drive Mode: The engine is on due to the drive mode selection. Select an appropriate drive mode for electric only operation.

Charge Settings



The Charge Settings information for your plug-in hybrid vehicle is available through the Home screen or under Vehicle Settings. To Improve your charging experience, your vehicle has the following convenience features.

Charge Times

Once you set up Charge Times for a specific charging location, your vehicle prioritizes charging based on your preferred time settings. You can set two preferred charging time windows for weekdays and two for weekends. This feature allows you to take advantage of electric utility rate plans that offer lower pricing during certain times of day. Contact your utility company to see what plans are available.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Note: *You can also set up and use these features using the FordPass app.*

Departure Times

Setting Departure Times allows you to control charging schedules and have the vehicle cabin heated or cooled while plugged in, so your vehicle is ready to drive when you are. By setting a departure time your vehicle can use your charge time settings to minimize your electricity costs but still prioritize finishing charging before your scheduled departure. A calendar view allows you to program two departure times per day for each day of the week.

Note: *You can also set up and use these features using the FordPass app.*

Charging Status

Displays the present state of the charging system. See **Charging the High Voltage Battery** (page 189).

Charging Status	Description and Action
Will charge when plugged in.	Your vehicle is unplugged and starts charging when plugged in.
Will wait for preferred charge time.	Your vehicle is unplugged at a saved location with Charge Times enabled. Charging is scheduled to start at the time displayed based on your charge time settings. You must plug in prior to the start time shown for the vehicle to begin charging at that time.
Waiting for preferred charge time.	Your vehicle is plugged in at a saved location with Charge Times enabled. Charging starts at the time displayed, which is based on your Charge Times settings.
Charging.	Your vehicle is plugged in and using power to charge the high voltage battery or run electrical systems.
Charged.	Your vehicle is finished charging.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Charging Status	Description and Action
Vehicle charge fault.	Your vehicle is plugged in and there is a fault within the vehicle charging system. Unplug and plug back in. If the fault is still present, contact your dealer.
Charge station fault.	Your vehicle is plugged in and a fault is detected with the charge station or charging cord. Check the charging cord and the charge station or electrical supply.
Charge station not detected.	A charging coupler is plugged into the vehicle but there is no connection with a charging power source.
Incompatible charge station.	Your vehicle is plugged in but cannot communicate with the charging station. Contact the station provider.
Charge station paused.	Your vehicle is plugged in and charging is paused at the charge station.

Charging Time Information

Displays estimates of how long your vehicle will take to fully charge when plugged into a high or low power charger.

- High power estimate: The minimum time to a 100% charge using a high power charger.
- Low power estimate: The longest time to a 100% charge using a low power charger.

When charging, the start and estimated end time are displayed. When your vehicle is not plugged in and at a location with Charge Times enabled, the start and end times display based on known charging power.

Note: *Charging durations and end times are only estimates. Certain conditions may result in longer charging times. See* ***Charging the High Voltage Battery*** *(page 189).*

High Voltage Battery State of Charge

Displays the remaining charge percentage with 100% representing the total amount of energy you can get from an external charge.

Plug and Charging Status

Displays the plug and charging status icons.


Not plugged in.


Plugged in and not currently charging.


Plugged in and charging.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing


Plugged in and waiting to charge based on charge time settings.

Charge Preferences

Touch the button to access Charge Time and Departure Time settings. Once set up, additional information and settings are displayed on the charge settings screen.

Charge Times On and Off Switch

This switch is visible when your vehicle is at a saved Charge Times location. Use the switch to turn your charge time settings on and off for this location.

Charge Times Location Name and Charging Time Information

The location name displays when your vehicle is at a saved Charge Times location. The charging start time is displayed along with the charging end time and associated charge level.

Departure Times On and Off Switch

This switch is visible when you have at least one departure time set. Use this switch to turn all departure times on and off. Switching departure times off does not delete your settings.

Next Departure Times and Cabin Temperature

Displays the next departure time and associated cabin temperature setting.

Charge Time Settings

Follow these steps to set a preferred charge time for a charging location.

1. Select Charge Preferences on the Charge Settings screen.
2. Select Charge Time Setup on the Edit Charge Preferences screen.
3. Select Add New Location on the Charge Times screen. You can also edit settings for previously saved locations from this screen.
4. Select an address from the Recent Charge Locations screen.
5. On the Confirm Location for Charge Times screen, you can edit the location name and set a max charge level as desired. Once you have your desired location name and max charge level, select Continue to Schedule.

Note: *Charging will stop when your vehicle reaches the max charge level.*

6. Select WEEKDAY or WEEKEND on the Preferred Charge Times screen.
7. On the Select preferred WEEKDAY or WEEKEND Charge Times screen, use the circular 24 hour clock to select your charging time windows. You can select up to two time windows by pressing and dragging across the hour buttons. When you have selected your preferred times then press Next to return to the Preferred Charge Times screen. Repeat for WEEKEND or WEEKDAY as desired. Once you are done setting preferred charge times, press Save.

Note: *Selecting all or none of the 24 hours results in any time of day given equal priority for charging.*

8. Your saved location now shows on the Charge Times screen. Select Done to return to the main charge settings screen. Whenever your vehicle is at a saved charging location the charge settings screen displays the location name, and the charging times are based on your Charge Time settings for that location plus the next Departure Time.

Note: *Reaching your max charge level by your next Departure Time is always the priority. When Charge Times are set, charging outside your preferred charging time windows could be necessary in order to finish by your next Departure Time.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Departure Time Settings

1. Select Charge Preferences on the Charge Settings screen.
2. Select Departure Time Setup on the Edit Charge Preferences screen.
3. Two time settings show for each day of the week on the Departure Times schedule screen. Select any one.
4. On the Departure Time settings screen, set your desired departure time, cabin temperature and days of the week to repeat. Press Save.
5. Your settings are now shown on the Departure Times schedule screen. Press Back two times to return to the main charge settings screen. The next departure time and cabin temperature setting display.

Note: *Cabin conditioning can perform differently depending on if you plug in with the included convenience cord or a higher power charging station. The power available for conditioning is limited to the charging station power available.*

Note: *Your vehicle may not always reach the set cabin temperature due to charging and ambient temperature conditions. This is normal operation.*

APPS

Note: *For more information about available apps, supported devices and troubleshooting, refer to our local website.*

When you start an app through the system for the first time, you could be asked to grant certain permissions. You can review and change the permissions that you have granted at any time when your vehicle is not moving. See **Settings** (page 413).

Note: *We recommend that you check your data plan before using your apps through the system. Using them could result in additional charges.*

Note: *We recommend that you check the app provider's terms and conditions and privacy policy before using their app.*

Note: *Make sure that you have an active account for apps that you want to use through the system.*

Note: *Some apps will work with no setup. Others require you to configure some personal settings before you can use them.*

Using Apps on an iOS Device



Select the apps option on the feature bar.

1. If your device is connected via USB, switch Apple CarPlay off. See **Phone** (page 400).
2. Connect your device to a USB port or pair and connect using Bluetooth.
3. If prompted to enable CarPlay, select ***Disable***.
4. Start the apps on your device that you want to use through SYNC.

Note: *If you close the apps on your device, you will not be able to use them through the system.*

5. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

Note: *Connect your device to a USB port if you want to use a navigation app. When using a navigation app, keep your device unlocked and the app open.*

Using Apps on an Android Device



Select the apps option on the feature bar.

1. If your device is connected via USB, switch Android Auto off. See **Phone** (page 400).
2. Switch on ***Enable Mobile Apps via USB*** in the Mobile Apps Settings tile.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

3. Pair your device. See **Phone** (page 400).
4. Start the apps on your device that you want to use through SYNC.

Note: *If you close the apps on your device, you will not be able to use them through the system.*

5. Select ***Find Mobile Apps***.

Note: *The system searches and connects to compatible apps that are running on your device.*

6. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

Note: *Mobile Apps on your device use the USB port to establish a connection with SYNC. Some devices may lose the ability to play music over USB when Mobile Apps are enabled.*

Using Mobile Navigation on an Android Device

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Switch Android Auto off. See **Phone** (page 400).
3. Switch on ***Enable Mobile Apps via USB*** in the Mobile Apps Settings tile.
4. Select the apps option on the feature bar.
5. Select the navigation app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

Note: *When using a navigation app, keep your device unlocked and the app open.*

Note: *Mobile Apps on your device use the USB port to establish a connection with SYNC. Some devices may lose the ability to play music over USB when Mobile Apps are enabled.*

SETTINGS



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

Select a tile to access the settings.



Select the option to display extra information.

Ambient Lighting

You can adjust the ambient lighting settings.

Android Auto

You can switch Android Auto on and off.

Apple CarPlay

You can switch Apple CarPlay on and off.

Audio

You can adjust the audio settings.

Automatic Updates

You can switch automatic updates on and off and adjust the settings.

Bluetooth

You can switch Bluetooth on and off and pair your cell phone.

Clock

You can adjust the clock settings.

Display

You can adjust display settings like brightness and auto dim.

Emergency Assistance

You can switch Emergency Assistance on and off.

FordPass

You can adjust the FordPass settings.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

General

You can adjust settings like language, measurement units, or reset the system.

Mobile Apps

You can adjust permissions, enable, disable, and update mobile apps.

Navigation (If Equipped)

You can adjust navigation settings like map preferences and route guidance.

Phone

You can connect and disconnect your device, or manage the connected device settings.

Seats (If Equipped)

You can adjust the position and the massage function of the seats.

Sound

You can adjust the sound settings.

Valet Mode (If Equipped)

You can enable and disable the valet mode.

Vehicle (If Equipped)

You can adjust the camera settings.

Voice Control

You can adjust the voice control settings.

Wi-Fi

You can switch Wi-Fi on and off and adjust the settings.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

SYNC™ 3 TROUBLESHOOTING

Voice Recognition

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
The system does not understand what I am saying.	– You are using the wrong voice commands. • See **Using Voice Recognition** (page 387). • For a complete list of voice commands, refer to the local Ford website. – You are speaking too soon. • Wait for the voice prompt before you speak.
The system does not understand the name of a track or artist.	– Device limitation. Bluetooth does not support voice commands. • Connect your device to a USB port. • If you have an iOS device, press and hold the voice control button on the steering wheel to use Siri to play specific tracks. – You are using the wrong voice commands. • See **Using Voice Recognition** (page 387). • For a complete list of voice commands, refer to the local Ford website. – You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device. • Say the name of the track or artist exactly as it appears on your device. Spell out any abbreviations in the name. The song or artist name may have some special characters that are not being recognized by the system. – The name contains special characters, for example *, - or +. • Rename the files on your device or use the touchscreen to select and play the track.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
The system does not understand the name of a contact in the phonebook on my device and calls the wrong contact.	– You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device. • Say the first and last name of the contact exactly as it appears on your device. Spell out any abbreviations in the name. – The name contains special characters, for example *, - or +. • Rename the contact on your device or use the touchscreen to select and call the contact.
The system does not understand foreign names of contacts in the phonebook on my device.	– You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device. • Say the first and last name of the contact exactly as it appears on your device. The system applies phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the names of contacts in the phonebook on your device. Select the name of the contact on the touchscreen and use the Hear it option to get an idea of how the system expects you to pronounce it.
The system voice prompts and the pronunciation of some words does not seem to be very accurate.	– Device limitation. • The system uses text-to-speech technology and uses a synthetically generated voice rather than pre-recorded human voice.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

USB and Bluetooth Audio

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot connect my device.	– Device malfunction. • Disconnect your device. Switch your device off, reset it and try again. – Cable connection issue. • Correctly connect the cable to your device and the vehicle USB port. – Incompatible cable. • Use the cable recommended by the manufacturer of your device. – Incorrect device settings. • Make sure that your device does not have an auto-install program or active security settings. • Check that your device is not set only to charge. – Device lock screen enabled. • Unlock your device before connecting it.
The system does not recognize my device.	– Device limitation. • Do not leave your device in your vehicle during very hot or very cold weather conditions.
The system does not understand the name of a track or artist.	– Device limitation. Bluetooth does not support voice commands. • Connect your device to a USB port. • If you have an iOS device, press and hold the voice control button on the steering wheel to use Siri to play specific tracks.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot stream audio from my Bluetooth device.	– Incompatible device. • Check the compatibility of your device on the local Ford website. – Device not connected. • Pair your device. See **Phone** (page 400). – Media player not running. • Start the media player on your device.
The system does not recognize the music on my device.	– Missing or incorrect audio file metadata, for example artist, song title, album or genre. • Repair the files on your device. – Corrupt files. • Repair the files on your device. – Copyright protected files. • Use a device that contains files that are not copyright protected. – Unsupported file format. • Repair or convert the files to a supported format. See **Entertainment** (page 395). – Device indexing required. • Re-index your device. See **Settings** (page 413). – Device lock screen enabled. • Unlock your device before connecting it.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
Sometimes I cannot hear a track playing on my device.	– Device malfunction. • Disconnect your device. Switch your device off, reset it and try again.
When I disconnect my iOS device the audio volume is set to maximum.	– Device limitation. • Turn the volume down on your device
The system does not play the tracks on my USB drive in the correct order.	If the system does not play the tracks on your USB device in the correct order, the following information could help: – If you are selecting USB as the audio source when the system is still indexing, SYNC plays tracks sorted alphabetically by file name in the root directory. – If you are selecting USB as the audio source after the system has finished indexing, SYNC plays all tracks sorted alphabetically by the title in the ID3 tag regardless of where they are located. SYNC uses the file name if the title in the ID3 Tag does not exist. – If you are selecting the option to play all tracks from the browsing menu, SYNC plays all tracks sorted alphabetically by the title in the ID3 tag regardless of where they are located. SYNC uses the file name if the title in the ID3 Tag does not exist. – If you are selecting a track when using the explore device option, SYNC plays tracks sorted alphabetically by file name in the folder you have selected. SYNC then plays all tracks in any subfolders in the folder you have selected.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Phone

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
During a call, I can hear excessive background noise.	– Incorrect cell phone settings. • Check and adjust the audio settings on your cell phone. Refer to your cell phone's user manual.
During a call, I can hear the other person but they cannot hear me.	– Cell phone malfunction. • Switch your cell phone off, reset it and try again. – Cell phone microphone muted. • Unmute your cell phone microphone.
During a call, I cannot hear the other person and they cannot hear me.	– System restart required. • Restart the system. Switch the ignition off and open the door. Close the door and lock the vehicle. Wait until the touchscreen is off and any illuminated USB ports are not illuminated. Unlock the vehicle, switch the ignition on and try again.
I cannot download phonebook.	– Incompatible cell phone. • Check the compatibility of your cell phone on the local Ford website. – Incorrect cell phone settings. • Allow the system to retrieve contacts from your cell phone. Refer to your cell phone's user manual. – Incorrect system settings. • Switch automatic phonebook download on. See **Settings** (page 413). – Cell phone malfunction. • Switch your cell phone off, reset it and try again.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
A message displays suggesting that my phonebook has downloaded but it is empty or it has missing contacts.	– Incorrect cell phone settings. • Allow the system to retrieve contacts from your cell phone. Refer to your cell phone's user manual. • Check the location of the missing contacts on your cell phone. If they are stored on the SIM card, move them to the cell phone memory. – Incorrect system settings. • Switch automatic phonebook download on. See **Settings** (page 413).
I cannot connect my cell phone.	– Incompatible cell phone. • Check the compatibility of your cell phone on the local Ford website. – Cell phone malfunction. • Switch your cell phone off, reset it and try again. • Install the latest cell phone firmware. • Delete your device from system and delete SYNC from your device and try again. • Switch automatic phonebook download off. See **Settings** (page 413).
Text messaging does not work.	– Incompatible cell phone. • Check the compatibility of your cell phone on the local Ford website. – Cell phone malfunction. • Switch your cell phone off, reset it and try again.
I cannot hear text messages.	– Incompatible cell phone. • Check the compatibility of your cell phone on the local Ford website.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Navigation (If Equipped)

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot enter a street name when I am abroad.	– Incorrect entry method. • Enter the street name with the country.
The system does not recognize coordinates.	– You are using the wrong coordinates format. • Use the format ##.#####, ##.##### (for N/S , E/W). Add a minus before coordinates if the direction is West and keep a positive value if the direction is East, for example 12.5412 means East and -12.5412 means West.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Apps

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
The system cannot find any apps.	– Incompatible device. • You need an Android device with OS 4.3 or higher or an iOS device with iOS 8.0 or higher. Pair and connect your Android device to find AppLink compatible apps. Connect your Android or iOS device to a USB port or pair and connect using Bluetooth.
I have a compatible device and it is correctly connected but the system still cannot find any apps.	– AppLink compatible apps not installed on your device. • Download and install the latest version of the app. – AppLink compatible apps not running on your device. • Start the apps to allow the system to find them and make sure you sign in to any apps if required. – Incorrect app settings. • Check and adjust the app settings on your device and allow SYNC to access the app if required.
I have a compatible device, it is correctly connected and my apps are running but the system still cannot find any apps.	– Apps failed to fully close. • Restart the apps and try again. • If you have an Android device with apps that have an exit or quit option, use this and then restart the apps. Alternatively, use the force stop option in the settings menu on your device. • If you have an iOS device with iOS 7.0 or higher, tap the home button on your device twice and then swipe the app upward to close it.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I have an Android device that is correctly connected, I have restarted my apps and they are running but the system still cannot find them.	– An issue on some older versions of the Android operating system could result in apps not being found. • Switch Bluetooth off and on again to force the system to reconnect to your device.
I have an iOS device that is correctly connected, I have restarted my apps and they are running but the system still cannot find them.	– Cable connection issue. • Disconnect the cable from your device, wait for a moment and then connect it again to force the system to reconnect to your device.
I have an Android device running a media app which the system has found but I cannot hear the sound or the sound is very quiet.	– Device volume is low. • Turn the volume up on your device.
I have an Android device running a number of compatible apps but the system cannot find all of them.	– Device limitation. Some Android devices have a limited number of Bluetooth ports that apps can use to connect. If you have more apps running on your device than the number of available Bluetooth ports, the system cannot find all of them. • Close some of the apps to allow the system to find those that you want to use.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Wi-Fi Connectivity

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot connect to a Wi-Fi network.	– Password error. • Enter the correct network password. – Weak network signal. • Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed. – Multiple access points in range with the same SSID. • Use a unique name for your SSID. Do not use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, for example as part of the MAC address.
The Wi-Fi connection disconnects after successful connection.	– Weak network signal. • Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
I am close to a Wi-Fi hotspot but the network signal strength is weak.	– Obstructed network signal. • If your vehicle has a heated windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is not facing the Wi-Fi hotspot. • If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows but not on the windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is facing the Wi-Fi hotspot or open the windows that are facing the hotspot. • If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows and the windshield, open the windows that are facing the hotspot. • If your vehicle is in a garage and you have the garage door closed, open the garage door.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot see a network in the list of available networks that I expect to see.	– Hidden network. • Make the network visible and try again.
Software downloads take too long.	– Weak network signal • Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed. – Wi-Fi hotspot in high demand or has a slow Internet connection. • Use a more reliable Wi-Fi hotspot.
The system seems to connect to a Wi-Fi network and the signal strength is excellent but the software does not update.	– No software update available. – Wi-Fi network requires a subscription or acceptance of terms and conditions. • Test the connection using another device. If the network requires a subscription or acceptance of terms and conditions, contact the network service provider.

Resetting the System

1. Simultaneously press and hold the seek up and the audio unit power buttons until the screen goes black.
2. Wait three minutes to allow the system to complete the reset.
3. Press the audio unit power button to switch the system on.

Note: *You can reset the system to restore functionality that has stopped working. The system reset is designed to restore functionality and not delete any data that you have stored.*

Additional Information and Assistance

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer or refer to the local Ford website.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY

WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the front or rear seatbacks, or in areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

WARNING: Do not fasten antenna cables to vehicle wiring, fuel pipes and brake pipes.

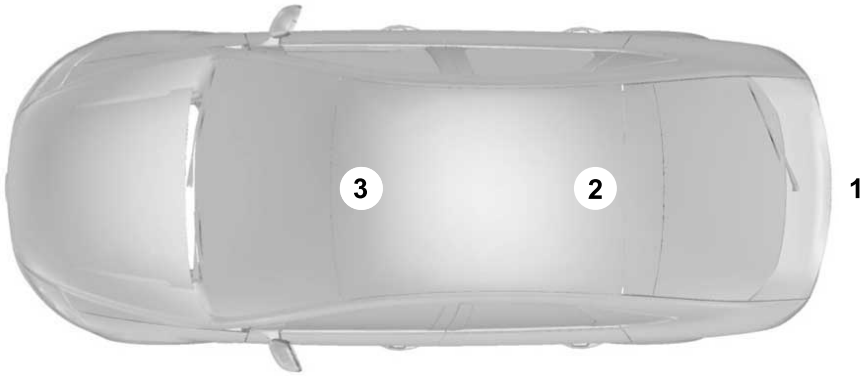
WARNING: Keep antenna and power cables at least 10 cm from any electronic modules and airbags.

Note: *We test and certify your vehicle to meet electromagnetic compatibility legislation. It is your responsibility to make sure that any equipment an authorized dealer installs on your vehicle complies with applicable local legislation and other requirements. Installation of some aftermarket electronic devices could degrade the performance of vehicle functions, which use radio frequency signals such as broadcast radio receiver, tire pressure monitoring system, push button start,* ***Bluetooth®*** *connectivity or satellite navigation.*

Note: *Any radio frequency transmitter equipment in your vehicle (such as cellular telephones and amateur radio transmitters) must keep to the parameters in the following illustrations and table. We do not provide any other special provisions or conditions for installations or use.*

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Car/SUV



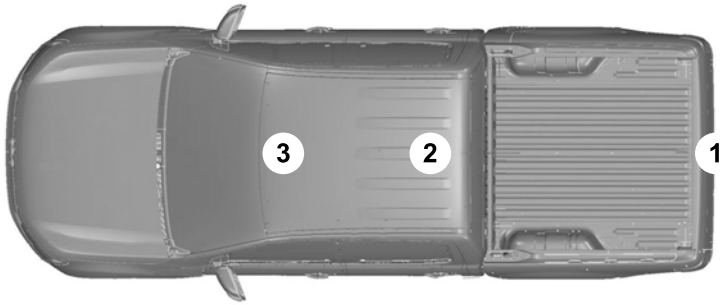
Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Van



Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Truck



Frequency Band MHz	Maximum output power Watt (Peak RMS)	Antenna Positions
1-30	50	1
50-54	50	2, 3
68-88	50	2, 3
142-176	50	2, 3
380-512	50	2, 3
806-870	10	2, 3

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA)

- You (“You” or “Your” as applicable) have acquired a vehicle having several devices, including SYNC ® and various control modules, ("DEVICES") that include software licensed or owned by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY"). Those software products of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY.

IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICES OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICES, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).

GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE: This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICES and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

Description of Other Rights and Limitations

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system.
- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, translate, disassemble or attempt to discover any source code or underlying ideas or algorithms of the SOFTWARE nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.
- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.

- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICES and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.
- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICES, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.
- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICES.
- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components".) SOFTWARE updates may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider. If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply. FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites. The third party sites are not under the control of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its affiliates nor its designated agent are responsible for (I) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent.
- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICES operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and you agree to assume any risk associated with the use of the DEVICES.

UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA: If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICES on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICES as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS: All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or its affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content outside its intended use. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

EXPORT RESTRICTIONS: You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments.

TRADEMARKS: This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

The ***Bluetooth®*** word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by ***Bluetooth SIG, Inc.*** and any use of such marks by Ford Motor Company is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

PRODUCT SUPPORT: Please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICES product support, such as the vehicle owner guide.

Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICES.

No Liability for Certain Damages: EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY BE EXPRESSLY PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

SYNC® Automotive Important Safety Information Read and follow instructions:

- Before using your SYNC® system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("Owner Guide".) Not following precautions found in the Owner Guide can lead to an accident or other serious injuries.

General Operation

- **Voice Command Control**: Certain functions within the SYNC® system may be accomplished using voice commands. Using voice commands while driving helps you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel or eyes from the road.
- **Prolonged Views of Screen:** Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention.
- **Volume Setting:** Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.
- **Navigation Features:** Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.
- **Distraction Hazard:** Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious injury. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

- **Let Your Judgment Prevail:** Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.
- **Route Safety:** Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.
- **Potential Map Inaccuracy:** Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.
- **Emergency Services:** Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Your Responsibilities and Assumptions of Risk

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

- You agree to each of the following:(a) Any use of the SOFTWARE while driving an automobile or other vehicle in violation of applicable law or otherwise driving in an unsafe manner presents a significant risk of distracted driving and should not be attempted under any circumstances;(b) Use of the SOFTWARE at excessive volume poses a significant risk of hearing damage and should not be attempted under any circumstances;(c) The SOFTWARE may not be compatible with new or different versions of an operating system, third party software, or third party services, and the SOFTWARE may potentially cause a critical failure of an operating system, third party software, or third party service.(d) Any third party service accessed by or third party software used with the SOFTWARE (I) may charge an additional fee for access, (ii) may not work correctly, on an uninterrupted basis, or error free, (iii) may change streaming formats or discontinue operation, (iv) may contain adult, profane or offensive content; and (v) may contain inaccurate, false or misleading traffic, weather, financial or safety information or other content; and (e) Use of the SOFTWARE may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider (WSP) and any data or minute calculators that may be included in the software program are for reference only, are not warranted in any way and should not be relied upon in anyway.
- When using the SOFTWARE, you agree to be responsible for and assume the entire risk to the items set forth in Section (a) – (e) above.

Disclaimer of Warranty

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF THE DEVICES AND SOFTWARE IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, COMPATIBILITY, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, THE SOFTWARE AND ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" AND “AS AVAILABLE”, WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND FORD MOTOR COMPANY HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, AND THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OF FITNESS FOR AN ARTICULAR PURPOSE, OF ACCURACY, OF QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS. FORD MOTOR COMPANY DOES NOT WARRANT (a) AGAINST INTERFERENCE WITH YOUR ENJOYMENT OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, (b) THAT THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, (c) THAT THE OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE, (d) OR THAT DEFECTS IN THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE CORRECTED. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY OR ITS AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY. SHOULD THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

DISCLAIMER OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR LIMITATIONS ON APPLICABLE STATUTORY RIGHTS OF A CONSUMER, SO THE ABOVE DISCLAIMER MAY NOT FULLY APPLY TO YOU. THE SOLE WARRANTY PROVIDED BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY SHALL BE FOUND IN THE WARRANTY INFORMATION INCLUDING WITH YOUR OWNER GUIDE. TO THE EXTENT THAT THERE IS ANY CONFLICT BETWEEN THE TERMS OF THIS SECTION AND THE WARRANTY BOOKLET, THE WARRANTY BOOKLET SHALL CONTROL.

Applicable Law, Venue, Jurisdiction

- The laws of the State of Michigan govern this EULA and Your use of the SOFTWARE. Your use of the SOFTWARE may also be subject to other local, state, national, or international laws. Any litigation arising out of or related to this EULA shall be brought and maintained exclusively in a court of the State of Michigan located in Wayne County or in the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan. You hereby consent to submit to the personal jurisdiction of a court in the State of Michigan located in Wayne County and the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan for any dispute arising out of or relating to this EULA.

Binding Arbitration and Class Action Waiver

(a) Application. This Section applies to any dispute EXCEPT IT DOES NOT INCLUDE A DISPUTE RELATING TO COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT, OR TO THE ENFORCEMENT OR VALIDITY OF YOUR, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, OR ANY OF FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S LICENSORS' INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS. Dispute means any dispute, action, or other controversy between You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, other than the exceptions listed above, concerning the SOFTWARE (including its price) or this EULA, whether in contract, warranty, tort, statute, regulation, ordinance, or any other legal or equitable basis.

(b) Notice of Dispute. In the event of a Dispute, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY must give the other a "Notice of Dispute", which is a written statement of the name, address, and contact information of the party giving it, the facts giving rise to the dispute, and the relief requested. You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY will attempt to resolve any dispute through informal negotiation within 60 days from the date the Notice of Dispute is sent. After 60 days, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY may commence arbitration.

(c) Small claims court. You may also litigate any dispute in small claims court in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business, if the dispute meets all requirements to be heard in the small claims court. You may litigate in small claims court whether or not You negotiated informally first.

(d) Binding arbitration. If You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, do not resolve any dispute by informal negotiation or in small claims court, any other effort to resolve the dispute will be conducted exclusively by binding arbitration. You are giving up the right to litigate (or participate in as a party or class member) all disputes in court before a judge or jury. Instead, all disputes will be resolved before a neutral arbitrator, whose decision will be final except for a limited right of appeal under the Federal Arbitration Act. Any court with jurisdiction over the parties may enforce the arbitrator's award.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

(e) Class action waiver. Any proceedings to resolve or litigate any dispute in any forum will be conducted solely on an individual basis. Neither you nor FORD MOTOR COMPANY, will seek to have any dispute heard as a class action, as a private attorney general action, or in any other proceeding in which any party acts or proposes to act in a representative capacity. No arbitration or proceeding will be combined with another without the prior written consent of all parties to all affected arbitrations or proceedings.

(f) Arbitration procedure. Any arbitration will be conducted by the American Arbitration Association (the "AAA"), under its Commercial Arbitration Rules. If You are an individual and use the SOFTWARE for personal or vehicle use, or if the value of the dispute is $75,000 or less whether or not You are an individual or how You use the SOFTWARE, the AAA Supplementary Procedures for Consumer-Related Disputes will also apply. To commence arbitration, submit a Commercial Arbitration Rules Demand for Arbitration form to the AAA. You may request a telephonic or in-person hearing by following the AAA rules. In a dispute involving $10,000 or less, any hearing will be telephonic unless the arbitrator finds good cause to hold an in-person hearing instead. For more information, see adr.org or call 1-800-778-7879. You agree to commence arbitration only in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business. The arbitrator may award the same damages to You individually as a court could. The arbitrator may award declaratory or injunctive relief only to You individually, and only to the extent required to satisfy Your individual claim.

(g) Arbitration fees and incentives.

- I. Disputes involving $75,000 or less. FORD MOTOR COMPANY will promptly reimburse your filing fees and pay the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses. If you reject FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S last written settlement offer made before the arbitrator was appointed ("last written offer"), your dispute goes all the way to an arbitrator's decision (called an "award"), and the arbitrator awards you more than the last written offer, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will give you three incentives: (1) pay the greater of the award or $1,000; (2) pay twice your reasonable attorney's fees, if any; and (3) reimburse any expenses (including expert witness fees and costs) that your attorney reasonably accrues for investigating, preparing, and pursuing your claim in arbitration. The arbitrator will determine the amounts.
- ii. Disputes involving more than $75,000. The AAA rules will govern payment of filing fees and the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses.
- iii. Disputes involving any amount. In any arbitration you commence, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will seek its AAA or arbitrator's fees and expenses, or Your filing fees it reimbursed, only if the arbitrator finds the arbitration frivolous or brought for an improper purpose. In any arbitration FORD MOTOR COMPANY commences, it will pay all filing, AAA, and arbitrator's fees and expenses. It will not seek its attorney's fees or expenses from you in any arbitration. Fees and expenses are not counted in determining how much a dispute involves.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

(h) Claims or disputes must be filed within one year. To the extent permitted by law, any claim or dispute under this EULA to which this Section applies must be filed within one year in small claims court (Section c) or in arbitration (Section d). The one-year period begins when the claim or dispute first could be filed. If such a claim or dispute is not filed within one year, it is permanently barred.

(I) Severability. If the class action waiver (Section e) is found to be illegal or unenforceable as to all or some parts of a dispute, then that portion of Section e will not apply to those parts. Instead, those parts will be severed and proceed in a court of law, with the remaining parts proceeding in arbitration. If any other provision of that portion Section e is found to be illegal or unenforceable, that provision will be severed with the remainder of Section e remaining in full force and effect.

Telenav Software End User License Agreement

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the TeleNav Software. Your use of the TeleNav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the TeleNav Software. TeleNav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit http://www.telenav.com from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

1. Safe and Lawful Use

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the TeleNav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the TeleNav Software:

(a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely;

(b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the TeleNav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver, places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions;

(c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the TeleNav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked;

(d) do not use the TeleNav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement;

(e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the TeleNav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold TeleNav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the TeleNav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

2. Account Information

You agree: (a) when registering the TeleNav Software, to provide TeleNav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform TeleNav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

3. Software License

- Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, TeleNav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the TeleNav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the TeleNav Software. This license shall terminate upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the TeleNav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

3.1 License Limitations

- **(a)** reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the TeleNav Software or any part thereof; **(b)** attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the TeleNav Software without the prior express written consent of TeleNav; **(c)** remove from the TeleNav Software, or alter, any of TeleNav's or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or copyright notices, or other notices or markings; **(d)** distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the TeleNav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software; or **(e)** use the TeleNav Software in any manner that

I. infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party,

ii. violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or

iii. is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the TeleNav Software without advanced written permission of TeleNav.

4. Disclaimers

- To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will TeleNav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the TeleNav Software. TeleNav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the TeleNav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the TeleNav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the TeleNav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others is

dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the TeleNav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.

- TELENAV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENAV SOFTWARE.
- Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

5. Limitation of Liability

- TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENAV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENAV AND OF ALL OF TELENAV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

6. Arbitration and Governing Law

- You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the TeleNav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial. This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of law provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both TeleNav and you

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

agree to submit to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

7. Assignment

- You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the TeleNav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to TeleNav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the TeleNav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, TeleNav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

8. Miscellaneous

8.1

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between TeleNav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

8.2

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, TeleNav retains all right, title and interest in and to the TeleNav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and TeleNav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement.

8.3

By using the TeleNav Software, you consent to receive from TeleNav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the TeleNav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. TeleNav may provide such Notices by posting them on TeleNav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the TeleNav Software.

8.4

TeleNav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

8.5

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

8.6

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including" and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation".

9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions

- The Telenav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to Telenav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this Agreement), and thus your use of the Telenav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to Telenav's third party vendor licensors:

9.1 End User Terms Required by HERE North America, LLC

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and Telenav ("Telenav") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 2013 HERE. All rights reserved.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © Department of Natural Resources Canada.

HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

©United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4

The Data for Mexico includes certain data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

9.2 End User Terms Required by NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd ("NAV2") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand. 20xx. All rights reserved

Terms and Conditions

Permitted Use. You agree to use this Data together with the Telenav Software solely for the internal business and personal purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, create any derivative works of, or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Restrictions. Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by Telenav, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not use this Data (a) with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

Warning. The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

No Warranty. This Data is provided to you "as is," and you agree to use it at your own risk. Telenav and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.

Disclaimer of Warranty: TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Disclaimer of Liability: TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

Export Control. You shall not export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Entire Agreement. These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between Telenav (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law. The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois [insert "Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used], without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois [insert "The Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used] for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

Government End Users. If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial item" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in accordance with these End-User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use," and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

NOTICE OF USE
CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) NAME: HERE
CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) ADDRESS: c/o Nokia, 425 West Randolph Street, Chicago, Illinois 60606
This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to these End-User Terms under which this Data was provided.
© 1987 – 2014 HERE – All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

I. US/Canada Territory

A. United States Data. The End-User Terms for any Application containing Data for the United States shall contain the following notices:

"HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information."

"©United States Postal Service® 20XX. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4."

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

B. Canada Data. The following provisions apply to the Data for Canada, which may include or reflect data from third party licensors ("Third Party Data"), including Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources of Canada ("NRCan"):

1. Disclaimer and Limitation: Client agrees that its use of the Third Party Data is subject to the following provisions:

a. Disclaimer: The Third Party Data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors of such data, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose.

b. Limitation on Liability: The Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable: (i) in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of such Data; or (ii) in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the Data.

2. Copyright Notice: In connection with each copy of all or any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada, Client shall affix in a conspicuous manner the following copyright notice on at least one of: (i) the label for the storage media of the copy; (ii) the packaging for the copy; or (iii) other materials packaged with the copy, such as user manuals or end user license agreements: "This data includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © The Department of Natural Resources Canada. All rights reserved."

3. End-User Terms: Except as otherwise agreed by the parties, in connection with the provision of any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada to End-Users as may be authorized under the Agreement, Client shall provide such End-Users, in a reasonably conspicuous manner, with terms (set forth with other end user terms required to be provided under the Agreement, or as otherwise may be provided, by Client) which shall include the following provisions on behalf of the Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan:

The Data may include or reflect data of licensors, including Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources Canada ("NRCan"). Such data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of the data or the Data. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the data or the Data.
End User shall indemnify and save harmless the licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, and their officers, employees and agents from and against any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action, alleging loss, costs, expenses, damages or injuries (including injuries resulting in death) arising out of the use or possession of the data or the Data.

4. Additional Provisions: The terms contained in this Section are in addition to all of the rights and obligations of the parties under the Agreement. To the extent that any of the provisions of this Section are inconsistent with, or conflict with, any other provisions of the Agreement, the provisions of this Section shall prevail.

II. Mexico. The following provision applies to the Data for Mexico, which includes certain data from the Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía ("INEGI"):

A. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging containing Data for Mexico shall contain the following notice: "Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)"

III. Latin America Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Territory	Notice
Argentina	IGN "INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO NACIONAL ARGENTINO"
Ecuador	"INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO MILITAR DEL ECUADOR AUTORIZACION Nº IGM-2011-01- PCO-01 DEL 25 DE ENERO DE 2011"

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

	"source: © IGN 2009 - BD TOPO ®"
Guadeloupe, French Guiana and Martinique	
Mexico	"Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)"

IV. Middle East Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country	Notice
Jordan	"© Royal Jordanian Geographic Centre". The foregoing notice requirement for Jordan Data is a material term of the Agreement. If Client or any of its permitted sublicensees (if any) fail to meet such requirement, HERE shall have the right to terminate Client's license with respect to the Jordan Data.

B. Jordan Data. Client and its permitted sublicensees (if any) are restricted from licensing and/or otherwise distributing HERE's database for the country of Jordan ("Jordan Data") for use in Enterprise Applications to (i) non-Jordanian entities for use of the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) Jordan-based customers. In addition, Client, its permitted sublicensees (if any) and End-Users are restricted from using the Jordan Data in Enterprise Applications if such party is (i) a non-Jordanian entity using the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) a Jordan-based customer. For purposes of the foregoing, "Enterprise Applications" shall mean Geomarketing applications, GIS applications, mobile business asset management applications, call center applications, telematics applications, public organization Internet applications or for providing geocoding services.

V. Europe Territory

A. Use of Certain Traffic Codes in Europe

1. General Restrictions Applicable to Traffic Codes. Client acknowledges and agrees that in certain countries of the Europe Territory, Client will need to obtain rights directly from third party RDS-TMC code providers to receive and use the Traffic Codes in the Data and to deliver to End-Users Transactions in any way derived from or based on such Traffic Codes. For such countries, HERE shall deliver the Data incorporating Traffic Codes to Client only after receiving certification from Client of its having obtained such rights.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

2. Display of Third Party Rights Legends for Belgium. Client shall, for each Transaction that uses Traffic Codes for Belgium, provide the following notice to the End-User: "Traffic Codes for Belgium are provided by the Ministerie van de Vlaamse Gemeenschap and the Ministère de l'Equipement et des Transports."

B. Paper Maps. With respect to any license granted to Client relating to making, selling or distributing paper maps (i.e., a map fixed on a paper or paper-like medium): (a) such license with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain is conditioned on Client's entering into and complying with a separate written agreement with the Ordnance Survey ("OS") to create and sell paper maps, Client's paying to the OS any and all applicable paper map royalties, and Client's complying with the OS copyright notice requirements; (b) such license for selling or otherwise distributing for charge with respect to Data for the Territory of Czech Republic is conditioned on Client's obtaining prior written consent from Kartografie a.s.; (c) such license for selling or distributing with respect to Data for the Territory of Switzerland is conditioned on Client's obtaining a permit from Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland; (d) Client is restricted from using Data for the Territory of France to create paper maps with a scale between 1:5,000 and 1:250,000; and (e) Client is restricted from using any Data to create, sell or distribute paper maps that are the same or substantially similar, in terms of data content and specific use of color, symbols and scale, to paper maps published by the European national mapping agencies, including without limitation, Landervermessungämter of Germany, Topografische Dienst of the Netherlands, Nationaal Geografisch Instituut of Belgium, Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland, Bundesamt für Eich-und Vermessungswesen of Austria, and the National Land Survey of Sweden.

C. OS Enforcement. Without limiting Section IV(B) above, with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain, Client acknowledges and agrees that the Ordnance Survey ("OS") may bring a direct action against Client to enforce compliance with the OS copyright notice (see Section IV(D) below) and paper map requirements (see Section IV(B) above) contained in this Agreement.

D. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country(ies)	Notice
Austria	"© Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen"
Croatia Cyprus, Estonia, Latvia, Lithuania, Moldova, Poland, Slovenia and/or Ukraine	"© EuroGeographics"
France	"source: © IGN 2009 – BD TOPO ®"
Germany	"Die Grundlagendaten wurden mit Genehmigung der zuständigen Behörden entnommen"

Great Britain	"Contains Ordnance Survey data © Crown copyright and database right 2010 Contains Royal Mail data © Royal Mail copyright and database right 2010"
Greece	"Copyright Geomatics Ltd."
Hungary	"Copyright © 2003; Top-Map Ltd."
Italy	"La Banca Dati Italiana è stata prodotta usando quale riferimento anche cartografia numerica ed al tratto prodotta e fornita dalla Regione Toscana."
Norway	"Copyright © 2000; Norwegian Mapping Authority"
Portugal	"Source: IgeoE – Portugal"
Spain	"Información geográfica propiedad del CNIG"
Sweden	"Based upon electronic data © National Land Survey Sweden."
Switzerland	"Topografische Grundlage: © Bundesamt für Landestopographie.

E. Respective Country Distribution. Client acknowledges that HERE has not received approvals to distribute map data for the following countries in such respective countries: Albania, Belarus, Kyrgyzstan, Moldova and Uzbekistan. HERE may update such list from time to time. The license rights granted to Client under this TL with respect to the Data for such countries are contingent upon Client's compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including, without limitation, any required licenses or approvals to distribute the Application incorporating such Data in such respective countries.

VI. Australia Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Copyright. Based on data provided under license from PSMA Australia Limited (www.psma.com.au).
Product incorporates data which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited, GM Holden Limited, Intelematics Australia Pty Ltd and Continental Pty Ltd.

B. Third Party Notices for Australia. In addition to the foregoing, the End-User Terms for any Application containing RDS-TMC Traffic Codes for Australia shall contain the following notice: "Product incorporates traffic location codes which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited and its licensors."

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

AT&T Vehicle Network Carrier Telematics Disclosure

END USER FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION MEANS YOU AND YOUR HEIRS, EXECUTORS, LEGAL PERSONAL REPRESENTATITVES AND PERMITED ASSIGNS. FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION "UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER" INCLUDES ITS AFFILIATES AND CONTRACTORS AND THEIR RESPECTIVE OFFICERS, DIRECTORS, EMPLOYEES, SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS. END USER HAS NO CONTRACTUAL RELATIONSHIP WITH THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND END USER IS NOT A THIRD PARTY BENEFICIARY OF ANY AGREEMENT BETWEEN FORD AND UNDERLYING CARRIER. END USER UNDERSTANDS AND AGREES THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HAS NO LEGAL, EQUITABLE, OR OTHER LIABILITY OF ANY KIND TO END USER. IN ANY EVENT, REGARDLESS OF THE FORM OF THE ACTION, WHETHER FOR BREACH OF CONTRACT, WARRANTY, NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY IN TORT OR OTHERWISE, END USER'S EXCLUSIVE REMEDY FOR CLAIMS ARISING IN ANY WAY IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT, FOR ANY CAUSE WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY FAILURE OR DISRUPTION OF SERVICE PROVIDED HEREUNDER, IS LIMITED TO PAYMENT OF DAMAGES IN AN AMOUNT NOT TO EXCEED THE AMOUNT PAID BY END USER FOR THE SERVICES DURING THE TWO-MONTH PERIOD PRECEDING THE DATE THE CLAIM AROSE.

(ii) END USER AGREES TO INDEMNIFY AND HOLD HARMLESS THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND ITS OFFICERS, EMPLOYEES, AND AGENTS AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION CLAIMS FOR LIBEL, SLANDER, OR ANY PROPERTY DAMAGE, PERSONAL INJURY OR DEATH, ARISING IN ANY WAY, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT OR THE USE, FAILURE TO USE, OR INABILITY TO USE THE DEVICE EXCEPT WHERE THE CLAIMS RESULT FROM THE UNDERLYING CARRIER'S GROSS NEGLIGENCE OR WILLFUL MISCONDUCT. THIS INDEMNITY WILL SURVIVE THE TERMINATION OF THE AGREEMENT.

(iii) END USER HAS NO PROPERTY RIGHT IN ANY NUMBER ASSIGNED TO THE DEVICE.

(iv) END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT FORD AND THE UNDERLYING CARRIER CANNOT GUARANTY THE SECURITY OF WIRELESS TRANSMISSIONS, AND WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY LACK OF SECURITY RELATING TO THE USE OF THE SERVICES

THE SERVICE IS FOR [END USER'S] USE ONLY AND END USER MAY NOT RESELL THE SERVICE TO ANY OTHER PARTY END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT GUARANTEE ANY END USER UNINTERRUPTED SERVICE OR COVERAGE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT WARRANT THAT END USERS CAN OR WILL BE LOCATED USING THE SERVICE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER MAKES NO WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, SUITABILITY, OR PERFORMANCE REGARDING ANY SERVICES OR GOODS, AND IN NO EVENT SHALL AT&T BE LIABLE, WHETHER OR NOT DUE TO ITS OWN NEGLIGENCE, FOR ANY: (A) ACT OR OMISSION OF A THIRD PARTY; (B) MISTAKES, OMISSIONS, INTERRUPTIONS, ERRORS, FAILURES TO TRANSMIT, DELAYS, OR DEFECTS IN THE SERVICE PROVIDED BY OR THROUGH THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; (C) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY SUSPENSION OR TERMINATION BY THE

UNDERLYING CARRIER; OR (D) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY A FAILURE OR DELAY IN CONNECTING A CALL TO ANY ENTITY, INCLUDING 911 OR ANY OTHER EMERGENCY SERVICE. TO THE FULL EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW, THE END USER RELEASES, INDEMNIFIES AND HOLDS THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HARMLESS FROM AND AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS OF ANY PERSON OR ENTITY FOR DAMAGES OF ANY NATURE ARISING IN ANY WAY FROM OR RELATING TO, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, SERVICES PROVIDED BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER OR ANY PERSON'S USE THEREOF, INCLUDING CLAIMS ARISING IN WHOLE OR IN PART FROM THE ALLEGED NEGLIGENCE OF THE UNDERLYING CARRIER.

VII. China Territory

Personal Use Only

You agree to use this Data together with [insert name of Client Application] for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i) view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NAV2 , and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs. You agree to cease using this Data if you fail to comply with these terms and conditions.

Limited Warranty

NAV2 warrants that (a) the Data will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying written materials for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of receipt, and (b) any support services provided by NAV2 shall be substantially as described in applicable written materials provided to you by NAV2, and NAV2's support engineers will make commercially reasonable efforts to solve any problem issues.

Customer Remedies

NAV2 and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at NAV2's sole discretion, either (a) return of the price paid, if any, or (b) repair or replacement of the Data that do not meet NAV2's Limited Warranty and that are returned to NAV2 with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the Data has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement Data will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer. Neither these remedies nor any product support services offered by NAV2 are available without proof of purchase from an authorized international source.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

No Other Warranty:

EXCEPT FOR THE LMITED WARRANTY SET FORTH ABOVE AND TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OWNERSHIP OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Certain warranty exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Limited Liability:

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFROMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NAV2 OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL NAV2's OR ITS SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY HEREUNDER EXCEED THE PRICE PAID. Certain liability exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Export Control

You agree not to export to anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

IP Protection

The Data are owned by NAV2 or its suppliers and are protected by applicable copyright and other intellectual property law and treaties. The Data are provided solely on the basis of a license to use, not sale.

Entire Agreement

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NAV2(and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law.

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the People's Republic of China, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. Any dispute arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder shall be submitted to the Shanghai International Economic and Trade Arbitration Commission for arbitration.

Gracenote® Copyright

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright©

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents 5,987,525; 6,061,680; 6,154,773; 6,161,132; 6,230,192; 6,230,207; 6.240,459; 6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent 6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDB are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers ("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device. This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote. You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content") , Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers.

Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide, including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at www.gracenote.com for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER. © Gracenote 2007.

Radio Frequency Statement

FCC ID: ACJ-SYNCG3-L

IC: 216B-SYNCG3-L

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

The antenna used for this transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Taiwan Territory

Note: In accordance with the management approach of low-power radio wave radiation motors:

Article 12: For approved and certified low-power radiation motor models, companies, firms or users must not alter the frequency, increase the power or change the characteristics and functions of the original design without authorization.

Article 14: The usage of low-power radio-frequency motors must not affect aviation safety and interfere with legal telecommunications. Should interference be detected, immediately stop using the device and only resume usage after ensuring that there is no longer any interference. For the legal telecommunication and wireless telecommunication of the telco, the low-power radio frequency motor must be able to tolerate legal limits of interference from telecommunication, industrial, scientific and radio wave equipment.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

SUNA TRAFFIC CHANNEL – TERMS AND CONDITIONS

By activating, using and/or accessing the SUNA Traffic Channel, SUNA Predictive or other content or material provided by Intelematics (together, **SUNA Products and/or Services**), you must accept certain terms and conditions. The following is a brief summary of the terms and conditions that apply to you. To view the full terms and conditions relevant to your use of the SUNA Products and/or Services, please consult:

Website
www.sunatraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/

1. Acceptance

By using SUNA Products and/or Services, you will be deemed to have accepted and agreed to be bound by the terms and conditions fully detailed at:

Website
www.sunatraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/

2. Intellectual Property

SUNA Products and/or Services are for your personal use. You may not record, or retransmit the content, nor use the content in association with any other traffic information or route guidance service or device not approved by Intelematics. You obtain no right of ownership in any Intellectual Property Rights (including copyright) in the data that is used to provide SUNA Products and/or Services.

3. Appropriate Use

SUNA Products and/or Services are intended as an aid to personal motoring and travel planning, and do not provide comprehensive or accurate information on all occasions. On occasions, you may experience additional delay as a result of using SUNA Products and/or Services. You acknowledge that it is not intended, or suitable, for use in applications where time of arrival or driving directions may impact the safety of the public or yourself.

4. Use of SUNA Products and Services while driving

You, and other authorised drivers of the vehicle in which SUNA Products and/or Services are available or installed and active, remain at all times responsible for observing all relevant laws and codes of safe driving. In particular, you agree to only actively operate SUNA Products and/or Services when the Vehicle is at a complete stop and it is safe to do so.

5. Service Continuity and Reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel

We will use reasonable endeavours to provide the SUNA Traffic Channel 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. The SUNA Traffic Channel may occasionally be unavailable for technical reasons or for planned maintenance. We will try to perform maintenance at times when congestion is light. We reserve the right to withdraw SUNA Products and/or Services at any time.

Also, we cannot assure the uninterrupted reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel RDS-TMC signal at any particular location.

6. Limitation of Liability

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Neither Intelematics (nor its suppliers or the manufacturer of your device (the "**Suppliers**")) shall be liable to you or to any third party for any damages either direct, indirect, incidental, consequential or otherwise arising out of the use of or inability to use SUNA Products and/or Services even if Intelematics or a Supplier has been advised of the possibility of such damages. You also acknowledge that the neither Intelematics nor any Supplier guarantees nor make any warranties that relate to the availability, accuracy or completeness of SUNA Products and/or Services, and to the extent which it is lawful to do so, both Intelematics and each Supplier excludes any warranties which might otherwise be implied by any State or Federal legislation in relation to SUNA Products and/or Services.

7. Please Note

Great care has been taken in preparing this manual. Constant product development may mean that some information is not entirely up-to-date. The information in this document is subject to change without notice.

DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

Your vehicle could have components that transmit and receive radio waves and are therefore subject to government regulation.

These components must accept any interference received, including interference that could cause undesired operation. For certification labels and declarations of conformity, visit *www.wirelessconformity.ford.com*.

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

1

180 Degree Camera....231
Camera Views....232
Using the System....232

A

A/C
See: Climate Control....143
About This Manual....9
ABS
See: Brakes....210
ABS driving hints
See: Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes....210
Accessories
See: Replacement Parts Recommendation....15
Acknowledgments....9
Active Park Assist....225
Using Active Park Assist....225
Adaptive Cruise Control....235
Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting....244
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering....242
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go....242
Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control/ Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go....237
Sensor Limitations....237
Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering....236
Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering....235
Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go....235
Hilly Condition Usage....236
When Following a Vehicle....236
Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting....244
Adaptive Cruise Control – Information Messages....244
Adaptive Headlamps....76
System Check....77
Adjusting the Headlamps....325
Vertical and Horizontal Aim Adjustment....325
Adjusting the Steering Wheel....63
AFS
See: Adaptive Headlamps....76
Air Conditioning
See: Climate Control....143
Air Filter
See: Changing the Engine Air Filter - 2.0L EcoBoost™....316
See: Changing the Engine Air Filter - 2.5L Duratec, Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)....317
Alarm
See: Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Integral Battery....61
See: Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Interior Sensor....59
All-Wheel Drive....205
AM/FM Radio - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5....375
Using the Radio....375
Ambient Lighting....78
Adjusting the Brightness....78
Switching Ambient Lighting Off....78
Switching Ambient Lighting On....78
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Integral Battery....61
Alarm System....61
Arming the Alarm....62
Disarming the Alarm....62
Full and Reduced Guard....61
Triggering the Alarm....61
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Interior Sensor....59
Alarm System....59
Arming the Alarm....60
Disarming the Alarm....60
Full and Reduced Guard....60

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Triggering the Alarm....59
Appendices....427
Apps....412
Using Apps on an Android Device....412
Using Apps on an iOS Device....412
Using Mobile Navigation on an Android Device....413
Apps - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5....379
Apps Troubleshooting....381
Using Android Auto....379
Using Apple CarPlay....379
Using Apps on an Android Device....380
Using Apps on an iOS Device....379
At a Glance....19
Audible Warnings and Indicators....100
Headlamps On Warning....101
Key in Ignition Warning....100
Keyless Warning....101
Audio Control....63
You can operate the following functions with the control:....64
Audio System....372
General Information....372
Audio System – Troubleshooting - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5....383
Master Reset....384
Resetting the System....383
Updating the System....383
Audio Unit....372
Adjusting the Volume....373
Changing Radio Stations....373
Muting the Audio....373
Pausing or Playing Media....373
Switching the Audio Unit On and Off....373
Switching the Display On and Off....373
Using Seek, Fast Forward and Reverse....373
Audio Unit Clock and Date Displays - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5....376
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5....374
Adjusting the Volume....374
Changing Radio Stations....374
Next Track Button....374
Pausing or Playing Media....375
Previous Track Button....375
Sound Settings....375
Switching the Audio Unit On and Off....374
Switching the Screen On and Off....375
Auto Hold....214
Auto Hold Indicator....215
Switching Auto Hold On and Off....214
Using Auto Hold....214
Autolamps....72
Windshield Wiper Activated Headlamps....72
Automatic Climate Control....144
Directing the Airflow....144
Setting the Blower Motor Speed....145
Setting the Temperature....145
Switching Auto Mode On and Off....145
Switching Dual Zone Mode On and Off....146
Switching Maximum Air Conditioning On and Off....146
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off....147
Switching Recirculated Air On and Off....147
Switching the Air Conditioning On and Off....146
Switching the Climate Control On and Off....146
Automatic Crash Notification System....38
Automatic Engine Stop....165
How Does Automatic Engine Stop Work....165
Overriding Automatic Engine Stop....165
Switching Automatic Engine Stop On and Off....165
Automatic High Beam Control....79
Automatic High Beam Control Indicators....79
Automatic Transmission - Excluding: Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)....197
Automatic Return to park....198
Automatic Transmission Information Messages....200
Drive (D)....198
If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck in Mud or Snow....200
Low (L)....198
Manual (M)....198
Neutral (N)....198
Park (P)....197
Reverse (R)....197
Stay in Neutral Mode....198
Stay in Neutral Mode - Failure to Start....199
Understanding the Shift Positions of Your Automatic Transmission....197

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Automatic Transmission Fluid Check.....322
Automatic Transmission - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....200
Automatic Return to Park.....202
Automatic Transmission Information Messages.....203
Drive (D).....202
Grade Assist.....203
If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck in Mud or Snow.....203
Low (L).....202
Neutral (N).....202
Park (P).....201
Reverse (R).....201
Stay in Neutral Mode.....202
Understanding the Shift Positions of Your Automatic Transmission.....201
Auto-Start-Stop.....168
Disabling Auto-Start-Stop.....169
Enabling Auto-Start-Stop.....168
Autowipers.....68
Autowipers Settings.....68
Auxiliary Power Points.....159
12 Volt DC Power Point.....159
230 Volt AC Power Point.....159
Locations.....159
AWD
See: All-Wheel Drive.....205

B

Battery
See: Changing the 12V Battery.....323
Blind Spot Information System.....255
Switching the System On and Off.....256
System Errors.....256
Using the Blind Spot Information System.....255
BLIS
See: Blind Spot Information System.....255
Body Styling Kits.....333
Bonnet Lock
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....309
Brake Fluid Check.....322
Brake Fluid Service Interval.....323
Brakes.....210
General Information.....210
Breaking-In.....286
Brakes and Clutch.....286
Engine.....286
Tires.....286
Bulb Specification Chart.....365

C

Canceling the Set Speed.....233
Capacities and Specifications - 2.0L EcoBoost™.....354
Air Conditioning System.....354
Engine Coolant.....355
Engine Oil.....356
Fuel Tank.....357
Grease.....357
Hydraulic Brake System.....357
Locks.....358
Power Transfer Unit.....358
Rear Axle.....359
Washer Reservoir.....359
Capacities and Specifications - 2.5L, Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....360
Air Conditioning System.....360
Automatic Transmission.....361
Engine Coolant.....362
Engine Oil.....362
Fuel Tank.....363
Grease.....363
Hydraulic Brake System.....364
Locks.....364
Washer Reservoir.....364
Capacities and Specifications.....350
Cargo Nets.....272
Installing the Net.....272
Removing the Net.....273
Car Wash
See: Cleaning the Exterior.....330
Catalytic Converter.....185
On-Board Diagnostics (OBD-II).....186
Readiness for Inspection and Maintenance (I/M) Testing.....186
Changing a Bulb.....326
LED Bulbs (If Equipped).....328
Replacing Direction Indicator Bulbs.....328

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Replacing Front Fog Lamp Bulbs....328
Replacing Headlamp Bulbs....326
Replacing High-Mount Brake Lamp Bulbs....329
Replacing License Plate Lamp Bulbs....329
Replacing Rear Fog Lamp Bulbs....328
Replacing Rear Position/Stop Lamp Bulbs....329
Replacing Reverse Lamp Assembly Bulbs....329
Changing a Fuse....307
Engine Compartment Fuse Box....307
Fuse Types....308
General Information....307
Changing a Road Wheel....340
Dissimilar Spare Wheel and Tire Assembly Information....341
Tire Change Procedure....342
Changing the 12V Battery....323
Remove and Reinstall the Battery....324
Changing the Engine Air Filter - 2.0L EcoBoost™....316
Changing the Engine Air Filter - 2.5L Duratec, Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV)/ Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)....317
Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot Name or Password....371
Changing the Wiper Blades....325
Front Wiper Blades....325
Rear Window Wiper Blade....326
Charging the High Voltage Battery....189
IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS....189
Checking MyKey System Status....48
Checking Seatbelt Fit....25
Checking the Wiper Blades....325
Child Restraint Anchorage Locations....23
Upper (top tether) anchorages....23
Child Restraints....21
Child Safety....21
Child Safety Locks - Vehicles With: Mechanical Child Proof Locks....25
Left-Hand Side....25
Right-Hand Side....25
Child Safety Locks - Vehicles With: Remote Child Proof Locks....25
Child Safety Locks Information Messages....26
Cleaning Leather Seats....332
Cleaning the Exterior....330
Cleaning Plastic Exterior Parts....330
Cleaning the Chrome Trim....330
Cleaning the Exterior Lamps....330
Underbody....330
Using a Car Wash....330
Cleaning the Interior....331
Fabric, Carpets, Cloth Seats, Headliners and Floor Mats....331
Instrument Cluster Screens, LCD Screens and Radio Screens....332
Leather Interior....331
Rear Windows....332
Seatbelts....331
Storage Compartments and Cup Holders....332
Suede Micro Fiber Fabric....332
Cleaning the Wheels....333
Cleaning the Windows and Wiper Blades....330
Clearing All MyKeys....47
Climate....397
Accessing Rear Climate Controls....399
Accessing the Climate Control Menu....397
Directing the Airflow....397
Rear Climate Control Lock Indicator....400
Setting the Blower Motor Speed....398
Setting the Temperature....398
Switching Auto Mode On and Off....398
Switching Dual Zone Mode On and Off....398
Switching Maximum Air Conditioning On and Off....399
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off....399
Switching Rear Auto Mode On and Off....400
Switching Recirculated Air On and Off....399
Switching the Air Conditioning On and Off....398
Switching the Climate Controlled Seats On and Off....398
Switching the Climate Control On and Off....398
Switching the Heated Exterior Mirrors On and Off....398
Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off....399

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Switching the Heated Seats On and Off....399
Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off....399
Switching the Heated Windshield On and Off....399
Switching the Rear Climate Controlled Seats On and Off....400
Switching the Rear Heated Seats On and Off....400
Switching the Rear Ventilated Seats On and Off....400
Switching the Ventilated Seats On and Off....399
Climate Control....143
Cold Weather Precautions....286
Connected Vehicle....367
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network....367
Connected Vehicle Limitations....367
Connected Vehicle Requirements....367
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting - Vehicles With: Modem....368
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting - Vehicles With: SYNC 3/SYNC 2.5....369
Connecting a Bluetooth® Device - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5....376
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network....367
Connecting FordPass to the Modem....367
Enabling and Disabling the Modem....367
What Is the Modem....367
Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network....367
Contacting Ford....16
Contact Us....16
Information on Vehicle Warranty....17
Coolant Check
See: Engine Coolant Check....318
Creating a MyKey....47
Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot....371
Connecting a Device to the Wi-Fi Hotspot....371
Finding the Wi-Fi Hotspot Name and Password....371
Cross Traffic Alert....256
Cross Traffic Alert Behavior When Trailer is Attached....259
Cross Traffic Alert Indicator....259
Cross Traffic Alert Information Messages....260
Cross Traffic Alert System Limitations....259
Cross Traffic Alert System Sensors....258
Switching the System On and Off....259
Using Cross Traffic Alert....256
Cruise Control....233
Cruise Control Indicators....234
Cruise Control - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering....64
Cruise Control - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go....65
Cruise Control - Vehicles With: Cruise Control....65

D

Data Recording....11
Comfort, Convenience and Entertainment Data....13
Event Data....12
Service Data....12
Services That Third Parties Provide....13
Services That We Provide....13
Vehicles With a Modem....13
Vehicles With an Emergency Call System....14
Vehicles With SYNC....14
Daytime Running Lamps....73
Declaration of Conformity....458
Digital Radio - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5....376
Using the Radio....376
Direction Indicators....77
Direction Indicator....77
Switching the Direction Indicators On and Off....77
Dog Guard....276
Doors and Locks....50
Drive Mode Control....269
Drive Modes....269
Drive Modes....269
Deep Snow/Sand....269
Eco....270
Normal....270
Slippery....270
Sport....270
Driver Airbag....33

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Driver Alert....248
Using Driver Alert....249
Driver Knee Airbag....35
Driving Aids....246
Driving Economically....287
Driving Hints....286
Driving Through Water....287
DRL
See: Daytime Running Lamps....73

E

Eco - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen....262
Eco Mode System Display....262
Principle of Operation....262
Eco - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen....261
Eco Mode....261
Electric Parking Brake....211
Applying the Electric Parking Brake....211
Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake....212
Electric Parking Brake Information Messages....212
Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake....211
Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if the Vehicle Battery is Running Out of Charge....212
Electric Vehicle Information....407
Charge Preferences....411
Charge Settings....408
Charge Time Settings....411
Departure Time Settings....412
Engine On Due To....408
Power Flow....407
Vehicle Operational States....407
Electromagnetic Compatibility....427
Emergency Assistance....38
Emergency Assistance May Not Work If....39
Emergency Assistance Privacy Notice....39
In the Event of a Crash....39
Enabling Remote Start - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen....140
Enabling Remote Start - Vehicles With: 6.5 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/ 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen....140
End User License Agreement....431
VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA) 431
Engine Coolant Check....318
Adding Coolant....318
Coolant Change....320
Engine Coolant Temperature Management....321
Fail-Safe Cooling....320
Recycled Coolant....319
Severe Climates....320
Engine Emission Control....185
Engine Immobilizer
See: Passive Anti-Theft System....59
Engine Oil Check....314
Adding Oil....314
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.0L EcoBoost™/2.5L Duratec, Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV)....314
Engine Specifications - 2.0L EcoBoost™....350
Drivebelt Routing....351
Engine Specifications - 2.5L, Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)....351
Entertainment....395
Playing Music From a USB or Media Player....397
Streaming Music From a Bluetooth Device....396
Using the Radio....395
Environment....18
EPB
See: Electric Parking Brake....211
Essential Towing Checks....284
Before Towing a Trailer....285
Hitches....284
Launching or Retrieving a Boat or Personal Watercraft (PWC)....285
Safety Chains....284
Trailer Brakes....284
Trailer Lamps....284
When Towing a Trailer....285
Event Data Recording
See: Data Recording....11
Exterior Mirrors....82
Auto-Folding Mirrors....83

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Blind Spot Monitor....84
Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors....83
Heated Exterior Mirrors....83
Memory Mirrors....83
Power Exterior Mirrors....82
Puddle Lamps....84
Signal Indicator Mirrors....84

F

Fastening the Seatbelts....28
Using Seatbelts During Pregnancy....29
Flat Tire
See: Changing a Road Wheel....340
Floor Mats....288
Fog Lamps - Front
See: Front Fog Lamps....75
Fog Lamps - Rear
See: Rear Fog Lamps....75
Front Fog Lamps....75
Front Fog Lamp Indicator....75
Switching the Front Fog Lamps On or Off....75
Front Parking Aid....221
Object Distance Indicator....223
Fuel and Refueling....175
Fuel Consumption....183
Advertised Capacity....183
Calculating Fuel Economy....183
Filling the Fuel Tank....183
Fuel Filler Funnel Location....176
Fuel Filter....325
Fuel Quality....175
Long-Term Storage....176
Fuel Shutoff....289
Fuses....297
Fuse Specification Chart....297
Engine Compartment Fuse Box....297
Passenger Compartment Fuse Box....304

G

Gasoline Particulate Filter....187
Gasoline Particulate Filter Information Messages....188
Gasoline Particulate Filter Regeneration....187
Gasoline Particulate Filter Warning Lamps and Indicators....188
Gauges - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV), Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen....92
Battery Gauge....94
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge....94
Fuel Gauge....94
Information Bar....94
Information Display....94
Low Fuel Reminder....94
Power Gauge....95
Vehicle Driving Range....94
Gauges - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV), Vehicles With: 6.5 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen....90
Battery Gauge....91
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge....92
Fuel Gauge....91
Information Bar....91
Information Display....92
Low Fuel Reminder....91
Power Gauge....91
Vehicle Driving Range....91
Gauges - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen, Excluding: Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)....88
Distance to Empty....89
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge....89
Fuel Gauge....89
Information Bar....89
Information Display....89
Low Fuel Reminder....89
Gauges - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen....96
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge....97
Fuel Gauge....97
Information Display....97
Gauges - Vehicles With: 6.5 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen, Excluding: Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)....86
Distance to Empty....87
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge....87
Fuel Gauge....87
Information Bar....87
Information Display....87
Low Fuel Reminder....87

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Gearbox
See: Transmission....197
General Information on Radio Frequencies....40
Declaration of Conformity....40
Glare-Free High Beam....73
About Glare-Free High Beam....73
Glare-Free High Beam Indicator....75
Overriding Glare-Free High Beam....75
Switching Glare-Free High Beam On or Off....74
Global Opening and Closing....82
Global Closing....82
Global Opening....82

H

Hazard Flashers....289
Headlamp Adjusting
See: Adjusting the Headlamps....325
Headlamp Exit Delay....72
Headlamp Leveling - Vehicles With: Automatic Headlamp Leveling....75
Headlamp Leveling - Vehicles With: Manual Headlamp Leveling....76
Headlamp Washers....69
Headrest
See: Head Restraints....151
Head Restraints....151
Front Seat Head Restraints....151
Installing the Head Restraint....152
Lowering the Head Restraint....151
Raising the Head Restraint....151
Rear Seat Outermost Head Restraint....152
Removing the Head Restraint....152
Removing the Head Restraints....152
Head Up Display....135
Adjusting the Head Up Display Settings....136
Cleaning the Head Up Display....135
Head Up Display Indicator....138
Head Up Display Information Messages....139
Selecting Which Information the System Displays....137
Switching the Head Up Display On or Off....135
Heated Exterior Mirrors....149
Heated Rear Window....149
Heated Seats....155
Front Seats....155
Rear Seats....156
Heated Steering Wheel....66
Heated Windshield....149
Heating
See: Climate Control....143
High Voltage Battery....189
General Information....189
Hill Start Assist....213
Switching the System On and Off....214
Using Hill Start Assist....213
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control....147
Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather....148
General Hints....147
Quickly Cooling the Interior....148
Quickly Heating the Interior....148
Recommended Settings for Cooling....148
Recommended Settings for Heating....148
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control....148
Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather....149
General Hints....148
Quickly Cooling the Interior....148
Quickly Heating the Interior....148
Recommended Settings for Cooling....148
Recommended Settings for Heating....148
Vehicle Stationary for Extended Periods During Extreme High Ambient Temperatures....149
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes....210
Hood Lock
See: Opening and Closing the Hood....309
How Does Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go Work....235
How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work....157
Hybrid Vehicle Frequently Asked Questions....173
Hybrid Vehicle Operation....169
Battery....170
Braking....170
Driving....169

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Driving to Optimize Fuel Economy....170
Starting....169
Stopping....170
Transmission Operation....170

I

Information Display Control - Vehicles With: Head Up Display (HUD)....66
Information Display Control - Vehicles Without: Head Up Display (HUD)....65
Information Displays....102
General Information - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen....109
General Information - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen....102
General Information - Vehicles With: 6.5 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen....106
Information Messages....115
Active Park....116
Adaptive Cruise Control....116
Adaptive Headlamps....117
AdvanceTrac™ and Traction Control....117
Alarm....118
Auto-Start-Stop....118
AWD....119
Battery and Charging System (12 Volt)....120
Battery and Charging System (High Voltage)....121
Blind Spot Information and Cross Traffic Alert System....122
Doors and Locks....122
Driver Alert....123
Fuel....124
Hill Start Assist....124
Keys and Remote Control....125
Lane Keeping System....126
Maintenance....126
MyKey....127
Park Aid....128
Park Brake....129
Power Steering....130
Pre-Collision Assist....131
Seats....131
Starting System....131
Tire Pressure Monitoring System....132
Trailer....132
Transmission....133
Installing Child Restraints....22
Instrument Cluster....86
Instrument Lighting Dimmer....72
Instrument Panel....19
Interior Lamps....77
Interior Lamp Function....77
Switching All of the Interior Lamps Off....77
Switching All of the Interior Lamps On....77
Switching the Front Interior Lamps On and Off....78
Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off....78
Interior Mirror....84
Automatic Dimming Mirror....84
Manual Dimming Mirror....84
Introduction....9

J

Jump Starting the Vehicle - Excluding: Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV)....289
Connecting the Jumper Cables....290
Preparing Your Vehicle....290
Removing the Jumper Cables....291
Starting the Engine....291
Jump Starting the Vehicle - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV)....292
Connecting the Jumper Cables....293
Preparing Your Vehicle....292
Removing the Jumper Cables....294
Starting the Engine....294

K

Keys and Remote Controls....40

L

Lane Keeping System....249
Switching the System On and Off....250
Liftgate....54
Lighting Control....71
Flashing High Beam Headlamps....72
Lighting Control Selections....71
Switching High Beam Headlamps On and Off....71
Lighting....71
General Information....71

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Load Carriers
See: Roof Racks and Load Carriers....275
Load Carrying....271
General Information....271
Load Limit....276
Special Loading Instructions for Owners of Pick-up Trucks and Utility-type Vehicles....280
Vehicle Loading - with and without a Trailer....276
Locking and Unlocking....50
Accessory Mode Battery Saver for Passive Key....53
Auto Relock....52
Autounlock....53
Battery Saver....53
Illuminated Entry....53
Illuminated Exit....53
Individual Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key Blade....51
Keyless Entry....52
Power Door Locks....50
Remote Control....50
Smart Unlocks for Passive Keys....52
Locking the Steering Wheel....63
Unlocking the Steering Wheel....63
Luggage Anchor Points....271
Luggage Covers....274
Installing the Luggage Cover....275
Removing the Luggage Cover....274
Stowing the Luggage Cover....275
Lug Nuts
See: Changing a Road Wheel....340

M

Maintenance....309
General Information....309
Manual Climate Control....143
Directing the Airflow....143
Setting the Blower Motor Speed....143
Setting the Temperature....143
Switching Maximum Air Conditioning On and Off....144
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off....144
Switching Recirculated Air On and Off....144
Switching the Air Conditioning On and Off....143
Switching the Climate Control On and Off....144
Manual Liftgate....54
Closing the Liftgate....54
Opening with the Outside Control Button....54
Opening with the Remote Control....54
Manual Seats....152
Adjusting the Lumbar Support....153
Adjusting the Seat Backrest....153
Adjusting the Seat Height....153
Moving the Seat Backward and Forward....152
Message Center
See: Information Displays....102
Mirrors
See: Windows and Mirrors....81
Mobile Communications Equipment....15
Moonroof....84
Bounce-Back....85
Opening and Closing the Moonroof....85
MyKey Settings....46
Configurable MyKey Settings....46
Non-Configurable MyKey Settings....46
MyKey – Troubleshooting....48
MyKey – Frequently Asked Questions....49
MyKey – Information Messages....48
MyKey™....46
MyKey Settings....46
MyKey – Troubleshooting....48

N

Navigation....402
Changing the Format of the Map....404
Live Traffic....406
Navigation Map Updates....407
Route Guidance....404
Setting a Destination....403
Zoom....404

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

O

Oil Change Indicator Reset - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen....316
Oil Change Indicator Reset - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen....314
Oil Check
See: Engine Oil Check....314
Opening and Closing the Hood....309
Closing the Hood....310
Information Messages....310
Opening the Hood....309
Warning Lamps and Indicators....310
Overhead Console....162
Overriding Automatic High Beam Control....80
Overriding the Set Speed....242

P

Parking Aids....219
Principle of Operation....219
Passenger Airbag....34
....34
Passive Anti-Theft System....59
Arming the Engine Immobilizer....59
Coded Keys....59
Disarming the Engine Immobilizer....59
Principle of Operation....59
PATS
See: Passive Anti-Theft System....59
Pedestrian Alert System....37
Pedestrian Protection....37
Personalized Settings....112
Fuel Economy....114
Hybrid Information....115
Trip 1 and 2....114
Phone....400
Android Auto....402
Apple CarPlay....402
Pairing Your Cell Phone for the First Time....400
Text Messaging....401
Using Your Cell Phone....401
Playing Media From a USB Device - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5....377
Selecting the USB Device....377
Supported File Formats....377
Plug-In Hybrid Vehicle Operation....171
Electric Vehicle (EV) Modes....171
Low Engine Use....173
Post-Crash Alert System....295
Power Door Locks
See: Locking and Unlocking....50
Power Liftgate....55
Hands-Free Feature....57
Obstacle Detection....57
Opening and Closing the Liftgate....55
Setting the Liftgate Open Height....56
Stopping the Liftgate Movement....56
Switching the Power Liftgate On or Off....57
Power Seats....153
Adjusting the Lumbar Support....154
Adjusting the Seat Backrest....154
Adjusting the Seat Cushion....154
Adjusting the Seat Height....154
Moving the Seat Backward and Forward....154
Power Windows....81
Accessory Delay....82
Bounce-Back....81
One-Touch Down....81
One-Touch Up....81
Rear Window Lock....81
Pre-Collision Assist....263
Adjusting the Pre-Collision Assist Settings....266
Blocked Sensors....267
Distance Indication and Alert....265
Evasive Steering Assist....266
Using the Pre-Collision Assist System....264
Preconditioning Your Vehicle for Cold Weather Driving - 2.5L Duratec – Hybrid (121kW/164PS) (BG), Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)....286
Programming a MyKey....47
Protecting Larger Children....24
Typical Booster Seat....24
Protecting the Environment....18
Puncture
See: Changing a Road Wheel....340
Push Button Ignition Switch....163
Starting the Engine....163

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Switching the Ignition Off....163
Switching the Ignition to Accessory Mode....163

R

Rear Fog Lamps....75
Rear Fog Lamp Indicator....75
Switching the Rear Fog Lamps On or Off....75
Rear Occupant Alert System Audible Warnings....158
Rear Occupant Alert System Indicators....158
Rear Occupant Alert System Limitations....157
Rear Occupant Alert System Precautions....157
Rear Occupant Alert System....157
Rear Parking Aid....220
Object Distance Indicator....221
Rear Seat Armrest....162
Rear Seats....155
Folding the Seatback....155
Recline Adjustment....155
Unfolding the Seatback....155
Rear Under Floor Storage....272
Adjustable Load Floor....272
Cargo Management System....272
Rear View Camera....228
Using the Rear View Camera System....229
Rear View Camera
See: Rear View Camera....228
Rear Window Wiper and Washers....69
Rear Camera Washer....69
Rear Window Washer....69
Rear Window Wiper....69
Recommended Towing Weights....282
Reduced Engine Performance....286
Refueling - Excluding: Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)....177
Refueling System Overview....177
Refueling System Warning....179
Refueling Your Vehicle....178
Refueling - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)....180
Fuel Filler Door Manual Override Lever....182
System Warnings....182
Remote Control....40
Locating Your Vehicle....45
Memory Feature....45
Remote Control Information Messages....45
Replacing the Battery....41
Type 1 Remote Control....40
Type 2 Remote Control....42
Remotely Starting and Stopping the Vehicle....140
Remote Start Limitations....140
Remote Start Precautions....140
Remote Start....140
Remote Start Settings - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen, Vehicles Without: Heated Steering Wheel....142
Climate Control Settings....142
Heated Seat Settings....142
Setting the Remote Start Duration....142
Remote Start Settings - Vehicles With: 6.5 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/ 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen, Vehicles Without: Heated Steering Wheel....141
Climate Control Settings....141
Heated Seat Settings....141
Setting the Remote Start Duration....141
Repairing Minor Paint Damage....333
Replacement Parts Recommendation....15
Collision Repairs....15
Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs....15
Warranty on Replacement Parts....15
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control....45
Resuming the Set Speed....234
Resuming the Set Speed from a Complete Stop....242
Roadside Emergencies....289
Roof Racks and Load Carriers....275
Adjusting the Crossbars....276
Maximum Roof Load Amounts....276
Running-In
See: Breaking-In....286
Running Out of Fuel....176
Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container....177
Filling a Portable Fuel Container....176

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

S

Safety Precautions....175
Seatbelt Height Adjustment....29
Seatbelt Maintenance....32
Seatbelt Reminder - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen....31
Fasten Seatbelt Audible Warning....31
Fasten Seatbelt Warning Lamp....31
Seatbelt Status....31
Seatbelt Reminder - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen....29
Fasten Seatbelt Audible Warning....29
Fasten Seatbelt Warning Lamp....29
Seatbelt Status....30
Seatbelts....27
Principle of Operation....27
Seats....150
Security....59
Selecting a Child Restraint System....22
....22
Selecting a Drive Mode....269
Settings....413
Ambient Lighting....413
Android Auto....413
Apple CarPlay....413
Audio....413
Automatic Updates....413
Bluetooth....413
Clock....413
Display....413
Emergency Assistance....413
FordPass....413
General....414
Mobile Apps....414
Navigation....414
Phone....414
Seats....414
Sound....414
Valet Mode....414
Vehicle....414
Voice Control....414
Wi-Fi....414
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap....241
Following a Vehicle....241
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed....240
Manually Changing the Set Speed....240
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed from a Complete Stop....240
Setting the Cruise Control Speed....233
Changing the Set Speed....233
Side Airbags....34
Side Curtain Airbags....35
Side Sensing System....223
Object Distance Indicator....224
Sitting in the Correct Position....150
Snow Chains
See: Using Snow Chains....336
Spare Wheel
See: Changing a Road Wheel....340
Speed Control
See: Cruise Control....233
Speed Limiter....246
Principle of Operation....246
Using the Intelligent Speed Limiter....247
Using the System....246
Stability Control....217
Principle of Operation....217
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Precautions....163
Starting and Stopping the Engine....163
Automatic Engine Stop....165
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Troubleshooting....166
Starting the Engine....163
Stopping the Engine....164
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Troubleshooting....166
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Frequently Asked Questions....167
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Information Messages....166
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Warning Lamps....166
Starting the Engine....163
Restarting the Engine After Stopping it....164
Starting a Gasoline Engine....163
Starting a Hybrid Electric Vehicle System....164
Steering....263
Electric Power Steering....263
Steering Wheel....63

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Stopping the Engine....164
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving....165
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary....164
Storage Compartments....162
Streaming Bluetooth Audio - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5....377
Sunroof
See: Moonroof....84
Sun Visors....84
Illuminated Vanity Mirror....84
Supplementary Restraints System....33
Principle of Operation....33
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off....239
Automatic Cancellation or Deactivation....239
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off....239
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On....239
Switching Automatic High Beam Control On and Off....79
Activating the Automatic High Beam Control....79
Switching Cruise Control On and Off....233
Switching Cruise Control Off....233
Switching Cruise Control On....233
Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control....243
Switching Lane Centering On and Off....243
Activating Lane Centering....243
System Alerts and Automatic Cancellation....243
Switching Rear Occupant Alert System On and Off....158
Semiannual Reminder....158
Symbols Glossary....9
SYNC™ 3....385
General Information....385
SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting....415
Additional Information and Assistance....426
Apps....423
Navigation....422
Phone....420
Resetting the System....426
USB and Bluetooth Audio....417
Voice Recognition....415
Wi-Fi Connectivity....425

T

Technical Specifications
See: Capacities and Specifications....350
Tire Care....334
Tire Pressure Monitoring System....336
Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System....337
Changing Wheels With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System....338
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure....340
Understanding Your Tire Pressure Monitoring System....338
Tires
See: Wheels and Tires....334
Towing a Trailer....281
Towing Points....296
Installing the Recovery Hook....296
Recovery Hook Location....296
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels....296
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels....285
Towing....281
Traction Control....216
Principle of Operation....216
Traffic Sign Recognition....260
Principle of Operation....260
Using Traffic Sign Recognition....261
Trailer Sway Control....282
Transmission....197
Transporting the Vehicle....295

U

Under Hood Overview - 2.0L EcoBoost™....311
Under Hood Overview - 2.5L/2.5L Duratec, Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)....312
Unique Driving Characteristics....168
USB Port....378
Locating the USB Ports....378
Using All-Wheel Drive....205
Driving in Special Conditions With All-Wheel Drive....205

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems....48
Using Snow Chains....336
Using Stability Control....218
Using Summer Tires....334
Using Traction Control....216
Switching the System Off....216
System Indicator Lights and Messages....216
Using a Switch....216
Using the Information Display Controls....216
Using Voice Recognition....387
Apps....393
Automatic Blower Motor Speed Reduction....395
Entertainment....388
General....387
Navigation....392
Phone....390
Voice Settings....394
Using Voice Recognition - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5....382
Phone Voice Service....382
Using Winter Tires....335

V

Vehicle Care....330
Vehicle Identification Number - Excluding: Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)....353
Vehicle Identification Number - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)....354
Vehicle Identification Plate - Australia/New Zealand....353
Built Date....353
Vehicle Identification Plate - New Zealand....352
Built Date....352
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot....371
Ventilation
See: Climate Control....143
VIN
See: Vehicle Identification Number - Excluding: Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)....353
See: Vehicle Identification Number - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)....354
Voice Control....64

W

Warning Lamps and Indicators....97
Adaptive Cruise Control....97
Anti-Lock Braking System....97
Auto Hold Active....98
Auto Hold Unavailable....98
Automatic High Beam Control....98
Auto Start-stop....98
Battery....98
Blind Spot Monitor....98
Brake System Warning Lamp....98
Cruise Control....98
Direction Indicator....98
Door Ajar....99
Electric Park Brake....99
Engine Coolant Temperature....99
Engine Oil....99
Fasten Rear Seatbelt....99
Fasten Seatbelt....99
Front Airbag....99
Front Fog Lamps....99
High Beam....99
Hood Ajar....99
Lamps On....99
Liftgate Ajar....99
Low Beam Warning....99
Low Fuel Level....100
Low Tire Pressure Warning....100
Low Washer Fluid....100
Powertrain Fault....100
Rear Fog Lamps....100
Service Engine Soon....100
Stability Control....100
Stability Control Off....100
Washer Fluid Check....325
Washers
See: Cleaning the Exterior....330
See: Wipers and Washers....67
What Is a Connected Vehicle....367
What Is Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering....235
What Is Automatic High Beam Control....79
What Is Cruise Control....233
Requirements....233
What Is Drive Mode Control....269
What Is MyKey....46

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

What Is Remote Start.....140
What is the Rear Occupant Alert System.....157
Wheel Nuts
See: Changing a Road Wheel.....340
Wheels and Tires.....334
General Information.....334
Technical Specifications.....347
Windows and Mirrors.....81
Windshield Washers.....68
Front Camera Washer.....69
Windshield Wipers.....67
Intermittent Wipe.....67
Speed Dependent Wipers.....67
Winter Tires
See: Using Winter Tires.....335
Wiper Blades
See: Checking the Wiper Blades.....325
Wipers and Washers.....67
Wireless Accessory Charger.....160
Wireless Accessory Charging Information Messages.....161

Escape Vignale (CTD) Vignale, Australia/New Zealand, Vehicles Built From: 28-09-2020, CG3855en enAUS, Edition date: 202007, Second-Printing

CG3855en, Edition date: 202007